

# **History and Clinical Examination at a Glance**

**Third Edition**

**Jonathan Gleadle**



**WILEY-BLACKWELL**

# History and Clinical Examination at a Glance

My thanks to Fiona, Ellie, Adam and especially to my Dad

# **History and Clinical Examination at a Glance**

**Jonathan Gleadle**

MA, DPhil, BM, BCh FRCP (UK), FRACP

Professor of Medicine

Flinders University

and

Consultant Nephrologist

Flinders Medical Centre

Adelaide, Australia

**Third Edition**

 **WILEY-BLACKWELL**

A John Wiley & Sons, Ltd., Publication

This edition first published 2012 © 2012 by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd

Wiley-Blackwell is an imprint of John Wiley & Sons, formed by the merger of Wiley's global Scientific, Technical and Medical business with Blackwell Publishing.

*Registered office:* John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, UK

*Editorial offices:* 9600 Garsington Road, Oxford, OX4 2DQ, UK  
The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, UK  
111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774, USA

For details of our global editorial offices, for customer services and for information about how to apply for permission to reuse the copyright material in this book please see our website at [www.wiley.com/wiley-blackwell](http://www.wiley.com/wiley-blackwell).

The right of the author to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted in accordance with the UK Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, except as permitted by the UK Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988, without the prior permission of the publisher.

Designations used by companies to distinguish their products are often claimed as trademarks. All brand names and product names used in this book are trade names, service marks, trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners. The publisher is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book. This publication is designed to provide accurate and authoritative information in regard to the subject matter covered. It is sold on the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering professional services. If professional advice or other expert assistance is required, the services of a competent professional should be sought.

*Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data*

Gleadle, Jonathan.

History and clinical examination at a glance / Jonathan Gleadle. – 3rd ed.

p. ; cm.

Rev. ed. of: History and examination at a glance / Jonathan Gleadle. 2nd ed. c2007.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN-13: 978-0-470-65446-0 (pbk. : alk. paper)

ISBN-10: 0-470-65446-5 (pbk. : alk. paper)

1. Medical history taking—Handbooks, manuals, etc. 2. Physical diagnosis—Handbooks, manuals, etc. I. Title.

[DNLM: 1. Medical History Taking—Handbooks. 2. Physical Examination—Handbooks. WB 39]

RC65.G544 2012

616.07'54—dc23

2011013469

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Set in 9/11.5 pt Times by Toppan Best-set Premedia Limited

# Contents

Preface 7

List of abbreviations 9

## Part 1 Communication skills

1 Fundamental communication skills 10

2 Communicating information 12

3 Communicating bad news 14

4 Communicating with relatives 16

5 Cultural differences 18

6 Exploring sensitive issues 20

7 History and examination in clinical exams 22

## Part 2 Taking a history

8 Relationship with patient 24

9 History of presenting complaint 26

10 Past medical history, drugs and allergies 28

11 Family and social history 30

12 Functional enquiry 31

## Part 3 History and examination of the systems

13 Is the patient ill? 32

14 Principles of examination 34

15 The cardiovascular system 36

16 The respiratory system 40

17 The gastrointestinal system 42

18 The male genitourinary system 44

19 Gynaecological history and examination 46

20 Breast examination 48

21 Obstetric history and examination 49

22 The nervous system 50

23 The musculoskeletal system 54

24 Skin 56

25 The visual system 58

26 Examination of the ears, nose, mouth, throat, thyroid and neck 60

27 Examination of urine 61

28 The psychiatric assessment 62

29 Examination of the legs 65

30 General examination 66

31 Presenting a history and examination 68

## Part 4 Presentations

32 Chest pain 70

33 Abdominal pain 72

34 Headache 74

35 Vomiting, diarrhoea and change in bowel habit 76

36 Gastrointestinal haemorrhage 79

37 Indigestion and dysphagia 80

38 Weight loss 82

39 Fatigue 84

40 The unconscious patient 86

41 The intensive care unit patient 88

42 Back pain 90

43 Hypertension 92

44 Swollen legs 94

45 Jaundice 95

46 Postoperative fever 96

47 Suspected meningitis 97

48 Anaemia 98

49 Lymphadenopathy 100

50 Cough 101

51 Confusion 102

52 Lump 104

53 Breast lump 105

54 Palpitations/arrhythmias 106

55 Joint problems 107

56 Red eye 108

57 Dizziness 109

58 Breathlessness 110

59 Dysuria and haematuria 112

60 Attempted suicide 114

61 Immunosuppressed patients 116

62 Diagnosing death 117

63 Shock 118

64 Trauma 120

65 Alcohol-related problems 122

66 Collapse 124

## Part 5 Conditions

### *Cardiovascular*

67 Myocardial infarction and angina 126

68 Hypovolaemia 128

69 Heart failure 130

70 Mitral stenosis 132

71 Mitral regurgitation 133

72 Aortic stenosis 134

73 Aortic regurgitation 136

74 Tricuspid regurgitation 138

75 Pulmonary stenosis 139

76 Congenital heart disease 140

77 Aortic dissection 142

78 Aortic aneurysm 144

79 Infective endocarditis 146

80 Pulmonary embolism and deep vein thrombosis 148

81 Prosthetic cardiac valves 150

82 Peripheral vascular disease 151

### *Endocrine/metabolic*

83 Diabetes mellitus 152

84 Hypothyroidism and hyperthyroidism 154

85 Addison's disease and Cushing's syndrome 156

86 Hypopituitarism 157

87 Acromegaly 158

### *Nephrology and urology*

88 Renal failure 160

89 Polycystic kidney disease 162

90 Nephrotic syndrome 163

91 Urinary symptoms 164

92 Testicular lumps 166

*Gastrointestinal*

- 93 Chronic liver disease 168
- 94 Inflammatory bowel disease 170
- 95 Splenomegaly/hepatosplenomegaly 171
- 96 Acute abdomen 172
- 97 Pancreatitis 174
- 98 Abdominal mass 176
- 99 Appendicitis 177

*Respiratory*

- 100 Asthma 178
- 101 Pneumonia 180
- 102 Pleural effusion 181
- 103 Fibrosing alveolitis, bronchiectasis, cystic fibrosis and sarcoidosis 182
- 104 Carcinoma of the lung 184
- 105 Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease 186
- 106 Pneumothorax 188
- 107 Tuberculosis 189

*Neurology*

- 108 Stroke 190
- 109 Parkinson's disease 192
- 110 Motor neurone disease 193

111 Multiple sclerosis 194

- 112 Peripheral neuropathy 196
- 113 Carpal tunnel syndrome 197
- 114 Myotonic dystrophy and muscular dystrophy 198
- 115 Myasthenia gravis 200
- 116 Cerebellar disorders 201
- 117 Dementia 202

*Musculoskeletal*

- 118 Rheumatoid arthritis 204
- 119 Osteoarthritis and osteoporosis 206
- 120 Gout and Paget's disease 208
- 121 Ankylosing spondylitis 209

*Other*

- 122 Systemic lupus erythematosus and vasculitis 210
- 123 Malignant disease 212
- 124 Scleroderma 213
- 125 AIDS and HIV 214

Appendix: A self-assessment framework of communication skills in history and examination 216

Index 217

# Preface

The abilities to take an accurate history and perform a physical examination are the most essential skills in becoming a doctor. These skills are difficult to acquire and, above all, require practice. See as many patients as you can and take time to elicit detailed histories, observe carefully for physical signs and generate your own differential diagnoses. Experienced clinicians do not simply ask the same long list of questions of every patient. Instead, they will modify the style of their history taking to elicit the maximum amount of relevant information from each patient. They will also place different emphasis on the importance and reliability of different clinical findings. This book is designed to be used alongside frequent practice of these communication and examination skills with actual patients in order to hone and develop these essential abilities. Once you have taken a history or examined a patient, read the relevant chapters, ask colleagues or other doctors to assess your performance, present your findings to others and check what you did against the communication skills Appendix (p. 216).

The purpose of the history and examination is to develop an understanding of the patient's medical problems and to generate a differential diagnosis. Despite the advances in modern diagnostic tests, the clinical history and examination are still crucial to achieving an accurate diagnosis. However, this process also enables the doctor to get to know the patient (and vice versa!) and to understand the medical problems in the context of the patient's personality and social background.

The book is deliberately concise, emphasizes the importance of history taking and is restricted to core topics. For a complete understanding of any medical condition, you should look at other textbooks such as *Medicine at a Glance* and *Surgery at a Glance*. For detailed descriptions of particular examination techniques watch and learn from an experienced practitioner or from one of the texts below.

This book has four parts. The first section introduces students to key history-taking skills, including relationships with patients, communication skills, family history and functional enquiry. The second section covers history and examination of the systems of the body and includes chapters on recognizing the ill patient and how to present a clerking. Section three covers history taking and examination of the common clinical presentations whilst section four focuses on common conditions. It thus covers topics in a variety of different ways and this deliberate repetition of important topics is designed to facilitate effective learning.

It is often thought that clinical history and examination is a fixed subject with little change or scientific study. This is incorrect and to emphasize this some subjects have evidence-based sections which have been expanded further in this edition. These sections do not provide exhaustive coverage of the evidence underpinning aspects of clinical skills but have been included to emphasize the importance of scientific analysis of history and examination. It is hoped that they will act as a stimulus for further reading, study and questioning of the scientific basis of history taking and clinical examination.

Jonathan Gleadle  
Adelaide

## Acknowledgements

I would like to particularly thank R. Arthur Proudfoot for his role in the generation of the photographic images that appear in this new edition. I thank Glen Allen for the images of urinary abnormalities and Professor Jamie Craig for the retinal images. I would like to thank the following for their specialist advice on ways to improve on the first and second editions: Professor Derek Jewell, Dr Maxine Harding, Dr Duncan Young, Dr John Salmon, Dr Bhathiya Wijeyekoon, Dr Andrew McGavigan and Dr Randall Long.

## Further reading

### **History and examination**

- Davey, P. (2010) *Medicine at a Glance*. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford.  
Epstein, O. et al. (2008) *Clinical Examination*. Mosby, St. Louis.  
Grace, P.A. and Borley, N.R. (2009) *Surgery at a Glance*. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford.  
Orient, J. (2010) *Sapira's Art and Science of Bedside Diagnosis*. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.  
Talley, N.J. and O'Connor, S. (2009) *Clinical Examination: A Systematic Guide to Physical Diagnosis*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

### **Evidence**

- Clinical Examination Research Interest Group of the Society of General Internal Medicine ([www.sgim.org/clinexam.cfm](http://www.sgim.org/clinexam.cfm)).  
McGee, S. (2007) *Evidence-Based Physical Diagnosis*. W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia.  
Simel, D.L. and Drummond, R. (2008) *The Rational Clinical Examination: Evidence-Based Clinical Diagnosis*. McGraw-Hill Medical, New York.  
*The Rational Clinical Examination Series*. Journal of the American Medical Association (1992–2010).  
Polmear, A. (2008) *Evidence-Based Diagnosis in Primary Care: Practical Solutions to Common Problems*. Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford.  
Straus, S.E., Richardson, W.S., Glasziou, P. and Haynes, R.B. (2005) *Evidence-Based Medicine*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.  
Tierney, L.M. and Henderson, M. (2005). *The Patient History: Evidence-Based Approach*. McGraw-Hill Medical, New York.

### **Multimedia**

*The New England Journal of Medicine* has an increasing number of videos in clinical medicine covering topics such as 'Clinical Evaluation of the Knee', 'Blood Pressure Measurement' and 'Pelvic Examination':

[www.nejm.org/multimedia/videosinclinicalmedicine](http://www.nejm.org/multimedia/videosinclinicalmedicine)  
and images in clinical medicine:  
[www.nejm.org/multimedia/imagesinclinicalmedicine](http://www.nejm.org/multimedia/imagesinclinicalmedicine)

# List of abbreviations

<b>AA</b>	aortic aneurysm	<b>LIF</b>	left iliac fossa
<b>A&amp;E</b>	Accident and Emergency Department	<b>LIP</b>	lymphocytic interstitial pneumonitis
<b>ACE</b>	angiotensin-converting enzyme	<b>LR</b>	likelihood ratio
<b>AIDS</b>	acquired immunodeficiency syndrome	<b>LUQ</b>	left upper quadrant
<b>ARC</b>	AIDS-related complex	<b>LVF</b>	left ventricular failure
<b>ARDS</b>	adult respiratory distress syndrome	<b>LVH</b>	left ventricular hypertrophy
<b>BCG</b>	bacille Calmette-Guérin	<b>MCP</b>	metacarpophalangeal (joint)
<b>BOOP</b>	bronchiolitis obliterans-organizing pneumonia	<b>MI</b>	myocardial infarction
<b>BP</b>	blood pressure	<b>MRC</b>	Medical Research Council
<b>BS</b>	breath sounds	<b>NSAID</b>	non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug
<b>CABG</b>	coronary artery bypass grafting	<b>NSIP</b>	non-specific interstitial pneumonitis
<b>CCF</b>	congestive cardiac failure	<b>OR</b>	odds ratio
<b>CI</b>	confidence interval	<b>PCWP</b>	pulmonary artery capillary wedge pressure
<b>CNS</b>	central nervous system	<b>PE</b>	pulmonary embolism
<b>COPD</b>	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease	<b>PGL</b>	persistent generalized lymphadenopathy
<b>CPAP</b>	continuous positive airway pressure	<b>PIP</b>	proximal interphalangeal (joint)
<b>CRP</b>	C-reactive protein	<b>PMH</b>	past medical history
<b>CSF</b>	cerebrospinal fluid	<b>PN</b>	percussion note
<b>CT</b>	computed tomography	<b>PND</b>	paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea
<b>CTPA</b>	CT pulmonary angiography	<b>PR</b>	per rectum
<b>CVA</b>	cerebrovascular accident	<b>PUO</b>	pyrexia of unknown origin
<b>CVP</b>	central venous pressure	<b>PVD</b>	peripheral vascular disease
<b>CVS</b>	cardiovascular system	<b>RB-ILD</b>	respiratory bronchiolitis associated interstitial lung disease
<b>DIP</b>	distal interphalangeal	<b>RIF</b>	right iliac fossa
<b>DIP</b>	desquamative interstitial pneumonitis	<b>RIND</b>	reversible ischaemic neurological deficit
<b>DVT</b>	deep vein thrombosis	<b>RR</b>	respiratory rate
<b>ECG</b>	electrocardiogram	<b>RUQ</b>	right upper quadrant
<b>ENT</b>	ears, nose and throat	<b>RVF</b>	right ventricular failure
<b>FOB</b>	faecal occult blood	<b>SIADH</b>	syndrome of inappropriate secretion of anti-diuretic hormone
<b>GCS</b>	Glasgow Coma Scale	<b>SLE</b>	systemic lupus erythematosus
<b>GI</b>	gastrointestinal	<b>STD</b>	sexually transmitted disease
<b>GP</b>	general practitioner	<b>SVC</b>	superior vena cava
<b>GTN</b>	glyceryl trinitrate	<b>TB</b>	tuberculosis
<b>HIV</b>	human immunodeficiency virus	<b>TED</b>	thromboembolic disease
<b>ICU</b>	intensive care unit	<b>TIA</b>	transient ischaemic attack
<b>IgE</b>	immunoglobulin E	<b>TNF</b>	tumour necrosis factor
<b>IHD</b>	ischaemic heart disease	<b>TURP</b>	transurethral resection of prostate
<b>IP</b>	interphalangeal	<b>UIP</b>	usual interstitial pneumonitis
<b>IV</b>	intravenous	<b>UTI</b>	urinary tract infection
<b>IVP</b>	intravenous pyelogram	<b>VSD</b>	ventriculoseptal defect
<b>JVP</b>	jugular venous pressure		
<b>KUB</b>	kidney-ureter-bladder		

The illustration shows a doctor in a grey suit and red tie sitting at a desk, facing a patient who is seated across from them. The patient is wearing a red dress. The room has light blue walls and a wooden floor.

**To communicate WELL**

**Preparation**

- Ensure comfort and privacy
- Ascertain background
- Patient's/person's identity
- Introduce yourself and purpose of discussion

**During consultation**

- Speak at a reasonable pace (do not rush)
- Avoid jargon
- Give small pieces of information at a time
- Make eye contact
- Look for reactions to what you are saying, non-verbal clues
- Adopt an open posture (arms and legs uncrossed, slightly leaning forward)
- Actively listen, nod, verbally encourage, reflect

**Structuring the consultation**

- Existing knowledge of the situation, purpose of the consultation
- Use open questions
- Allow patient to speak without interrupting
- Encourage talking, listen actively
- Use summaries
- Explore patients understanding
- Be empathetic, be honest
- Indicate clearly the end of the consultation and the plan from here

Good communication with patients, relatives and colleagues is central and essential for good patient care. Excellent communication is what characterizes excellent doctors above all else. Doctors who are good communicators will have patients who are more satisfied with their care, more likely to follow advice and less anxious about their problems and are preferred by patients. Poor communication is the major cause of medical errors, diagnostic errors and patient complaints.

Excellent communicators are better placed to achieve correct diagnoses, form strong relationships with patients and colleagues, impart difficult news, involve patients in important decisions, detect distress and convey emotion.

Confidence in communication is not the same as having excellent communication skills.

Observing and copying other doctors is not necessarily a good route to acquiring good communication skills. Whilst observing doctor-patient interactions, think:

- What are the good communication skills being shown here?
- What is the patient thinking?
- What is the doctor trying to convey?
- What did the patient understand?
- What did the patient feel?
- What did the patient misunderstand? Why?
- What did the doctor misunderstand? Why?

- What would I do differently as the doctor?
- What questions could the doctor have asked differently?
- What aspects of the consultation did I feel uncomfortable about? Why?

• What would have improved the consultation? More time? More introduction? Less questioning? Fewer closed questions?

It is important to practise communication skills with real patients, colleagues and simulated patients. Get feedback. Review video recording of your interviews. Reflect on things you feel you do well, things you do poorly and things you find difficult. Throughout your medical career continue to reassess your communication skills and performance and obtain expert feedback.

Consider what could be barriers to good communication, e.g. language fluency, hearing difficulties, visual difficulties, haste, interruptions.

## **Open and closed questions**

Use open questions as much as possible and keep them simple and short:

- How are you?
- How can I help?
- Tell me what's troubling you?
- Tell me about the cough.

## **Avoid**

Leading or closed questions:

- The referral letter says you coughed up blood; was it bright red?

## **Avoid**

Complex questions:

- e.g. You've had a cough, chest pain and weight loss for months now?

## **Avoid**

Medical jargon:

- Tell me about this haemoptysis.

Further questions can be directed to generate further detail:

- e.g. You mentioned a cough . . . ?
- Tell me more.

## **Listen**

One of the most important features of excellent communication is listening. Give the patient time to respond and to talk, don't interrupt, prompt verbally (e.g. 'Tell me more'; 'Go on') and non-verbally (e.g. nodding). Let the patient drive the direction of the consultation. Pay attention, maintain eye contact and focus on the patient. Don't be (or appear to be) overly distracted by taking notes or typing on a keyboard. Look for non-verbal cues. Encourage continuation by repeating back of phrases, e.g. 'You said you were worried about the cough . . . ?' or even more detailed recapping of what they have said. 'You've told me that this cough has worried you because it's been going on for months now, is that right?'

Don't fill pauses/silences.

Be prepared to repeat and rephrase questions.

You may need to direct the interview by asking the patient to focus on particular issues (but don't interrupt and don't ask too many questions):

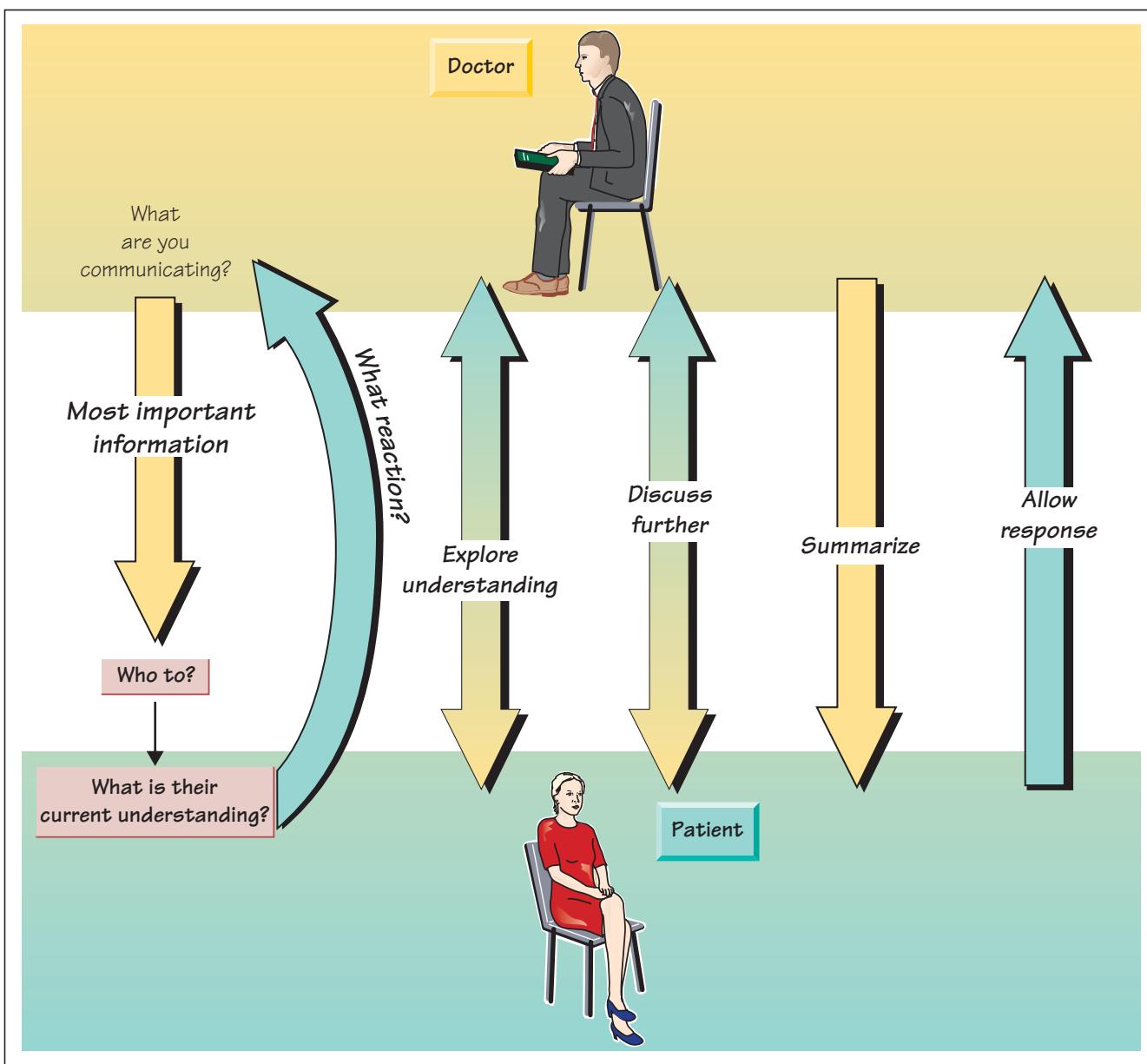
- e.g. Tell me more about coughing up blood.
- I'd like to talk more about the weight loss in a minute but could you tell me more about the chest pain . . . ?

## **Summarize**

Towards the end of the consultation you may wish to summarize what the patient has said. 'Let me check I've understood completely what you've said'; 'Have I got that right?'; 'What have I missed?'

It can form part of ending a consultation. Indicate clearly that the consultation is coming to an end. Indicate clearly what is going to happen next and what the patient should do, e.g. 'So you now need to take this form to the X-ray department and make an appointment to discuss the results with me in 2 weeks' OR

'I'm now going to write up my notes, discuss things with my Consultant and come back and talk to you in 30 minutes to discuss a plan for managing your illness.'



There are a large number of different circumstances in which doctors may wish to give information. This might include how to start a new medication and possible side effects, the risks of an operation, the discovery of a physical abnormality, the results of a blood test or biopsy or advice about a healthier lifestyle. Good communication of such information will result in greater patient satisfaction, concordance with treatment, reduced anxiety and stress.

**Establish with certainty the facts around the information you wish to communicate** (e.g. re-read the blood test report and check identity) and quickly think through what you are going to tell the patient.

It is almost always helpful to **explore the patient's current knowledge and understanding** and to summarize what information you are going to give and your understanding of the problem.

For example:

- You had a blood test for an underactive thyroid last week; tell me what you know about the test?
- You have been feeling more tired for the last few months and gaining weight and we wanted to see whether an underactive thyroid might be responsible. Is that right?
- I'm now going to tell you what the result showed and what that means for your health.

**Usually communicate the most important piece of information first**, e.g. 'the thyroid test shows that you have an underactive thyroid' in clear, simple language.

Other follow-up questions might include:

- Have you heard about that before?
- What do you know about underactive thyroid problems?
- What do you know about treatment for underactive thyroid problems.

**Consider communicating the most important piece of information again in a slightly different way:**

- Your thyroid gland is not producing enough thyroid hormone.

**Explore the patient's reaction to the information you have given:**

- There is a straightforward tablet treatment which can correct the problem and could improve your tiredness. What do feel about that?

**Discuss the management with the patient:**

- We should start some thyroid tablets, see you in a fortnight to check your thyroid blood tests and find out how you have got on with the tablets. How does that sound?

**Summarize what you have said.**

**Explore the patient's understanding of what's been said**

- To make sure we've covered everything, do you want to sum up what we've discussed.
- Have you any other questions about this?

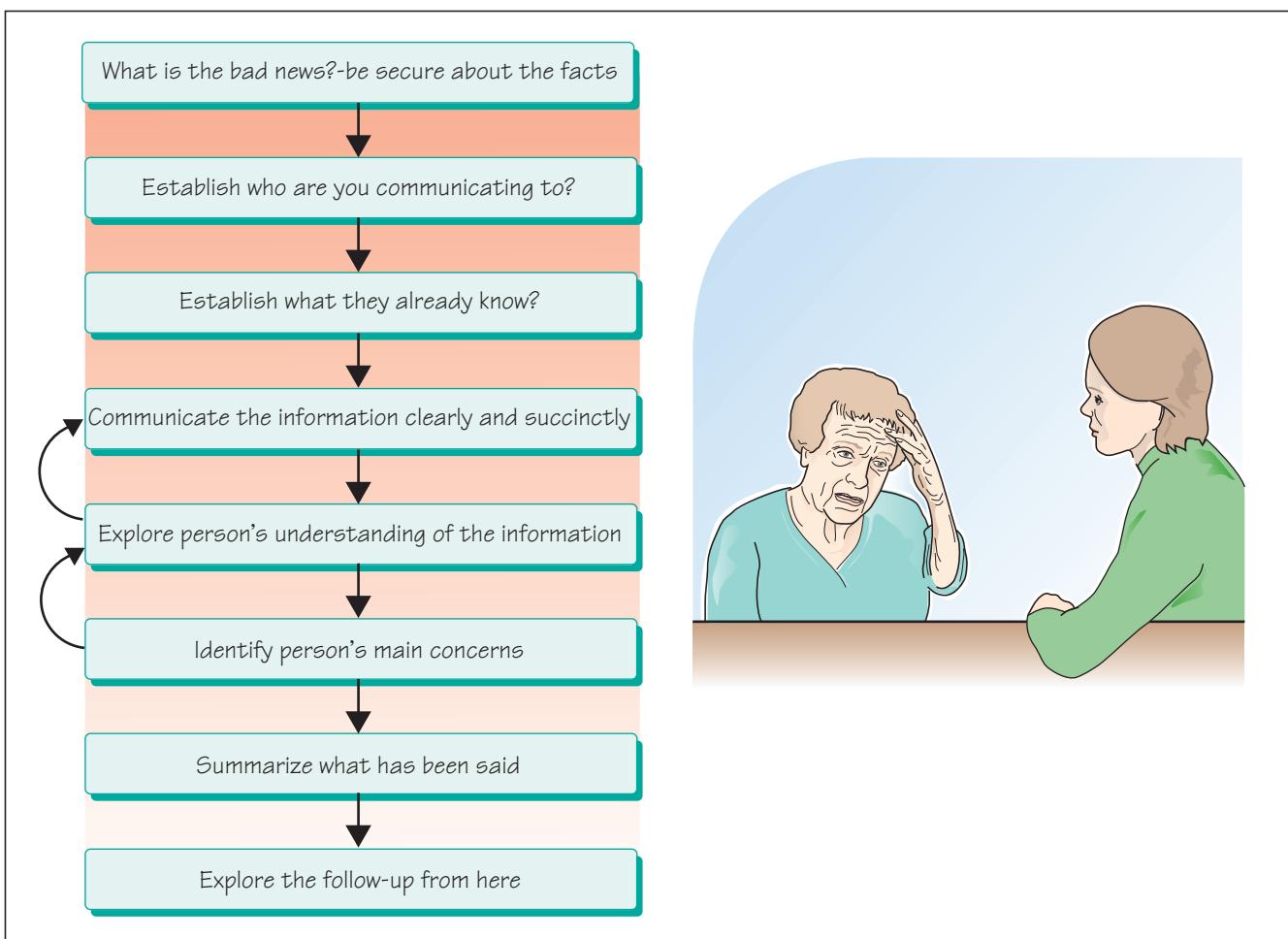
### **Explore the use of other information**

- e.g. Written pamphlets, patient support associations, good internet sites, discussion at subsequent consultation.

- Would you like some more information about underactive thyroids.

It is very important to remember that patients will commonly only remember a small proportion of the information that you attempt to communicate. Ensure that you focus on the most important information by leading with it, by repetition and by exploring the patients understanding of it.

**Give the patients opportunity and time to react and to question the information you have provided.**



This might be communicating the result of a test showing that a lump is cancerous, that a relative has died, that a baby has a congenital abnormality or that a treatment has not worked. The same basic principles of good communication of information apply to communicating bad news.

**Ensure you are certain about the facts that you are going to communicate.**

**Consider how you are going to communicate the news:**

- Where, who else is going to be present (e.g. a relative or a nurse).
- Consider whether the person might need language assistance with an interpreter.
- Is there privacy, a calm, comfortable environment?
- Do I have sufficient time cleared to do this well? Am I free from other commitments? e.g. switched off mobile phone, colleague to look after pager etc.
- You should be seated and comfortable.
- How might they respond to the news? What will happen afterwards? What resources do they have to support them? What other resources should be mobilized?
- What is the ‘follow-up’?

**Explore the person's current understanding of their illness or situation**

e.g. ‘In talking about your illness it would be helpful for me to understand what you already know about it’:

- What do you know about this illness?
- What have you been told about why we were doing this test?
- What do you understand the test could show?
- What have you thought the test might show?
- What have you worried the test might show?

- What have you been told the test shows?
- Have you any concerns about your child?
- What conversations have you had with others about this?

**Explore the person's reactions and understanding**

- Is there anything you want to ask me?
- Were you expecting me to say something like that?
- Tell me how you feel about this
- What concerns you about this?

**Summarize what you have said**

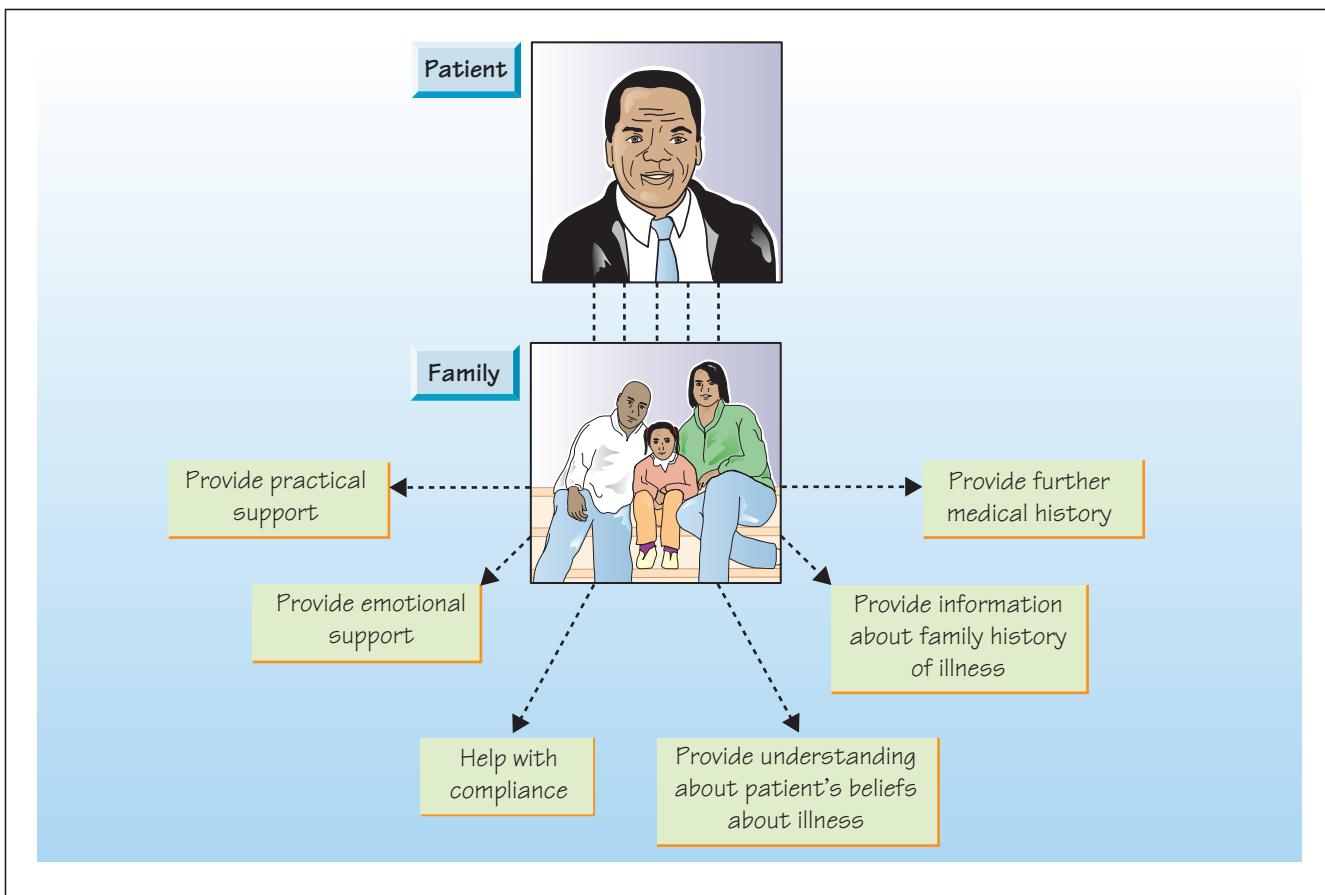
- Ask the person to summarize what they remember.
- Indicate clearly in notes and with colleagues exactly what has been said.
- For many people the bad news may already be known or feared, it may be better or worse than their fears.

**People may cry**

It is usually appropriate to recognize this, perhaps by offering tissues, saying e.g. ‘I can understand why you are upset’, perhaps by placing a hand on an arm and usually by pausing in the conversation, before usually, resuming the conversation.

Sometimes relatives or patients may indicate they do not want the patient to be told bad news. It may be helpful to explore this with questions such as:

- ‘What would you like to be told about your condition?’
- ‘Is there anything you do not want to know about your condition?’
- ‘Do you want to know all the details about your illness or just a broad outline?’



It is important to remember that your first duty of care is to your patient. A vital part of that duty is maintaining confidentiality. In communicating with relatives and friends you must establish from the patient who can be given what information. In most circumstances the patient should be the first recipient of information and check if the patient wishes that information to be discussed with others.

Family relationships require careful enquiry with the patient. It is helpful to explore genetic relationships, but also explore who the patient regards as family or closest to them and to establish those who do or can provide emotional and social support. Do not assume that the title of a relationship is sufficient evidence of what the relationship is. Patients may not want their relatives to know about the details of their care; divorced partners may still be regarded as 'next of kin'; descriptions such as uncle, aunt or even father may not be genetically correct; people may be closer to their step-parents than their biological parents. Friends living together may be in a close, sexual relationship or just sharing rent.

It is very helpful to draw out a family tree.

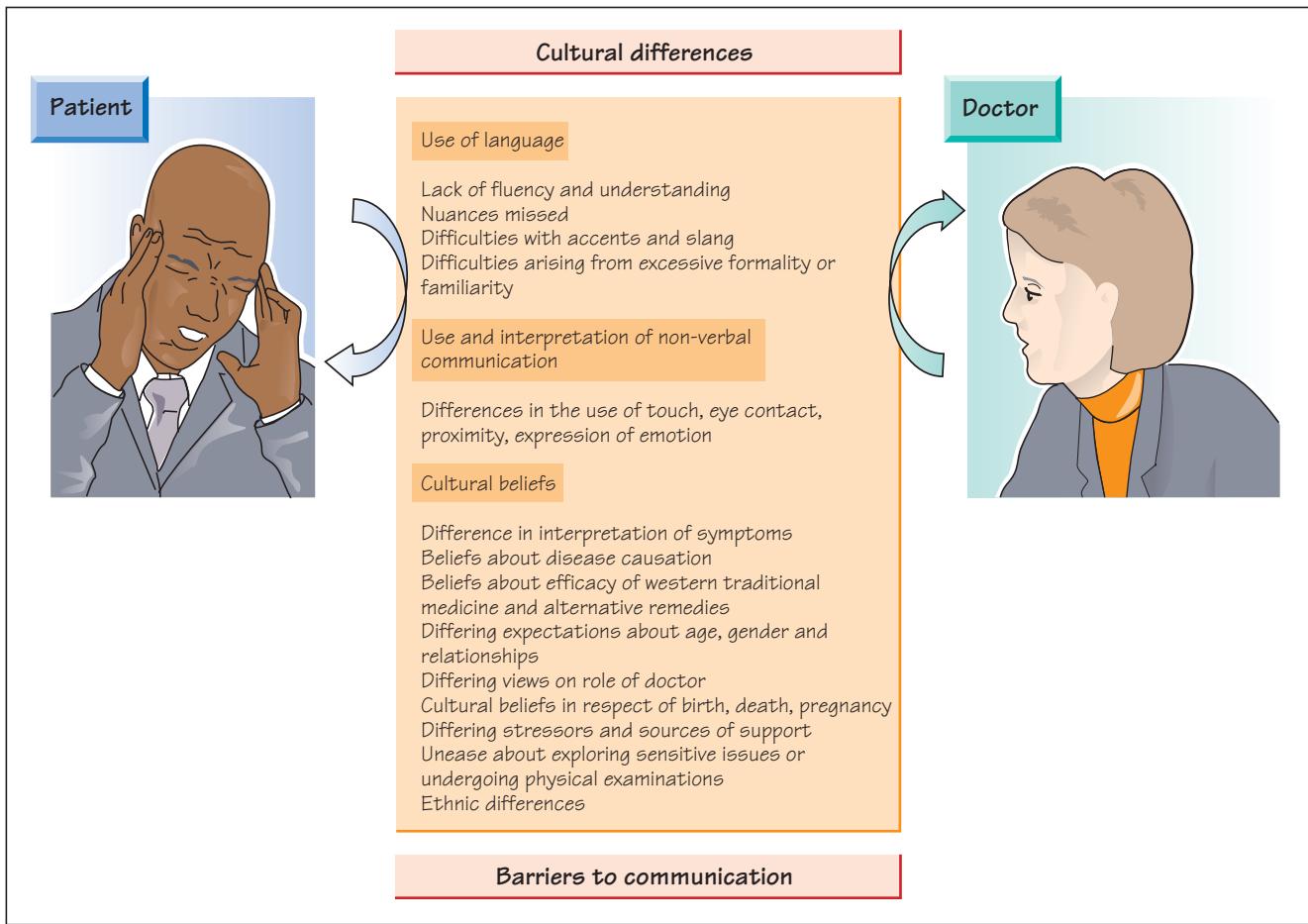
The following questions can be helpful in gaining a fuller understanding of the patient's family and relationships:

- Who are your closest relatives?
- Who are your closest family?
- Who are you closest to?
- Who are you in a relationship with at the moment?
- Who do you live with?
- Who are you in a sexual relationship with?

- Can you tell me more about your relationship with . . . ?
- Who have you talked to about your problems?
- Who do you usually discuss problems with?
- Would you like anyone with you when we discuss your condition? Who?
- Who will you talk to about your condition?
- Who should we contact if you become unwell?
- Your relatives tell me they are very concerned about your health; what shall we tell them about it? Who should we talk to? How should we do it? Would you like me to talk to anyone close to you about your problems?

In communicating with families it is often helpful to:

- 1 Carefully identify who each family member is and their relationship to the patient.
- 2 Acknowledge their help, support and role in the patient's care.
- 3 Describe what the patient knows and what they have requested about discussions with family.
- 4 Discuss with the patient who in the family can be given information.
- 5 Not discuss matters with the family that have not been discussed with the patient.
- 6 Provide a clear point of contact for discussion and further discussions.
- 7 Explain that sometimes there can be different perspectives in families about the right course of care and that your most important consideration guiding you is the wishes and care of the patient.



Clearly the ability to communicate well relies upon shared language fluency between clinician and patient. Try to establish the correct pronunciation of names and determine how patients would like to be addressed. Establish whether there should be an interpreter present. This can be very helpful in improving accuracy of communication and identifying culturally relevant issues. However, bias can be introduced, meanings changed and an interpreter may impede communication of sensitive topics. Family members may be able to translate but can sometimes introduce unintended distortions into the communication and more objective interpreters are preferred. Even patients who seem reasonably fluent may value the offer of an interpreter for medical discussions.

It is important to include cultural considerations in understanding the patient's perspective of their illness and treatment. It is dangerous to make assumptions about patients' beliefs, behaviours, customs and motivations without exploring them fully with individuals.

Cultural differences may be just as great between a 25-year-old male doctor and an 88-year-old nun, as between those from different ethnic backgrounds. Consider when undertaking or witnessing consultations what cultural differences are acting as barriers to excellent communication.

## Specific cultural issues

### Family

Discover who are the significant people in the patient's family and who the patient wishes to be accompanied by. Explore the nature of the family and clarify the use of surnames.

### Religion

Establish the patient's religion. Discover whether they wish to worship whilst in hospital and how that might be facilitated. The patient's religious beliefs or ethical views may influence their views on issues such as termination of pregnancy, contraception, transplantation, brain death, blood transfusion or treatment of the body after death. Do not assume your knowledge about beliefs of a particular religion is correct or necessarily adhered to by your patient.

There may be religious and cultural issues around undressing, significant items of clothing and examination by doctors of the opposite sex. If in doubt, these should be carefully explored.

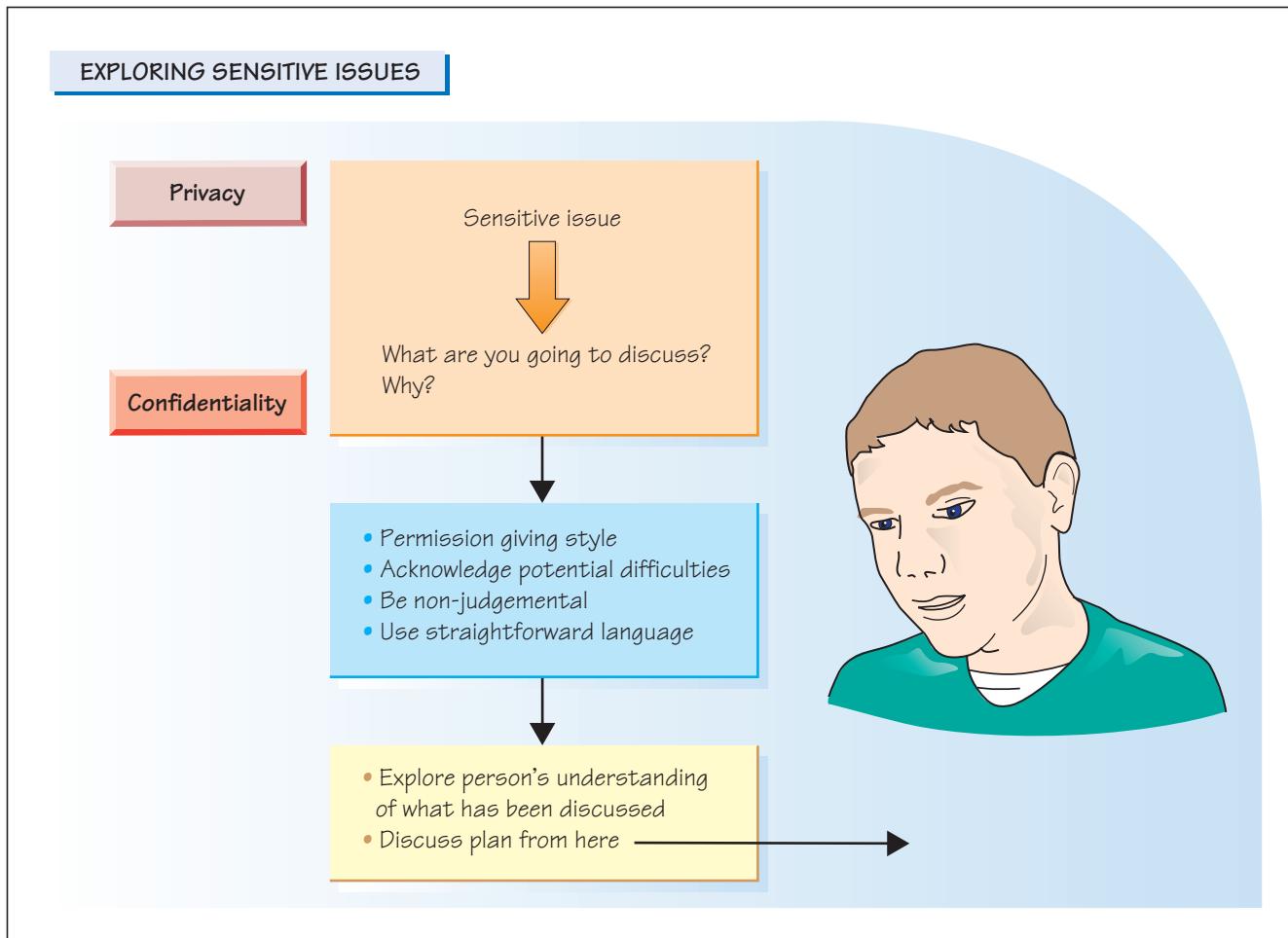
### Diet

It may be relevant to establish whether there are dietary rules or practises that the patient follows such as periods of fasting.

### Death

Are there specific practices and rituals around death that the patient and family wish to follow?

Sometimes it may be helpful to recruit colleagues of the same cultural or religious backgrounds or use community or religious resources or leaders to improve communication. However, it is important to recognise that individual patient's views and wishes are paramount and may not coincide perfectly with family, friends or community.



Some issues may be particularly difficult to discuss with patients. Examples include sexual issues, drug use and dying. They may be viewed as embarrassing or even ‘taboo’ by patients (and doctors). Ensuring privacy and confidentiality of such conversations is clearly essential.

### Sexual issues

Patients often find it difficult to voice sexual problems. In consultations about other presenting complaints it may be helpful to allow the patient to voice other problems, e.g. ‘Is there anything else you wanted to talk about?’ It may be appropriate when asking about relationships, e.g. ‘Are there any problems with your relationship that you wanted to talk about?’; ‘Are there any sexual problems in your relationship?’

If enquiring about sexual history, be direct and flag the direction of questioning, e.g. ‘I want to ask you some questions about your sexual health’.

Ask about sexual relationships. ‘Do you have a regular sexual partner?'; ‘What do you do during sex?'; ‘Have you had sex with anyone else recently?'; ‘Do you have sex with men and women?'; ‘Do you use contraception; if so, what?’

### Sexual history

Sometimes taking a sexual history will be essential to exploring the presenting complaint, for example if the problem is erectile dysfunction or dyspareunia. It may also be important if a sexually transmitted illness is possible. On other occasions it will not be directly relevant but can provide diagnostically or medically vital information.

A permission giving style of questioning can be helpful, e.g. ‘Some men with diabetes have difficulties with erections; have you had any problems like that?'; ‘Some people who are feeling low lose interest in sex; have you found that?'; ‘When talking about relationship problems, I normally ask if there are any sexual difficulties . . . ?’ It may be helpful to acknowledge that the patient may find such conversations difficult, e.g. ‘Some people find talking about sexual problems difficult but it is important for us to discuss this . . . ’

Ask about sexual activities. Ask about type of sexual activity. It may be relevant to discuss exactly the type of sexual activity and whether there was barrier protection. It may be an opportunity to provide health education.

In some circumstances, e.g. in exploring sexually transmitted illness or psychological problems with sex, it may be appropriate to take a more comprehensive sexual history.

This could include:

- Age of first sexual experience.
- When did you last have sex?
- Sexual activity e.g. vaginal, anal, oral sex etc?
- Previous sexual partners.
- History of sexually transmitted disease, sexual abuse.
- Physical and psychological problems with sex.
- Personal, religious and cultural views on sex.

## Confidentiality

Sometimes doctors may be involved in the care of several patients within a family. It is vital to preserve individual confidentiality.

## Drug use

Patients may use drugs such as nicotine, alcohol or heroin. Achieving good communication may be impeded by concerns about illegality, or being judged. In many circumstances it is very important to openly explore drug use with patients. It may be directly relevant to their illness, enable health education to reduce harm and may have vital social impacts on the patient.

Use open questions initially; be non-judgemental, e.g. ‘Do you drink alcohol?’; ‘Do you drink every day?’; ‘What do you drink?’; ‘Do you use recreational drugs?’; ‘Have you ever injected drugs?’

## Communicable diseases

Some illnesses such as those which are communicable sexually may require sensitive exploration.

## Suicide risk

This may require very careful and sensitive questioning. See Chapter 60, Attempted suicide.

## End of life care

In patients admitted to hospital it may be important to understand patients' views on treatments such as cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) or admission to an intensive care unit or ventilation. It is important to recognize and explore that some patients may wish for all medical interventions that might prolong their life, but that for some such measures are futile, whilst others may wish to emphasize their comfort and dignity and desire palliative measures. It is also important to recognize that patients' relatives may have differing views from the patient.

It is often helpful in such conversations to say that you routinely discuss what care patients wish for and what they would like if they were to become more unwell. It is also helpful to ask the patient to summarize their understanding of their current condition. It will often be necessary to explore the patient's understanding of procedures such as CPR and ventilation, their relative success and provide the patient with more information and education about them.

It is important to explore the patient's understanding of what you have said. If they voice a clear view on a particular treatment, it can be helpful to ask why they hold that view. Sometimes exploring what the patient's main goals of treatment are can be helpful.

- Introduce yourself
- Be smart and polite
- Ensure the patient's comfort and dignity
- Wash your hands
- Make sure you look and detect the clinical signs, not just go through the routine of the clinical examination
- Say the obvious
- Look at the examiner (not the patient) and maintain eye contact when answering questions
- Think what you would do in a real life clinical scenario
- Leave time to synthesize your findings, plan your presentation and to re-examine anything you have missed or were uncertain of
- Present without using notes, only referring to them as necessary
- Rehearse your first few sentences so that you can start your presentation
- Anticipate the follow-up questions



## Exam preparation

Ensure that your examination routines are well practised and that you have seen as many patients with normal and abnormal clinical signs as possible. Ensure you can perform routine clinical tasks such as blood pressure measurement, fundoscopy etc correctly and confidently. Make sure you know how much time you have.

## The exam

Dress smartly. Wear name badge, smile and introduce yourself to patients and examiners. Look at the examiner (not the patient) and maintain eye contact when answering questions. Ensure patients' dignity and comfort and explain what you are going to do. Be polite and courteous. Wash your hands.

Examine the patient from the traditional left-hand side of the bed.

## Short cases

Introduce yourself to the patient; shake their hand. Ask their permission to examine them. Thank the patient. Ask the examiner what they would like you to do if you are uncertain ('Would you like me to undertake a full cardiovascular examination or just auscultate the heart?').

Make sure you look and detect the clinical signs rather than just going through the routine of the clinical examination.

Say the obvious. If a patient is jaundiced say so and then what aspects of the history you would focus on and what you would like to

go on and examine. If you are certain of something say it with certainty. If you are unsure say what you are certain of, e.g. 'There is a systolic murmur loudest at the left sternal edge but also easily audible at the apex. It does not radiate to the aortic area or carotids. The pulse character is normal and there are no signs of cardiac failure.' Give a differential diagnosis and a plan for investigation, 'I think this represents mild mitral regurgitation or possibly aortic sclerosis. I would like to take a history for cardiac symptoms such as exertional dyspnoea, orthopnoea, angina and would arrange for an echocardiogram to define the valvular aetiology of the murmur.' You might wish to complete the focused examination with e.g. 'Normally, I would now undertake a full . . . examination'. 'I would usually . . .'

Always be prepared for the obvious follow-on questions.

- What would you like to examine now?
- What would you like to ask the patient?
- What tests would confirm the diagnosis?
- What treatments would you suggest?

## Long cases

Explain to the patient what you are going to do. Undertake a full history and examination. Make sure you always take a detailed social history. Be wary of gathering excessive history of what other doctors have said was wrong or procedures that have been undergone as opposed to patients symptoms and complaint. Thank the patient.

If there are no neurological symptoms in the history nor past medical history then the neurological examination may be abbreviated.

Always examine gait if possible. Always measure blood pressure and perform fundoscopy. Ask the patient at the end of the history if there is anything you haven't covered and make sure you understand what the patient's greatest concerns are.

Leave at least 5 minutes to synthesize your findings, plan your presentation, to re-examine anything you have missed or were uncertain of. Think what are the obvious questions you will be asked.

Aim to present without using notes, only referring to them if necessary. Rehearse your first few sentences so that you can start your presentation smoothly.

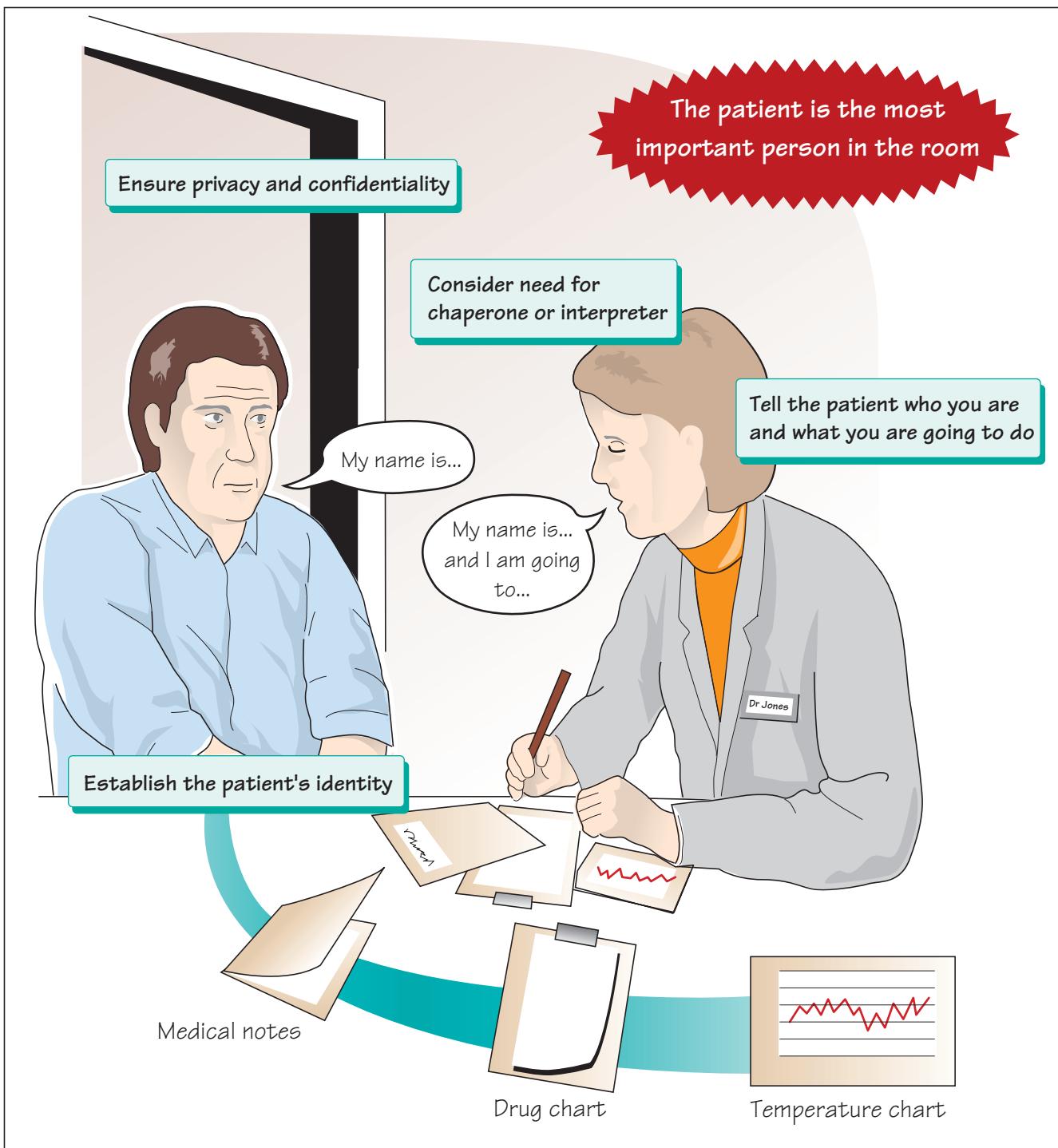
Be prepared to demonstrate to the examiners any clinical signs.

Always be prepared for the obvious follow-on questions:

- How does this diagnosis affect the patient?
- How does the patient feel about their medical problems?
- What tests would confirm the diagnosis?
- What treatments would you suggest?

### OSCEs

- If there are written instructions, read them carefully!
- Listen carefully to verbal instructions.
- Even if the patient is an actor or an examiner, behave as if they are an actual patient. Think what you do in a real life clinical scenario.
- As always be polite and courteous.



## Introduction

When meeting a patient, establish their identity unequivocally (ask for their full name and confirm with their name band, ask for their date of birth, address, etc.) and be certain that any records, notes, test results, etc., refer to that patient.

Often you may wish to shake their hand. You should make eye contact and smile, ‘My name is Dr Gleadle. Please come and sit down . . . and you are . . . ?’, or ‘Your name is . . . ?’ and ‘Your date of birth is . . . ?’, ‘Your address is . . . ?’ Tell them your name, your title and job and what you are about to do. If you are a medical student ensure that the patient understands that and give their permission for you to talk to them. Always introduce yourself, even if you have met the patient before.

For example:

‘I am Jonathan Gleadle, a doctor specializing in kidney medicine and I’ve been asked to try and work out why your kidneys aren’t working properly. I’m going to spend about half an hour talking to you about your medical problems, and then I’ll examine you thoroughly. After that I’ll explain to you what I think the matter is and what we need to do to help you.’

Or you could say, ‘I am Jonathan Gleadle, a medical student, and I’d like to ask you some questions about your illness if I may.’

Always be polite, be respectful and be clear. Remember the patient may be feeling anxious, unwell, embarrassed, scared or in pain. Always ensure your hands are washed and that your name badge is clearly visible. Make sure you are fully focused and concentrating on the patient. Ensure you are appropriately prepared by having read the patient’s referral letter or notes.

You should be gathering information and observing the patient as soon as you meet them: history taking and examination are not distinct, sequential processes, they are ongoing.

## Privacy and comfort

Ensure that there is privacy (this is not always easy in busy hospital wards: make sure curtains are properly closed; see if the examination room is free). Make sure that the patient is comfortable and not hidden by a huge desk or computer screen. These can act as barriers to successful communication. Is the room temperature comfortable?

## Language

Establish whether the patient is fluent in the language you intend to use and, if not, arrange for an interpreter to be present or at least a telephone interpreter.

## Relatives, friends, chaperones

Establish who else is with the patient, their relationship with the patient and whether the patient wishes for them to be present during the consultation.

Ask if the patient wishes for a chaperone to be present during the examination and this may be appropriate in any case. Remember that:

**THE PATIENT IS THE MOST IMPORTANT PERSON IN THE ROOM!**

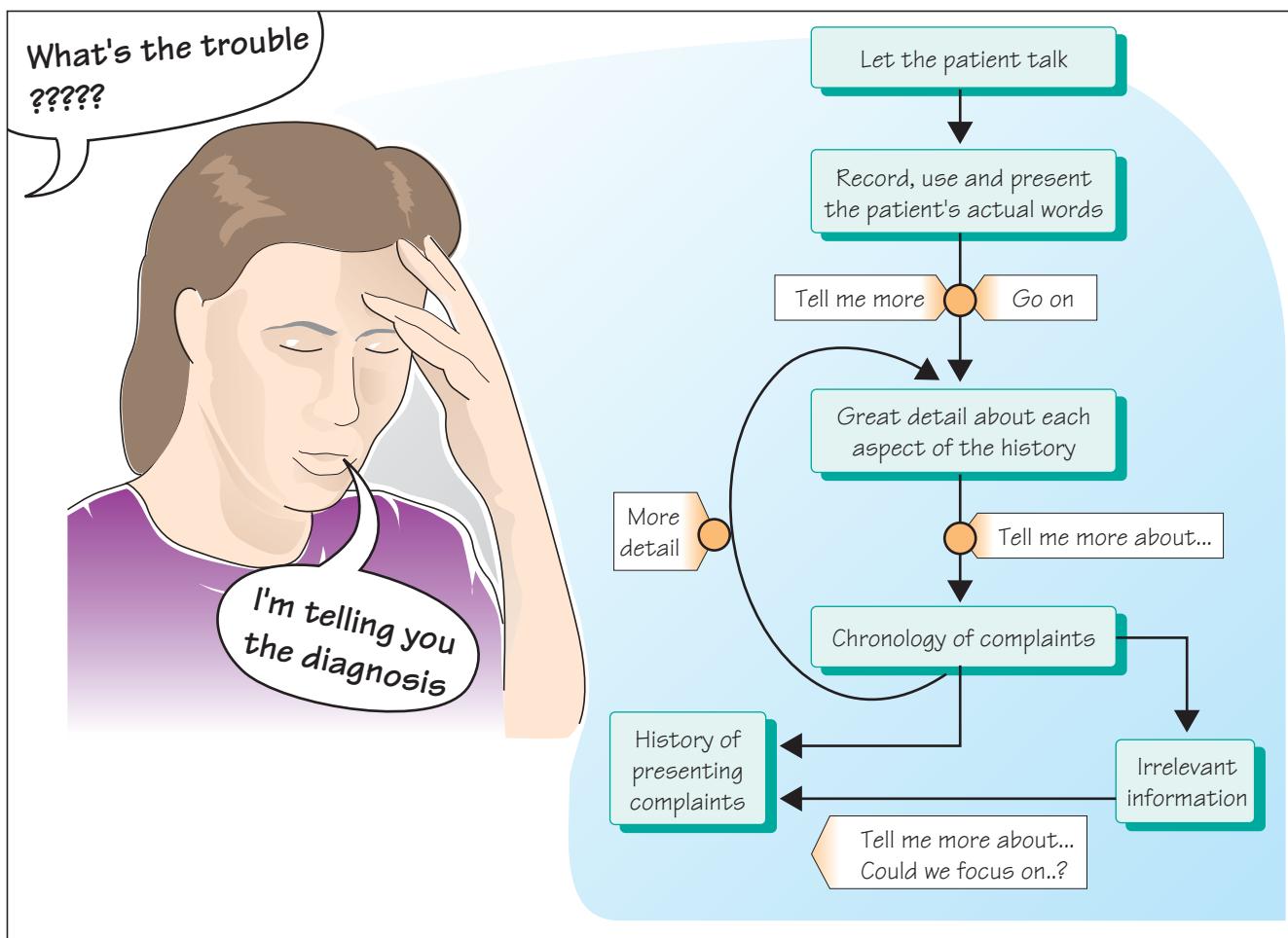
Remember that all information you gain from your patient or anyone else is **CONFIDENTIAL**. This means that information about the patient should only be discussed with other professionals involved in the care of that patient. You must ensure that patient discussions or records cannot be overheard or accessed by others.

## Some guidelines for the use of chaperones

- A chaperone is a third person, (usually) of the same sex as the patient and (usually) a health professional (not a relative).
- When asking a patient if they would like a chaperone to be present, ensure they know what you mean; for example, ‘We often ask another member of staff to be present during this examination: would you like me to find someone?’
- If either the patient or the doctor/medical student wish a chaperone to be present then the examination should not be carried out without one.
- Record the presence of a chaperone in the notes.
- A chaperone should be present for intimate examinations by doctors or students examining patients of the opposite sex (vaginal, rectal, genitalia and female breast examination) and offered for any intimate examinations of either gender.

## Hand washing

The hands of staff are the commonest vehicles by which microorganisms are transmitted between patients and hand washing is the single most important measure in infection control. Whether the hand washing is with alcoholic rubs or medicated soap is less important than that the hands are actually washed. Hands should be washed before each patient contact. Also ensure that your stethoscope is disinfected regularly, avoid uniforms, such as white coats, or ensure they are regularly cleaned.



The history of the presenting complaint is by far the most important part of the history and examination. It usually provides the most important information in arriving at a differential diagnosis but also provides vital insight into the features of the complaints that the patient attaches the greatest importance to. It should usually receive the greatest proportion of time in a consultation. The history obtained should be recorded and presented in the patient's own words and should not be masked by medical phrases such as 'dyspnoea' which may hide the true nature of the complaint and important nuances.

If a clear history cannot be obtained from the patient then a history should be sought from relatives, friends or other witnesses. It may be appropriate to seek corroboration of particular features of the history, such as alcohol consumption or details of a collapse.

## Let the patient talk

The presenting complaint should be obtained by allowing the patient to talk, usually without interruption. This may be initiated by asking them an open question such as, 'Why have you come to see me today?', 'What's the problem?' or 'Tell me what seems to be the trouble?' The patient should always be allowed to talk for as long as

possible without interruption. Small interjections such as 'Go on', or 'Tell me more', may help produce more information from a reticent patient. It may be possible to obtain further detail on specific topics by asking about this topic more directly. One strategy is to repeat the last phrase that a patient has voiced in a questioning way; for example, to, 'I'm finding breathing more difficult', you could respond, 'Breathing more difficult?'

Remember that the first complaint may not be the only or the most important concern that the patient has.

## More specific questioning

After this, open questions should be addressed to reveal more detail about particular aspects of the history; for example, 'Tell me more about the pain?', 'Tell me in more detail about your tiredness?' or 'You've said that you've been feeling tired?'

More direct questions can then be addressed to gain information about the chronology and other detail of the complaints; for example, 'When exactly did you first notice the breathlessness?', 'Which came first, the chest pain or the breathlessness?', 'What exactly were you doing when the breathlessness came on?'

Directed questions can then be addressed to establish diagnostically important features about the complaints; for example, ‘What was the pain like?’, ‘Was it sharp, heavy or burning?’, ‘What made the pain worse?’, ‘Did breathing affect the pain?’, ‘What about breathing in deeply?’, ‘How far can you usually walk?’, ‘What stops you?’, ‘How do the symptoms interfere with your life (with walking, working, sleeping, etc.)?’ If a new symptom or complaint becomes apparent during the interview then it should also be analysed in detail.

It is often helpful to periodically summarize what the patient has told you to verify your own understanding of what the patient has said and invite the patient to correct the interpretation or to provide further information.

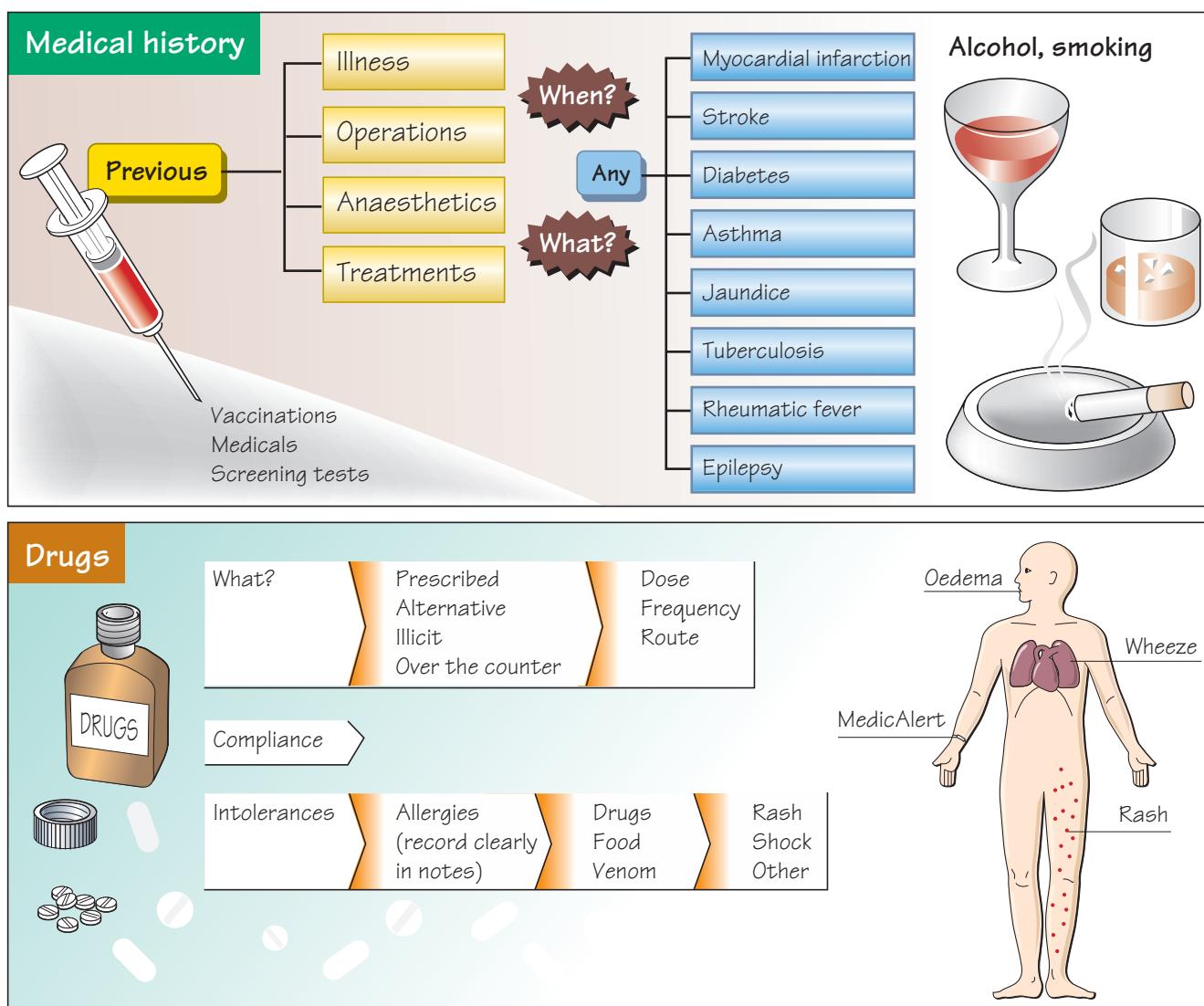
### **Establish the dates and sequence of events**

- In some settings, such as during resuscitation of a very ill patient, very focused or abbreviated questioning may be appropriate.
- It may be appropriate to ask the patient what they think is wrong with them, what they think has caused it, and how the problems have affected them (e.g. ability to work, mood, etc.) and their family.

- Other aspects of the history (e.g. PMH or social history) that are conventionally analysed separately, commonly arise during discussion of the presenting complaint and can receive detailed attention at this point.

### **Focus on the main problems**

- Some patients will devote considerable attention to aspects of their illness that are not helpful in achieving a diagnosis or an understanding of the patient and their problems. It may be necessary to interject and divert discussion with phrases such as, ‘Could you tell me more about your chest pain?’, ‘Could we focus on why you came to the doctors this time?’ Sometimes there may be a very long list of different complaints in which case the patient should be asked to focus on each in turn.
- Keep in mind the main problems and direct the history accordingly.
- Obtain and record a precise history. Discover exactly how a symptom started, where the patient was, and what they were doing.
- Remember it is the patient’s problems that you are trying to understand and record in order to establish diagnoses. Do not force or over interpret what the patient says to fit into a particular diagnosis or symptom, nor simply record what the patient reports other doctors have said.



The PMH is a vital part of the history. It is important to record in detail all previous medical problems and their treatment. It is also useful to record this information in chronological order. You could ask, ‘What illnesses have you had?’, ‘What operations?’, ‘Have you ever been in hospital?’, ‘When did you last feel completely well?’ Ask if there were any problems with operations or anaesthetics, and, if so, what they were. You might turn up a bleeding tendency or an intolerance to particular anaesthetic agents. What health problems were there in childhood?

If not already discussed in relation to the presenting complaint, specific PMH may need to be enquired about. For example, ask about previous episodes of chest pain in a patient presenting with severe chest pain. What was the pain like, is the current pain similar/different, what investigations were undertaken . . . etc?

It is conventional to record the occurrence of specific common or noteworthy illnesses, in particular jaundice, anaemia, TB, rheumatic

fever, diabetes mellitus, bronchitis, myocardial infarction, stroke, epilepsy, asthma and problems with anaesthesia.

The patient should also be asked about vaccinations, medicals, screening tests (e.g. cervical smear) and pregnancies.

## Drug history

- What medication is the patient taking?
- What medication is prescribed and what other remedies are they taking (e.g. herbal remedies, ‘over-the-counter’ tablets)? Ask to actually see the medication and/or the prescription list.
- Don’t forget injections, e.g. insulin, topical treatments, inhalers (patients may not consider them to be drugs).
- Don’t forget oral contraception (patients often do) and other hormone containing long acting contraception such as implants.
- What recreational drugs do they/have they taken?
- What is their likely compliance with prescribed medication?

- Is there supervision? A 'dose-it' box?
- What medication have they been intolerant of and why?

## Allergies

- It is vital to obtain an accurate and detailed description of the allergic responses to drugs and other potential allergens.
- The patient should be asked if they are allergic to anything. They should be asked specifically whether they are allergic to any antibiotics including penicillin.
- It is also important to elicit the precise nature of the allergy. Was there true allergy with a full-blown anaphylactic shock, an erythematous rash, an urticarial rash, or did the patient only feel nausea or experience another drug side-effect?
- Other important allergies may exist to foodstuffs, such as nuts, or to bee or wasp stings.
- It is also important to elicit other intolerances, such as side-effects, to medication.
- Ensure allergies are clearly recorded in notes, drug charts and, if appropriate, MedicAlert® bracelets.

## Smoking

- Does the patient smoke or have they ever smoked?
- If so what type and how many for how long? Smoked cigarettes, pipe or cigar? Tobacco, cannabis ?

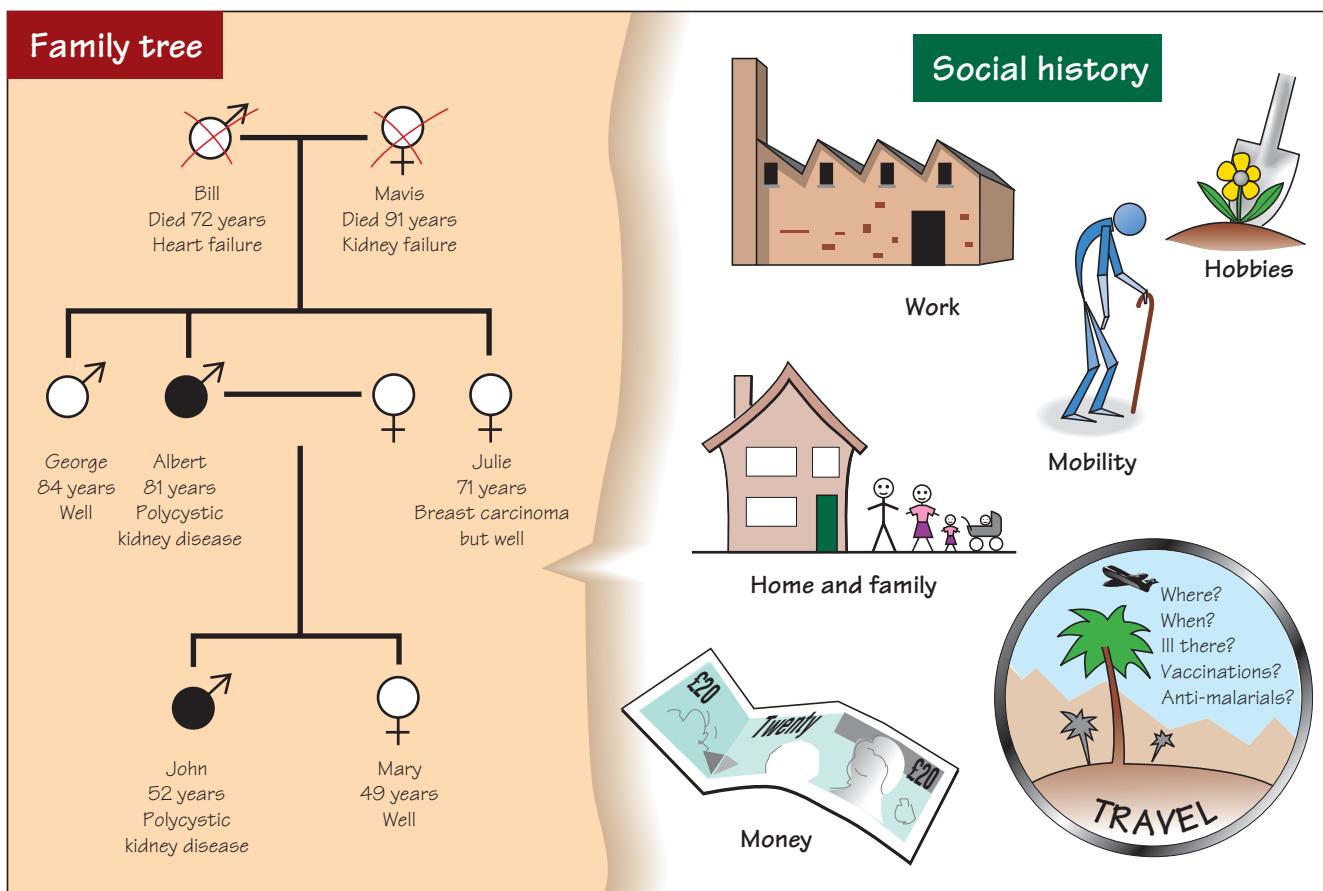
## Alcohol

- Does the patient drink alcohol? If so what type of alcohol?
- How many units and how often?

- Are there/have there been problems with alcohol dependence (see Chapter 65)?

## Evidence

- Many patients recalling a reaction to penicillin are unsure of specific details and are wrongly labelled as penicillin allergic.
  - True allergic reactions to penicillin that may produce dangerous reactions on subsequent exposure are characterized by hypotension, anaphylaxis, laryngeal oedema, angioedema, urticarial rashes and wheezing usually occurring within 1 hour of exposure. Mild maculopapular rashes are very common developing >72 hours after exposure to penicillin and do not usually indicate a true allergy.
  - A detailed history of the patient's drug reaction can help determine whether or not the patient's history is compatible with a true penicillin allergy. Ninety per cent of patients reporting a penicillin allergy are negative for penicillin allergy when assessed by skin testing, meaning that penicillin is withheld from many patients who could safely receive the drug. For patients with a concerning history of penicillin allergy who have a compelling need for penicillin, skin testing should be performed.
- Salkind AR, Cuddy PG & Foxworth JW. Is this patient allergic to penicillin? An evidence-based analysis of the likelihood of penicillin allergy. *JAMA* 2001; **285**: 2498–505.



### Family history

It is important to establish the diseases that have affected relatives given the strong genetic contribution to many diseases:

- What relatives do you have?
- Are your parents still alive? If not, how old were they when they died? What did they die from? Did they/do they suffer from any significant illnesses?
- Have you any siblings, children, grandchildren?
- Are there any diseases that run in the family? (In rare genetic conditions consider the possibility of consanguinity).
- Construct a family tree.
- Are there any illnesses that ‘run in the family’?

### Social history

It is vital to understand the patient’s background, the effect of their illnesses on their life and their family. Particular occupations are at risk of certain illnesses so a full occupational history is important. The following questions should be asked:

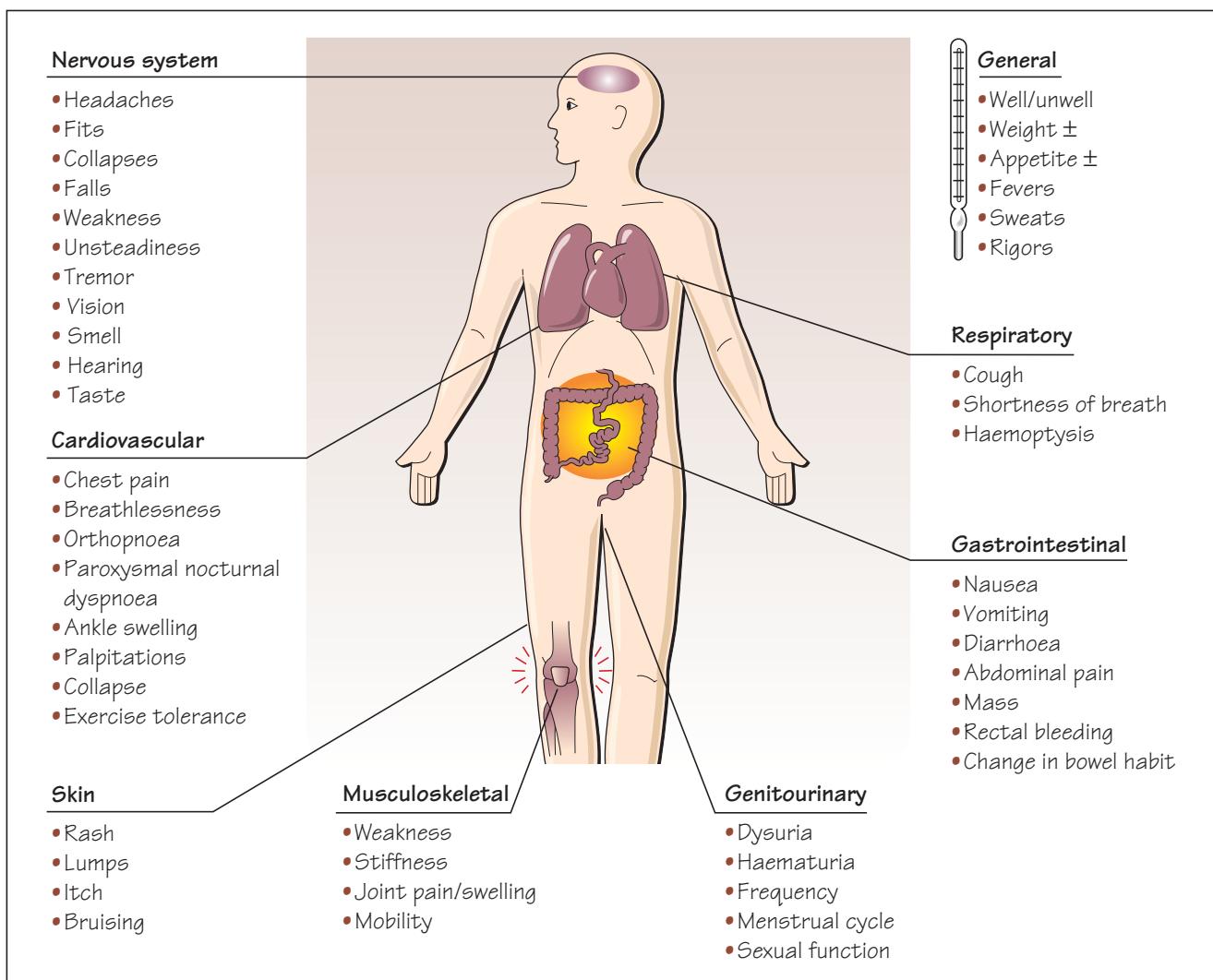
- Are you working? What is your job? What does that actually involve doing?
- What other jobs have you done?
- Who do you live with? Is your partner well? Who else is at home? What sort of place do you live in?

- Do you have any financial difficulties?
- Who does the shopping, washing, cleaning, bathing, etc.?
- What have your illnesses prevented you doing?
- How has it affected your spouse, family?
- Do you get out of the house much? What is your mobility like? How far can you walk? Do you have stairs at home?
- What are your hobbies?
- What help do you get at home? Do you have a home help, ‘meals-on-wheels’? What modifications have been made to the house?
- Do you have pets? Are they well?

### Travel history

Consider the following questions when taking a travel history from the patient:

- Have you been travelling? Where? When?
- Where did you stop *en route*?
- Where did you visit? Was it rural or urban?
- Did you stay in hotels, camps, etc.?
- Were you well whilst there?
- Did you have specific vaccinations, anti-malarial prophylaxis? If so what and for how long?



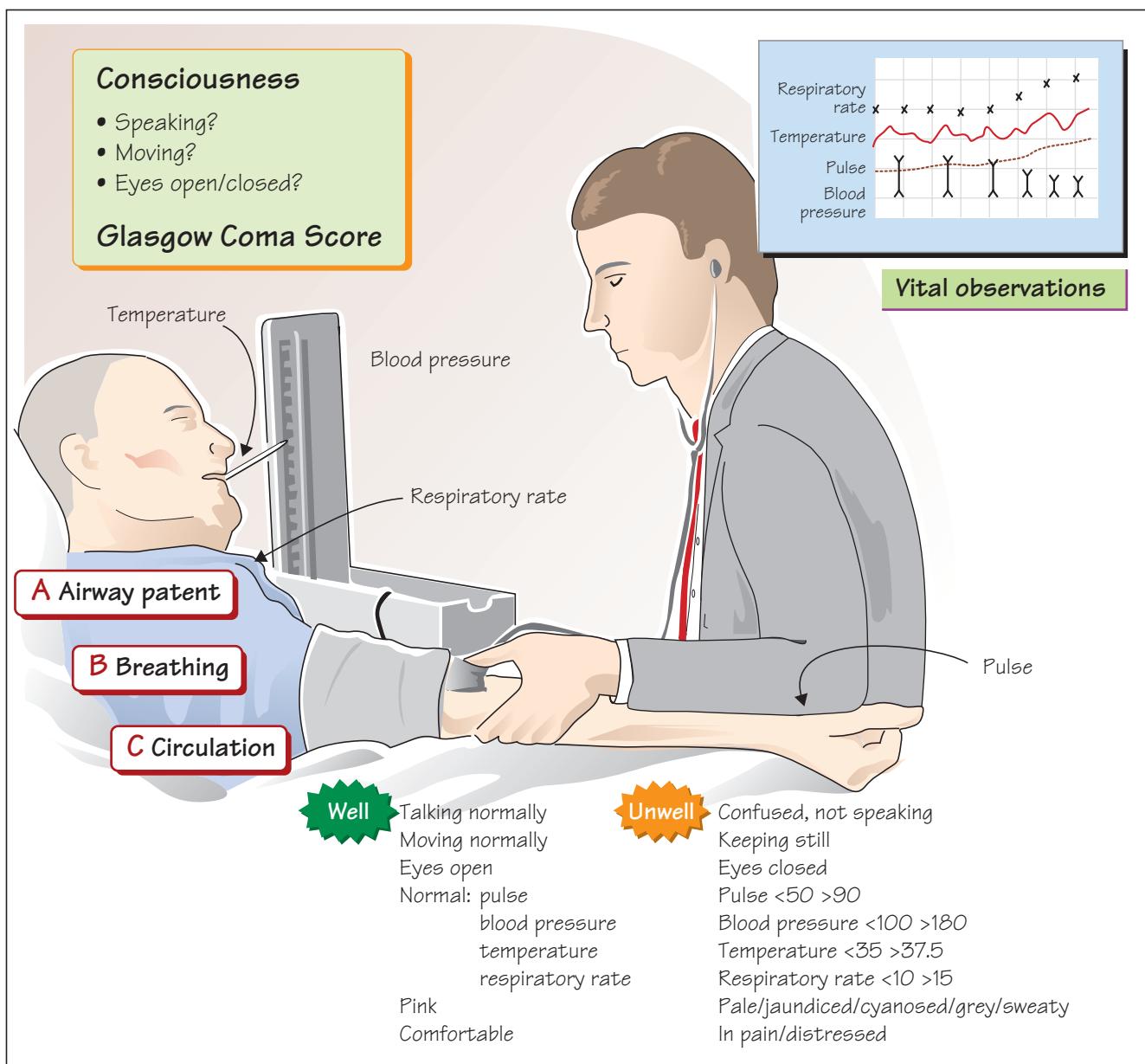
This part of the history is designed to discover any symptoms that have not been elicited from the patient in the history of the presenting complaint. There are obviously a huge number of questions that can be asked. In any given clinical situation these questions will need to be focused depending on the nature of the presenting complaint. The discovery of abnormalities on examination or after investigation may lead to the necessity for further directed questioning. Ask about the symptoms in the figure above.

Other general questions that may be appropriate are asking about heat or cold intolerance or whether there has been any recent injury or falls, any fevers or night sweats, sleep disturbance or fatigue.

Orthopnoea is breathlessness when lying flat, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea is episodic breathlessness at night. To assess

exercise tolerance ask how far the patient can walk on the flat or how many flights of stairs they can climb (then determine what limits them-breathlessness, chest pain, leg pain etc). Haemoptysis is coughing of blood, haematemesis is vomiting of blood, haematuria is blood in the urine, dysuria is pain on passing urine, dyspareunia is painful intercourse. Ask about erectile dysfunction, the length of the menstrual cycle, period duration, whether periods are heavy, number of pregnancies, age of menarche and menopause, contraception.

Give the patient an opportunity to raise any other symptoms or problems, e.g. 'Is there anything else troubling you, that we haven't discussed so far ?'



One of the most important skills a doctor can gain is the ability to recognize that a patient is ill. There are several features that experienced doctors or nurses may notice instantly as warnings that a patient is seriously ill. However, patients may have immediately life-threatening illness without any abnormal findings (e.g. severe hyperkalaemia). In some patients, the history points towards a serious, perhaps life-threatening condition, even in the absence of abnormal physical signs (e.g. the patient who has just had a very sudden onset of the most severe headache they have ever experienced may have had a critical subarachnoid haemorrhage). In other patients pre-existing illness or frailty may make them more vulnerable to illnesses that would be well tolerated in a fit individual (e.g. pneumonia in a patient

with recent stroke). Conversely, fit individuals may not display obvious signs of illness until it is life-threatening (e.g. blood loss in a young fit individual). Experienced nurses and clinicians may also feel that a patient is seriously ill without being able to identify objective abnormalities (as may the patient themselves or their relatives).

The straightforward *vital observations* of pulse, BP, temperature, respiratory rate and conscious level are essential in assessing ill patients as are trends in those observations (e.g. gradual reduction in blood pressure and increase in pulse rate might indicate the development of hypovolaemia).

If you think the patient is acutely and seriously ill get help from other doctors and nurses.

## Airway

- Is the airway patent?
- Is the patient breathing easily and talking comfortably?
- Is there stridor?

## Breathing

- Is the patient breathing:
  - slowly
  - rapidly
  - noisily
  - with difficulty?
- Respiratory rate?
- Cheyne–Stokes pattern?
- Is there wheeze?
- Use of accessory muscles?
- Unable to talk because of breathlessness?

## Circulation

Check there is adequate circulation:

- Warm/cool peripheries?
- Cyanosis (central/peripheral)?
- Normal/low volume pulse?
- Tachycardia, bradycardia?
- Obvious blood loss?
- Hypotension, postural drop?

## Colour

- What is the patient's colour? Is the patient pale (anaemia, shock)?
- What is the temperature? Is the patient febrile? Hypothermic?
- Is the patient blue (cyanosed)?
- Is the patient grey? (Combination of cyanosis and pallor?)
- Is the patient clammy? (Sweaty and poor perfusion?)
- Is the patient sweaty?
- Is the patient vomiting?

## Consciousness

- Can the patient talk? Does the patient smile? Does the patient make eye contact? Does the patient answer questions appropriately? Does the patient respond to voice, commands? Is the patient drowsy?
- Is the patient comfortable or uncomfortable?
- Is the patient in pain? Grimacing? Appearing abnormally still?
- Is the patient moving normally, restless, paralysed?
- What is the level of consciousness? (Use the Glasgow Coma Score).
- Is the patient alert, reacting to voice, reacting to pain or unresponsive?
- Is the patient moving all their limbs, do his/her eyes open spontaneously?
- Is there abnormal posture, e.g. abnormal extension of limbs (decerebrate), abnormal flexion of arms (decorticate)?
- In any patient, significant changes in these observations may indicate serious deterioration.

## Evidence

A modified early warning score (MEWS) derived from five simple observations – systolic BP, heart rate, respiratory rate, temperature and level of consciousness grading – is capable of indicating acute medical admissions likely to have an adverse outcome and the patient should receive urgent medical assessment and action.

Scores of five or more on the modified early warning score are associated with increased risk of death (OR 5.4, 95% CI 2.8–10.7) and ICU admission (OR 10.9, 95% CI 2.2–55.6).

Score	3	2	1	0	1	2	3
Systolic BP	<70	71–80	81–100	101–199		>200	
Heart rate (b.p.m.)	40	41–50	51–100	101–110	111–29	>130	
Respiratory rate (b.p.m.)	<9		9–14	15–20	21–9	>30	
Temperature (°C)	<35		35.0–38.4		>38.5		
AVPU score			Alert	Reacting to voice	Reacting to pain	Unresponsive	

Subbe CP, Kruger M, Rutherford P & Gemmel L. Validation of a modified early warning score in medical admissions. *QJM* 2001; **94**: 521–6.

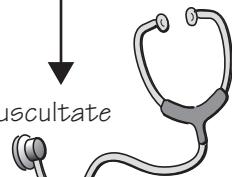
Other scoring systems such as the Simple Clinical Score have been used to predict 30 day mortality after admission to an acute medical unit (Kellie J and Deane B. The Simple Clinical Score predicts mortality for 30 days after admission to an acute medical unit. *QJM* 2006; **99**, 771–81). This highlights the predictive power of the physiological abnormalities above but also clinical features such as coma, new stroke, nursing home residence, unable to get out of a chair without help, abnormal ECG, low oxygen saturation, breathlessness, and diabetes as being associated with increased mortality.

**Ensure**

Patient's comfort, privacy, confidentiality  
Presence of chaperone if appropriate

**Optimize examination conditions**

- Exposure of relevant area
- Lighting/sound
- Positioning

**Then****Inspect****Palpate****Percuss****Auscultate****Re-examine**

Explain to the patient what you plan to do. Ensure they are comfortable, warm and that there is privacy. Use all your senses: sight, hearing, smell and touch.

### Inspect

- Stand back. Look at the whole patient. Ensure there is adequate lighting.
- Look around the bed for other ‘clues’ (e.g. oxygen mask, nebulizer, sputum pot, walking stick, vomit bowl).
- Ensure the patient is adequately exposed (with privacy and comfort) and correctly positioned to permit a full examination.
- Look carefully and thoroughly. Are there any obvious abnormalities (e.g. lumps, unconsciousness)?
- Are there any subtle abnormalities (e.g. pallor, fasciculations)?
- Look with specific manoeuvres, such as coughing, breathing or movement.

### Palpate

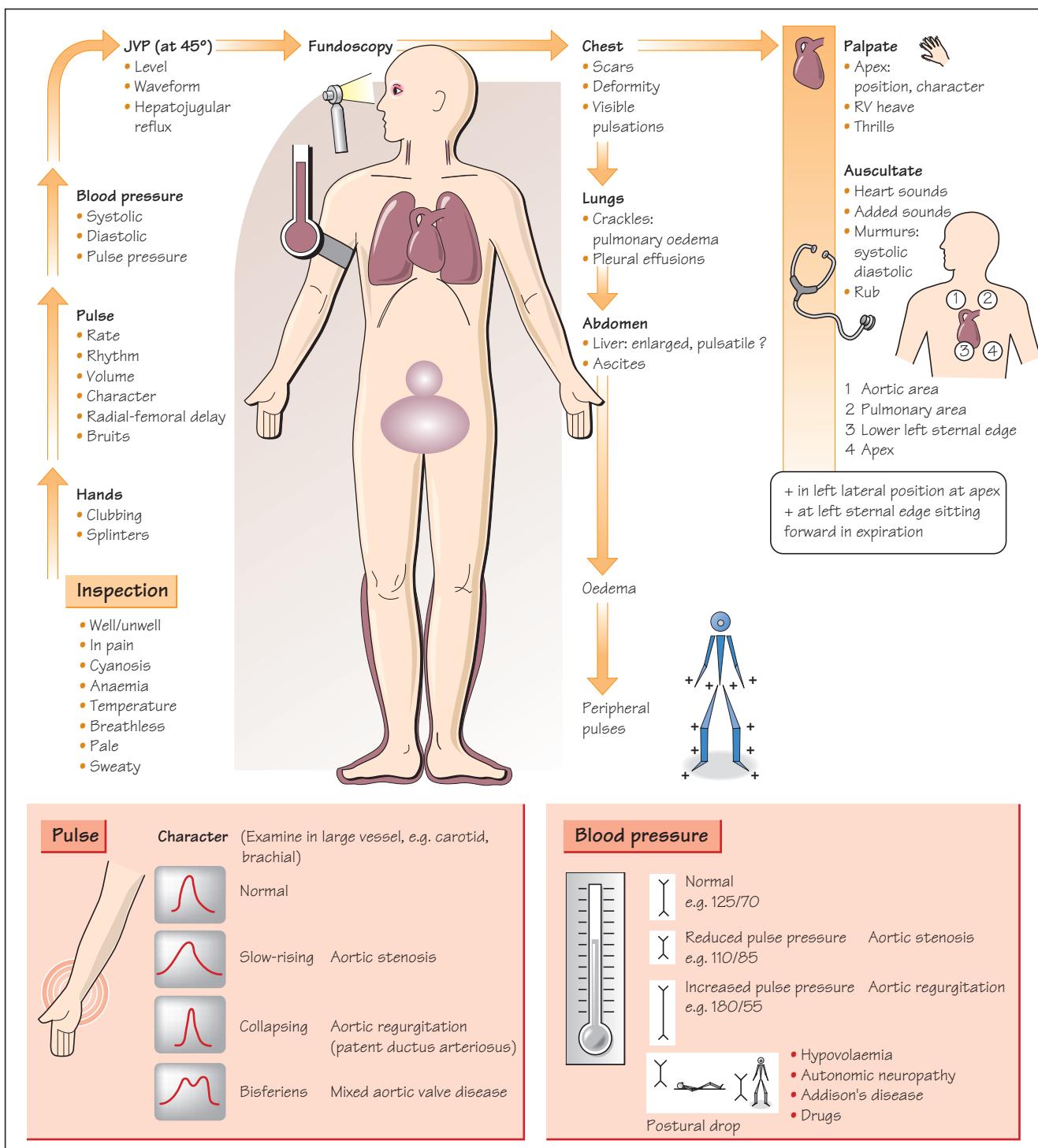
Seek the patient’s permission and explain what you are going to do. Ask whether there is any pain or tenderness. Begin the examination lightly and gently and then use firmer pressure. Define any abnormalities carefully, perhaps with measurement. Check if there are thrills.

### Percuss

Percuss comparing sides. Listen and ‘feel’ for any differences. Ensure that this does not cause pain or discomfort.

### Auscultate

- Ensure the stethoscope is functioning and take time to listen. Consider the positioning of the patient to optimize sounds; for example, sitting forward and listening in expiration for aortic regurgitation.
- If abnormalities are found at any stage, try to compare them with the ‘normal’; for example, compare the percussion note over equivalent areas of the chest.



## History

Diseases affecting the cardiovascular system can present in a variety of ways:

- chest pain
- breathlessness
- oedema
- palpitations
- syncope
- fatigue
- stroke
- peripheral vascular disease.

### Chest pain

- What is the pain like? Where is it?
- Where does it radiate to?
- What was the onset? Sudden, gradual? What was the patient doing when the pain started?
- What brings it on?
- What takes the pain away?
- How severe is it?
- Has the patient had it before?
- What else did the patient notice? Nausea, vomiting, sweating, palpitations, fever, anxiety, cough, haemoptysis?
- What did the patient think it was/is?

**Cardiac ischaemia** ‘Classically’ this is central chest pain with radiation to the left arm, both arms and/or jaw (however, it is often ‘atypical’). It can be described as pressure, heaviness or as an ache. It is of gradual onset, perhaps precipitated by exertion, cold or anxiety. It can be alleviated by rest, GTN.

Myocardial infarction may additionally have nausea, sweating, vomiting, anxiety (even fear of imminent death).

**Pericarditis** This is central pain, sharp, with no relation to exertion. It may alleviate on sitting forward. It can be exacerbated by inspiration or coughing.

**Pleuritic pain** This is a sharp pain exacerbated by respiration, movement and coughing.

### Breathlessness

- Breathlessness due to cardiac disease is most usually due to pulmonary oedema.
- The breathlessness is more prominent when lying flat (orthopnoea) or may present suddenly in the night (PND) or be present on minimal exertion.
- It may be accompanied by cough and wheeze and, if very severe, frothy pink sputum.

## Oedema

(swelling, usually due to fluid accumulation)  
Peripheral oedema is usually dependent, commonly affecting the legs and the sacral area. If it is very severe, more widespread oedema can occur.

## Palpitations

There may be a sensation of the heart racing or thumping. Establish provocation, onset, duration, speed and rhythm of the heart rate, and the frequency of episodes. Are the episodes accompanied by chest pain, syncope and breathlessness?

## Syncope

(sudden, brief loss of consciousness)  
Syncope may occur as a result of tachyarrhythmias, bradycardias or, rarely, exertion induced in aortic stenosis (it is also seen in neurological conditions such as epilepsy).

- What can the patient remember? What was the patient doing? Were there palpitations, chest pain or other symptoms?
- Was the episode witnessed? What do the witnesses describe? (Was there pallor, cyanosis, flushing on recovery, abnormal movements?)
- Was there tongue biting, urinary incontinence? How quickly did the patient recover?

## Past medical history

Ask about risk factors for IHD (smoking, hypertension, diabetes, hyperlipidaemia, previous IHD, cerebrovascular disease or PVD).

- Ask about rheumatic fever.
- Ask about recent dental work (infective endocarditis).
- Any known heart murmur?
- Any intravenous drug abuse?

## Family history

Any family history of IHD, hyperlipidaemia, sudden death, cardiomyopathy or congenital heart disease?

## Social history

- Does or did the patient smoke?
- What is the patient’s alcohol intake?
- What is the patient’s occupation?
- What is the patient’s exercise capacity?
- Any lifestyle limitations due to disease?

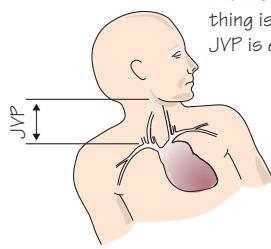
## Drugs

Ask about drugs for cardiac disease and drugs with cardiac side-effects.

*Continued on pp. 38–39.*

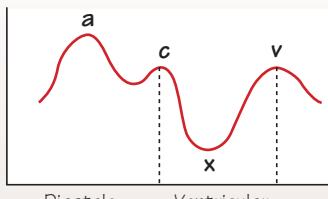
## Jugular venous pressure (JVP)

- Normal height 2-4 cm
- Elevated JVP
  - Right heart failure
  - Fluid overload
  - SVC obstruction



The most important thing is whether the JVP is elevated or not

## Waveform



(usually only useful once you know the diagnosis)

### Large 'a'-waves

- Pulmonary hypertension
- Tricuspid stenosis
- Pulmonary stenosis

### Cannon waves

- Complete heart block
- Atrial flutter
- Ventricular pacing
- Ventricular tachycardia

### Large 'v'-waves

- Tricuspid regurgitation

### Raised JVP on inspiration

- = 'Kussmaul's' sign
- Pericardial effusion/tamponade
- Constrictive pericarditis

## Apex beat

- Displaced away from mid-clavicular line 5th intercostal space

Suggests cardiac enlargement

- Sustained

LV hypertrophy

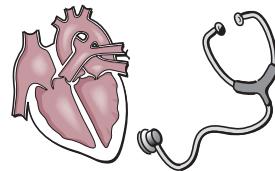
- Tapping

Mitral stenosis

- Hyperdynamic

Volume overload  
e.g. aortic regurgitation

## Murmurs



Maximal intensity

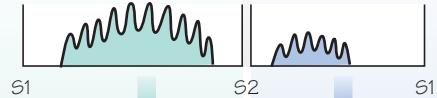
Radiation

Timing/character

Added sounds

- Barely audible
- Quiet
- Easily audible
- Loud + thrill
- Very loud + thrill
- Heard without stethoscope + thrill

## Common murmurs



### Systolic

#### Ejection

- Radiates to carotids
- ± Slow upstroke
- ± Low volume
- ± Narrow pulse pressure

#### Aortic stenosis/sclerosis

- Pulmonary stenosis
- Pulmonary VSD

### Diastolic

#### Early diastolic

- Loudest at lower left sternal edge
- ± Collapsing pulse
- ± Wide pulse pressure

#### Aortic regurgitation

- Pulmonary regurgitation

#### Pansystolic

- Loudest at apex
- Radiation (?) to axilla

#### Mitral regurgitation

- Tricuspid regurgitation

#### Mid-diastolic

- Loudest at apex
- ± Loud S1
- ± Tapping apex
- ± RV heave

#### Mitral stenosis

- Tricuspid stenosis

- Remember several cardiac valve defects may be present
- Right-sided murmurs increased in intensity on inspiration

## **Examination**

- Is the patient well or unwell? Is the patient comfortable/distressed/in pain/anxious?
- Does the patient need immediate resuscitation?
- Consider the need for oxygen, intravenous access, ECG monitoring.
- Is the patient pale, cyanosed, breathless, coughing, etc?
- What is the patient's temperature?
- Inspect for any scars, sputum, etc.
- Stigmata of hypercholesterolaemia (arcus, xanthelasma) and smoking?

## **Hands**

Is there clubbing, splinter haemorrhages, good peripheral perfusion?

## **Pulse**

- What are the rate, rhythm, volume and character of the radial pulse?
- Assess pulse character at large pulse (brachial, carotid, femoral).
- Are all peripheral pulses present?
- Is there radial–femoral delay?

## **Blood pressure** (see Chapter 36)

- What are the systolic, diastolic and hence pulse pressures?
- Is there a postural fall in BP?
- For diastolic BP use Korotkoff V (when sounds disappear).

## **Jugular venous pressure**

- What is the level of the JVP? (Describe it as centimetres above the sternal angle [or clavicle] when at 45°.)

• Is there hepatojugular reflux (or abdominojugular test)? (The rise in JVP with firm pressure over the right upper-quadrant of the abdomen.)

• Is there an abnormal JVP waveform (e.g. cannon waves)?

• Inspect the mouth, tongue, teeth, praecordium (any scars, abnormal pulsations).

• **Palpate** for position and character of **apex beat**. Any right ventricular *heave*, any *thrills*?

• **Auscultate heart.** Listen for first heart sound, second heart sound (normally split?), added heart sounds (gallop?), systolic murmurs, diastolic murmurs, rubs, clicks, carotid and femoral bruits. Auscultate in left lateral position (particularly for mitral murmurs) and leaning forward in expiration (particularly for early diastolic murmur of aortic regurgitation).

• **Auscultate lungs.** Pleural effusions, crackles?

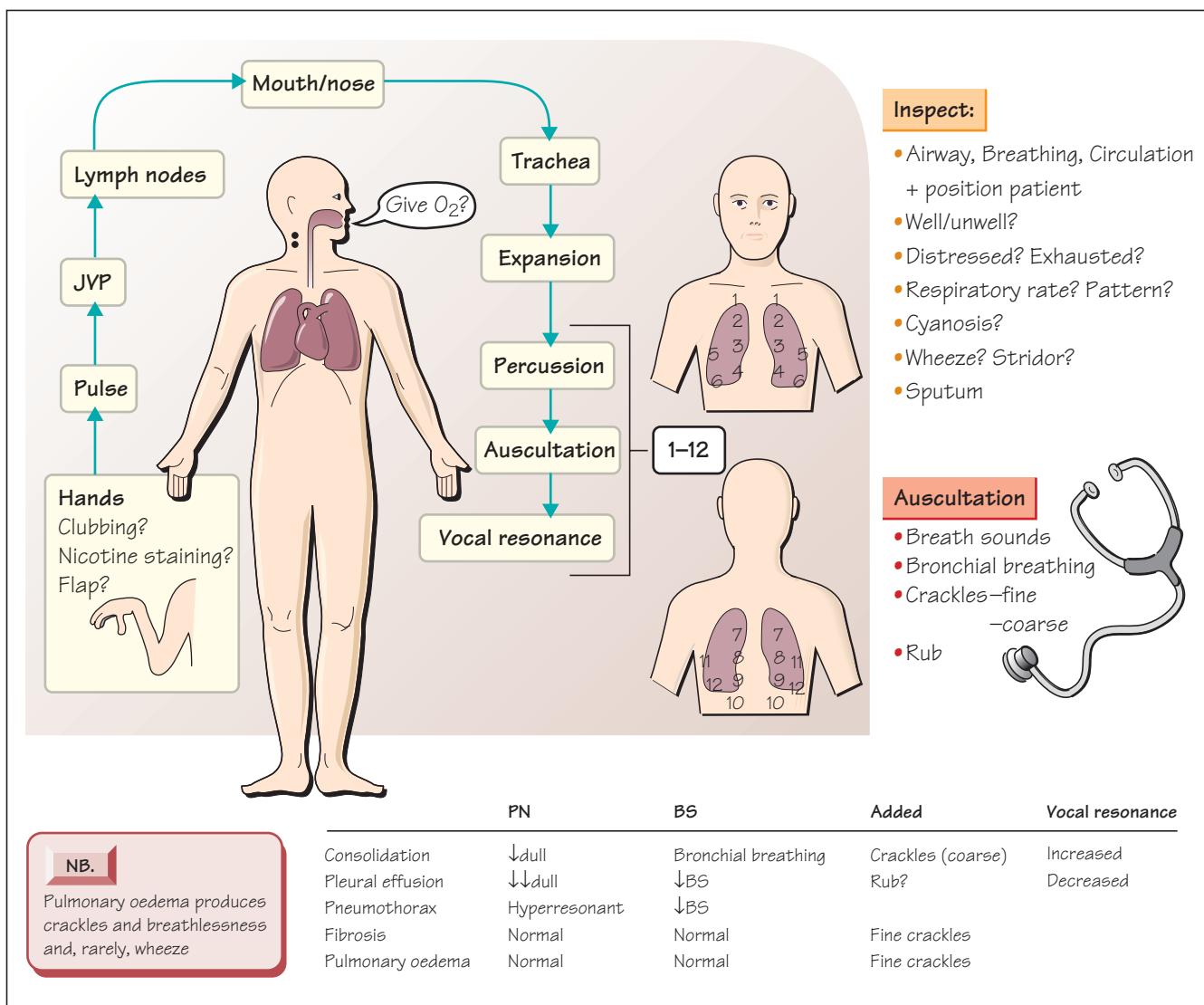
• **Peripheral oedema** (ankles, legs, sacrum)?

• **Palpate peripheral pulses:**

- radial
- brachial
- carotid
- femoral
- popliteal
- posterior tibial
- dorsalis pedis.

• **Palpate the liver.** Is it enlarged? Is it pulsatile (suggesting tricuspid regurgitation)? Ascites?

• **Fundoscopy:** changes of hypertension?



## History

Diseases affecting the respiratory system may present with breathlessness, cough, haemoptysis, or chest pain.

### Breathlessness

- Is the patient breathless at rest, on exertion or when lying flat (orthopnoea)?
- How far can the patient walk, run or climb upstairs?
- Is it a chronic condition or has it occurred suddenly?
- Is it accompanied by a wheeze or stridor?

### Cough

- Is it dry or productive?
- If productive, what colour is the sputum? Is it green and purulent? Is blood coughed up (haemoptysis)? Is it 'rusty' (pneumonia) or pink and frothy (pulmonary oedema)?
- Does it occur every winter or is this a new symptom?

## Haemoptysis

- How many times? How much blood is expectorated?

### Chest pain

- When did it start? What type of pain? Where is it and where does it radiate to? Is it worsened/alleviated by breathing, posture, movement? Is there localized tenderness?
- Disorders affecting the respiratory system commonly produce a 'pleuritic-type' pain that is sharp, localized, exacerbated by breathing and coughing.

### Systemic manifestations

- Any weight loss due to, e.g., a bronchial malignancy.
- Any fever, rigors, weight loss, malaise, night sweats, lymphadenopathy, skin rash?
- Are there gaps in breathing (apnoea) accompanied by snoring and/or excessive daytime sleepiness suggesting obstructive

sleep apnoea (especially in the obese with increased collar size)?

## Past medical history

- Does the patient have previous respiratory conditions? Asthma, COPD, TB or TB exposure?
- Was the patient ever admitted to hospital for breathlessness?
- Did the patient ever need ventilation?
- Any known chest X-ray abnormalities?

## Drugs

- What medication is the patient taking?
- Any recent changes to the patient's medication?
- Any responses to treatment in the past?
- Is the patient using tablets, inhalers, nebulizers or oxygen?

## Allergies

Any allergies to drugs/environmental antigens (e.g. pollen, cats, dogs, etc.)?

## Smoking

Is the patient currently smoking? Did the patient ever smoke? If so, how many cigarettes a day?

## Family and social history

- Has the patient been exposed to asbestos, dust or other toxins?
- What is the patient's occupation?
- Any family history of respiratory problems?
- Does the patient own any pets, including birds?

## Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell?
- Is there an adequate airway? If not, correct with head position, oral airway, laryngeal mask or endotracheal intubation.
- Is the patient breathing? If not, ensure airway, give supplemental oxygen and ventilate.
- Is the circulation adequate?
- Is the patient cyanosed (peripherally or centrally)? *If there is cyanosis, hypoxaemia on pulse oximetry, respiratory distress or the patient appears unwell give oxygen via face mask.* (Caution with a high concentration of oxygen is only relevant in patients with COPD who may have a hypoxic ventilatory drive.)
- What is the respiratory rate and pattern?
- Is there breathlessness at rest, on moving, getting dressed or getting onto a couch?
- What is the patient's general appearance? Cachexia, thin, signs of SVC obstruction (fixed elevation of JVP, dilatation of superficial chest veins, facial swelling)?
- Is the patient comfortable, in pain, exhausted, scared or distressed?
- Check for signs of respiratory distress: rapid respiration rate, use of accessory muscles, tracheal tug, intercostal recession, paradoxical abdominal movements, use of pursed lips or respiratory rate falling as patient becomes fatigued.
- Is there audible wheeze (largely expiratory noise) or stridor (principally inspiratory sound)?

- Is there clubbing or wrist tenderness (hypertrophic osteoarthropathy), nicotine staining of fingers or a flap (consistent with carbon dioxide retention)?
- Examine the patient's pulse and the JVP, for lymphadenopathy, the mouth and the nose.
- What is the position of the trachea? Any deviation?

## Chest

Examine the chest anteriorly and posteriorly by inspection, palpation, percussion and auscultation. Compare the left and right sides and ensure the examination includes the axillae and lateral parts of the chest.

## Inspection

- Shape of chest wall and spine?
- Scars (radiotherapy or surgery)?
- Prominent veins (SVC obstruction)?
- Respiratory rate and rhythm?
- Chest wall movement (symmetrical, hyperexpanded)?
- Intercostal recession?

## Palpation

Examine for tenderness, position of apex beat and chest wall expansion.

## Percussion

Examine for dullness or hyperresonance.

## Auscultation

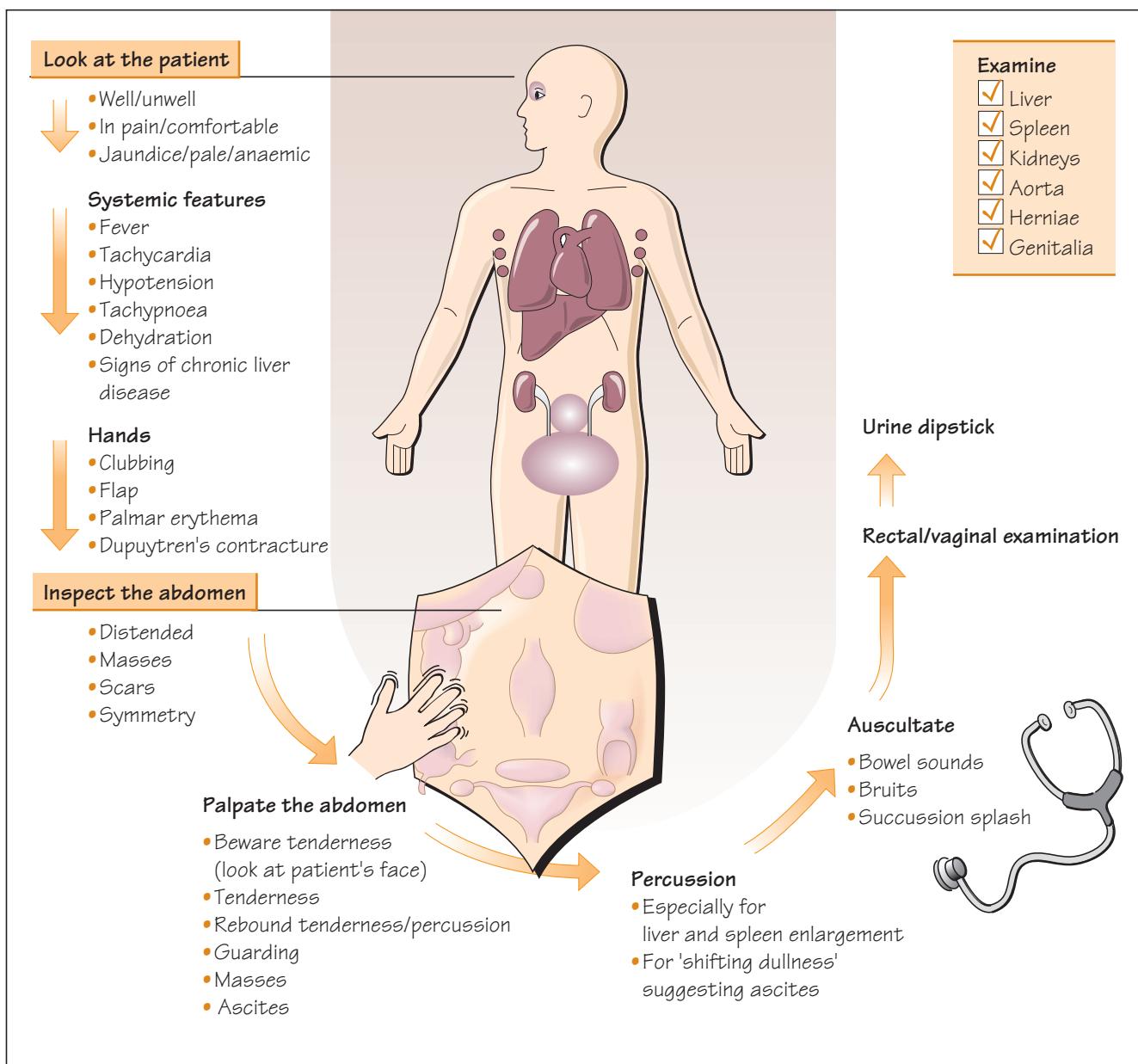
- Use the diaphragm of the stethoscope.
- Listen for breath sounds, bronchial breathing and added sounds (crackles, rub, wheeze).
- Diminished/absent breath sounds occur in effusion, collapse, consolidation with blocked airway, fibrosis, pneumothorax and raised diaphragm.
- Bronchial breathing can be found with consolidation and collapse.
- Examine for vocal resonance and/or vocal fremitus.

## Evidence

There is a paucity of good-quality evidence on the sensitivity and specificity of clinical signs in respiratory disease. Several studies do suggest a low interobserver agreement for chest signs, low sensitivity and specificity in diagnosing pneumonia on examination alone (Spiteri *et al.* 1988; Wipf *et al.* 1999). This emphasizes the need for other investigations, e.g. a chest X-ray, if the patient is unwell.

Spiteri MA, Cook DG & Clarke SW. Reliability of eliciting physical signs in examination of the chest. *Lancet* 1988; **1**: 873–5.

Wipf JE, Lipsky BA, Hirschmann JV *et al.* Diagnosing pneumonia by physical examination: relevant or relic? *Arch Intern Med* 1999; **159**: 1082–7.



## History

Disorders affecting the abdomen and GI system may present with a very wide range of different symptoms:

- abdominal pain
- vomiting
- haematemesis (vomiting blood or 'coffee grounds')
- difficulty swallowing (dysphagia)
- indigestion or dyspepsia
- diarrhoea
- change in bowel habit
- abdominal swelling or lump

- reduced appetite
- recurrent mouth ulcers
- weight loss or symptoms due to malabsorption
- melaena (black, tarry stool due to blood from the upper GI tract) or blood per rectum.

It is important to assess both whether there is local disease and whether there are any systemic effects such as weight loss or malabsorption.

## Past medical history

- Any previous GI disease?

- Are there any previous abdominal operations?
- Establish the patient's alcohol and smoking history. A detailed alcohol history is essential.
- What drugs has the patient taken? Any 'over the counter' treatments?
- Has the patient taken any treatments for GI disease, including any that may be a possible cause of the symptoms (e.g. NSAIDs and dyspepsia)?

## Family history

Are there any inherited conditions affecting the GI system?

## Examination

### Look at the patient

- Is the patient well or unwell, comfortable or in pain, moving easily or lying motionless?
- Is there pallor, jaundice or lymphadenopathy?
- Is the patient thin or obese?
- Look for systemic features of illness (fever, tachycardia, hypotension, postural hypotension, tachypnoea, dehydration and hypovolaemia).
- Look for signs of chronic liver disease (spider naevi, gynaecomastia, bruising, parotid hypertrophy, palmar erythema, leuconychia, Dupuytren's contracture, excoriations and a metabolic flap [asterixis]).

### Examine the hands

Is there clubbing, palmar erythema, Dupuytren's contracture or a metabolic flap (asterixis)?

### Examine the mouth and tongue

- Look for angular stomatitis, aphthous ulcers, telangiectasia
- Look for supraclavicular and other *lymphadenopathy* (Virchow's node or Troissier's sign – left supraclavicular lymphadenopathy due to spread from abdominal carcinoma).

### Examine the abdomen

Ensure patient is warm, comfortable and there is sufficient exposure of the abdomen. The patient should be lying flat with the head supported. Relax the patient.

### Inspect the abdomen

- Is it distended, asymmetrical, are there masses, scars, visible peristalsis, stoma?
- Ask the patient to cough, take a deep breath and look carefully.

### Palpate the abdomen

- Ask if they have any pain or tenderness: be particularly careful if they have. Look at the patient's face whilst examining for any tenderness or pain. Palpate lightly with fingertips ± ulnar border of index finger and then more deeply. Palpate all areas of the abdomen. Any masses or other abnormalities should be assessed in great detail for size, position, shape, consistency, location, edge, mobility with respiration and pulsatility.

- Is there any tenderness? If so, define the area with care.
- Any rigidity?
- Is there rebound tenderness? (pain on quick removal of examining hand – some clinicians prefer to use percussion to minimize pain).
- Is there guarding?

### Auscultate

Auscultate for bowel sounds (absent/present, normal/abnormal, hyperactive, high-pitched, tinkling [suggesting obstruction]).

### Is there ascites?

Abdominal distension, flank dullness with shifting dullness?

## Examine for specific organs

### Examine the liver

- Is it enlarged? Is it palpable below the right costal margin?
- Palpate with ulnar border and pulp of index finger during gentle respiration. Begin in the right iliac fossa.
- Measure. Define the upper extent by percussion. Is the liver smoothly enlarged, tender, pulsatile, hard or irregular (suggesting tumour)? Is there a bruit?

### Examine the spleen

- Is the spleen enlarged? Is it palpable below the left costal margin? Begin in right iliac fossa and palpate towards left costal margin. Measure. Define the upper extent by percussion. Is it tender? Bruit? Does it move with respiration?
- Are there any other signs of portal hypertension e.g. ascites, caput medusae, distended veins (determine direction of flow)?

### Examine the kidneys

Are the kidneys palpable? Ballottable? Smoothly or irregularly enlarged (consider polycystic kidney disease), bruits?

### Examine for an aortic aneurysm

Size, pulsatile, tender?

### Examine for inguinal and femoral herniae

Cough impulse, irreducible, tender?

### Examine external genitalia

- Any testicular tenderness, lumps, enlargement or penile discharge?
- Are there any vulval lumps, ulcers, discharge or prolapse?

### Perform digital rectal examination

Is there tenderness, abnormal masses, prostatic enlargement, stool, blood or mucus present?

### Vaginal examination

Consider performing a vaginal examination.

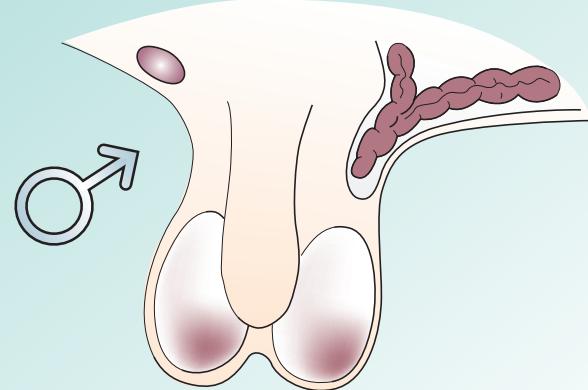
### Urine and faeces examination

Consider examining urine (dipstick ± microscopy) and faeces (faecal occult blood).

- Is there gynaecomastia?
- Is there normal distribution of facial and body hair?

**NB.**

Privacy  
Consent/explanation  
Chaperone

**Inspect**

- Penis
- Scrotum
- Inguinal area

**Palpate**

- Testes
- Herniae
- Coughing
- Lymph nodes

**Rectal examination**

- Prostate
- sulcus
- enlarged
- lumps

**Urine**

## History

Presentations can include:

- dysuria (pain or discomfort on passing urine)
- urethral discharge
- genital ulceration
- erectile dysfunction or other sexual difficulties
- infertility
- testicular pain or lump
- urinary symptoms, such as frequency.

Assess each symptom in detail. A ‘permission giving’ style of questioning may be helpful when asking about sensitive topics; for example, ‘Some men with diabetes find it hard to achieve erections. Have you had any problems like that?’ If there is erectile dysfunction, discover when the problem occurs, if normal erections are ever achieved (e.g. in the early morning) and what the patient thinks the difficulty is.

Ask in detail about the urinary stream (hesitancy, frequency, power of stream, terminal dribbling, spraying, nocturia).

## Past medical history

- Any previous genitourinary problems? Ask particularly about STDs.
- Any previous UTI, haematuria or calculi?
- Any history of cardiovascular or neurological diseases?
- Any investigations for infertility?
- Any history of testicular disease (e.g. torsion)?

- In a patient with sexual dysfunction consider the possibility of:
  - *diabetes* which can eventually cause impotence in up to half of affected men
  - *depression and psychotic illnesses* which cause loss of sexual desire in a high proportion of men and drug treatments of these may also affect sexual function
  - *heart disease*, especially when combined with hyperlipidaemia and arteriopathy, accounts for erectile dysfunction in many men
  - *other hormone deficiencies*, especially thyroid and testosterone, reduce sexual desire
  - *operations and trauma*, especially prostate, can cause problems. Damage to the pelvis or spine is another obvious cause
  - *prolactinoma* may, rarely, present as a loss of sexual desire and headaches in a younger man.

## Drugs

Consider drugs that might produce erectile dysfunction (e.g. anti-hypertensives).

## Alcohol and smoking history

Ask the patient about any history of alcohol or smoking.

## Family and social history

- Ask about the patient’s sexual activity and orientation.

- Does any partner have any problems or symptoms of STD (e.g. vaginal discharge)?
- What contraceptive measures has/does the patient use?
- Has the patient fathered children?

## Functional enquiry

Are there any symptoms of renal disease, depression?

## Examination

• Ensure that the patient is comfortable, chaperoned if appropriate, that there is privacy and that they understand fully what the examination will involve. Remember the patient will usually be anxious or embarrassed and the examination may be uncomfortable and should be undertaken gently.

- Expose the genitalia fully.
  - Inspect carefully the penis, scrotum and inguinal region.
  - Look for any lumps, warts, discolouration, discharge, rashes.
  - Inspect the urethral meatus and retract the foreskin to expose the glans.
  - Palpate the penis, vas deferens, epididymus and testes.
- Examine for testicular descent, size, look for hydrocoele, varicocoele, hypospadias, peyronies' disease, phimosis
- If any lumps are apparent you can examine them with transillumination for fluid.
  - Examine for herniae with coughing.
  - Perform a digital rectal examination.

• Examine the anus for any abnormalities. Examine for any rectal lumps and palpate prostate gland. Is there any tenderness? Is the median sulcus preserved? Is the prostate enlarged? Is it hard, irregular, craggy, fixed?

- Examine the urine with dipstick and microscopy for blood, protein, white blood cells and casts.

• If there is erectile dysfunction it may be appropriate to examine carefully for peripheral vascular disease, test for diabetes mellitus and any neurological deficits. There is dual innervation of the male reproductive system from the sacral roots (S2–4) through the pudendal and pelvic nerves with predominantly somatic and parasympathetic fibres, and from the thoracolumbar roots (T11–L2) through the hypogastric, sympathetic, and pelvic nerves. Tactile (dorsal column) and pinprick (spinothalamic tract) sensation in the perineal and lower limb dermatomes should be assessed. If there is concern about the possibility of neurological deficit the perineal reflexes may be tested, require very careful explanation and can provide evidence of spinal cord dysfunction:

- *Bulbocavernosus reflex (S2 and S3)*. Firmly squeezing the glans penis provokes a contraction of the bulbocavernosus muscle located between the scrotum and anal sphincter.

- *Bulbo-anal reflex (S3 and S4)*. Firmly squeezing the glans penis provokes a contraction of the anal sphincter.

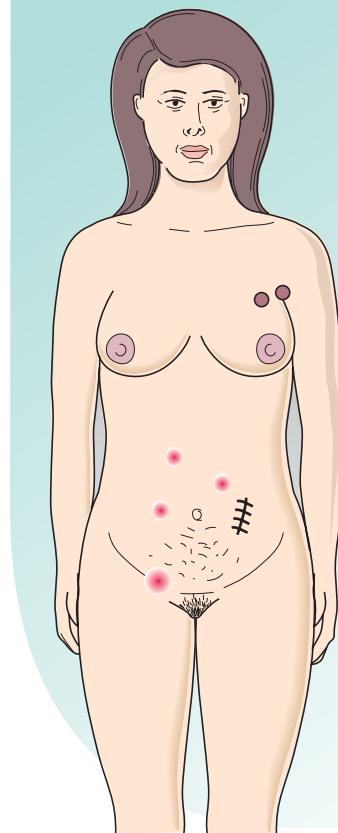
- *Anal reflex (S4 and S5)*. Stroking or scratching the skin adjacent to the anus provokes a contraction of the anal sphincter.

**History**

- Menstruation
- Bleeding
- Discharge

**Sexual history**

- Contraception
- Urinary symptoms
- Obstetric history

**NB.**

- Privacy
- Consent/explanation
- Chaperone

**Speculum examination****Examination**

- Well/unwell
- Anaemia
- Lymph nodes

**Breast examination****Abdominal examination**

- Scars
- Masses
- Distension
- Striae
- Body hair
- Herniae

**Vaginal examination****Inspection****Digital bimanual examination**

Gynaecological problems can present with a variety of symptoms including:

- heavy periods (menorrhagia)
- no menstruation (amenorrhoea)
- vaginal discharge
- suprapubic pain
- vaginal bleeding (e.g. post coital or intermenstrual )
- contraceptive problems
- painful sexual intercourse (dyspareunia).

**Menstruation**

- How often are the patient's periods? How long does the patient's menstruation last? Are the periods regular, irregular? Are they heavy (menorrhagia) (ask about number of pads, tampons and presence of clots)? Are they painful?
- Any intermenstrual bleeding?
- Any postcoital bleeding?
- Any vaginal discharge? If so what is it like?
- When was the last menstrual period?
- Any postmenopausal bleeding?

**Sexual activity/contraception/cervix**

- Is the patient sexually active? Are there any problems with sexual intercourse?

- Is intercourse painful (dyspareunia)? Does it hurt deep inside or superficially?
- What contraceptive is the patient using?
- What contraceptive measures has the patient used in the past?
- When was the patient's last cervical smear?
- Has the patient ever had an abnormal smear? If so what was done (e.g. colposcopy)?

**Urinary symptoms**

- Any urinary frequency, dysuria, haematuria, nocturia, urgency or incontinence?
- If there is incontinence, when? With straining, coughing or urgency?
- Does the patient have any sensation of a mass in the vagina or a dragging heavy sensation (e.g. due to prolapse)?

**Past medical history**

- Has the patient had any previous gynaecological operations, STDs or significant medical conditions? Any previous ectopic pregnancies?

**Past obstetric history**

- Has the patient ever been pregnant? If so ask about deliveries, health of any children now, how they were born and what their birth weight was.

- Has the patient had any miscarriages or terminations of pregnancy?
- Did the patient have any major complications during pregnancy or labour?

## Drugs

- Does the patient take any regular medications or contraception?
- Does the patient have any allergies?

## Family history

Any family history of breast or ovarian carcinoma?

## Social history

- Ask about any current relationships. Is the patient married? Does she have any children?
- What is the patient's occupation?

## The gynaecological examination

Remember that over a third of women prefer to be examined by a doctor of their own sex and it should be considered if this is possible, and that in some cultures intimate examinations may not be acceptable.

### General appearance

- Is the patient well or unwell, thin or overweight?
- Any sign of anaemia or lymphadenopathy?
- Look for secondary sexual characteristics and hirsutism.
- What is the patient's pulse, BP and temperature?

### Breast examination (see also Chapters 20 and 53)

- Inspect the breasts. Are they symmetrical? Is there an obvious lump, is there tethering of the skin? Is the overlying skin abnormal (e.g. *peau d'orange* appearance, puckering, ulceration)?
- Examine the breast with the patient's arms elevated. Are the nipples normal, inverted, any discharge?
- Lightly palpate each quadrant of the breast including the axillary tail of breast tissue. Use the palmar surface of the fingers. Are there any lumps? If so, where and what size? What is their consistency (firm, soft rubbery, craggy, etc.)? Are the lumps tender? Examine the overlying skin for discolouration and tethering. Examine for tethering of the lump to deep structures.
- Examine for axillary and other lymphadenopathy. Are the arms normal or swollen?

### Examine the abdomen

- Inspect the abdomen for scars, masses, distension, striae, body hair distribution and herniae.
- Palpate the abdomen for masses and tenderness. Palpate specifically for masses from umbilicus down to the symphysis pubis. If there are masses, can you get below them or do they seem to arise from the pelvis?
- Percuss the abdomen for masses and for shifting dullness.

## Vaginal examination

- Ensure a chaperone is present if appropriate and that there is privacy. Remember the patient may feel anxious and embarrassed.
- Explain that you are going to examine the patient internally and that it may be uncomfortable but that it should not be painful.
- Inspect for any lumps, ulcers, discolouration, discharge and obvious prolapse.
- Using lubricating jelly and gloved fingers, gently insert the first two fingers of the right hand into the vagina. Place the left hand above the symphysis pubis and push downwards gently into the pelvis.
- Examine for the cervix, the uterus and the adnexa. Are there any masses, irregularities or abnormal tenderness?

## Cusco's speculum examination

This is designed to allow inspection of the cervix and vaginal walls.

Ensure the speculum is warmed and lubricated. Insert the speculum with the blades closed and parallel to the labia. Rotate it 90° and then insert it a little further in. Open the blades slowly and ensure the patient is not uncomfortable throughout. It should now be possible to visualize the cervix. Look for irregularities, bleeding and ulceration. A smear may be taken. Slightly withdraw the speculum and partially close it. As the speculum is further withdrawn the vaginal walls may be inspected for abnormalities.

## Sim's speculum

This speculum examination is undertaken with the patient in the left lateral position with legs curled up. It can enable better inspection of the vaginal walls and is used in particular if prolapse is suspected.

## Rectal examination

A rectal examination may be required, particularly if there is posterior wall prolapse or malignant cervical disease.

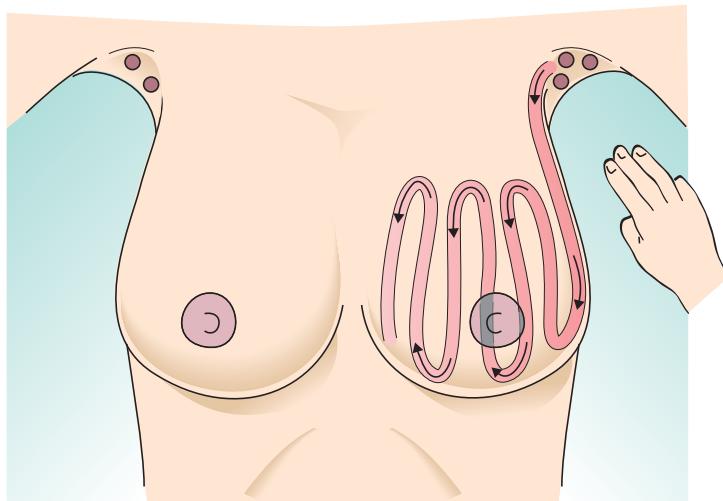
## Evidence

Some serious gynaecological disorders such as ovarian cancer have been considered to have few symptoms, however recent studies have highlighted that women with ovarian cancer may have symptoms and report them to doctors many months prior to diagnosis. These include abdominal distension, loss of appetite, increased urinary frequency, abdominal pain, abdominal bloating and postmenopausal and rectal bleeding.

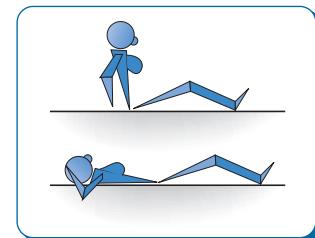
Hamilton W et al. Risk of ovarian cancer in women with symptoms in primary care: population based case-control study. *BMJ* 2009; 339: 2998.

**Inspect**

- Size
- Symmetry
- Dimpling
- Skin
- Tethering
- Nipple
  - Retraction
  - Skin changes
  - Discharge

**Palpate**

- Pulp of index, middle and ring fingers
- Small circular motions gradually increasing in pressure
- Cover entire breast including axillary tail
- Examine for lymphadenopathy

**History**

Diseases of the breast may present with lumps, pain, rash, discharge from the nipple or they may produce systemic symptoms (e.g. fever with breast abscess or weight loss and back pain with metastatic carcinoma of the breast).

**Past medical history**

Any previous breast disease, lumps, mammography, biopsy, mastectomy, radiotherapy or chemotherapy?

**Drugs**

- Any use of tamoxifen?
- Any use of oestrogens?

**Family history**

Any family history of breast cancer?

**Functional enquiry**

- Patient's menstrual cycle?
- Systemic symptoms that might suggest metastatic disease, such as weight loss, back pain, jaundice or lymphadenopathy?

**Examination**

- Ensure the patient is comfortable, warm, understands what you are going to do. Also ensure that there is a chaperone present if appropriate and the patient is lying at 45°.
- Inspect the breasts for shape, size, symmetry, skin abnormalities and scars. Look for any obvious lumps, dimpling, skin tethering. Ask the

patient to lift their arms above their head and inspect again. Look at the nipples for retraction, any skin changes or discharge.

• Many practitioners then lay the patient flat. Palpate the breasts, gently initially and then more firmly using the pulps of the first three fingers. Use gentle circular motions and examine each quadrant of the breast and the axillary tail. Take time to examine carefully. If any lumps are defined examine them carefully assessing size, consistency, tethering to skin or deep structures. It may be helpful to examine with the arm elevated above the head and with the patient sitting at 45°.

- Palpate for axillary and supraclavicular lymphadenopathy. If any abnormality is found describe:
- Location in three dimensions (subcutaneous, midlevel, next to chest wall, and according to a clock face as the examiner faces the patient).
- Size.
- Shape (round, oblong, irregular, lobular [having several rounded or curved extensions from a central mass]).
- Mobility (mobile, fixed to skin or chest wall)
- Consistency (soft, similar to surrounding breast tissue, hard).
- External texture (smooth, irregular).

**Evidence**

Barton MB, Harris R & Fletcher SW. Does this patient have breast cancer? The screening clinical breast examination: should it be done? How? *JAMA* 1999; **282**: 1270–80.

**History**

Last menstrual period  
Menstrual cycle

**Any:**  
Bleeding  
Anaemia  
Hypertension  
Diabetes  
Infection  
Vomiting  
Thromboses

**Past obstetric history**  
Gravidity  
Parity  
Mode of delivery  
Complications

**Past gynaecological history**

What is the Blood Pressure?

Fundus

Symphysis pubis

**Examination**

Well/unwell  
Anaemia  
Fever  
Blood pressure  
Breast examination

Oedema  
Cardiovascular examination  
Respiratory examination  
Urinalysis

Uterine swelling  
Measure symphysis pubis—fundal height  
Tenderness  
Fetal parts:

- Lie
- Liquor volume
- Presentation
- Engagement
- Fetal heart

The pregnant woman may present routinely for an antenatal check or because of vaginal bleeding, labour, hypertension, pain or reduced fetal movements.

### History of present pregnancy

- When was the last day of the patient's most recent menstrual period and what is the normal length of her menstrual cycle?
- How many weeks gestation is she?
- Any bleeding, diabetes, anaemia, hypertension, urinary infection or problems during pregnancy?
- What symptoms have accompanied the patient's pregnancy (e.g. nausea, vomiting, breast tenderness, urinary frequency)?
- Consider the possibility of thromboses (e.g. DVT and pulmonary embolism).

### Past obstetric history

- Full details of all previous pregnancies (parity = number of deliveries of potentially viable babies; gravidity = number of pregnancies) to include gestation, mode of delivery, any complications for mother (especially pre-eclampsia) or baby, breast-feeding difficulties, birth-weight, sex, name and current health of children, any miscarriages and past gynaecological history.

- Ask in particular about heart disease, murmurs, diabetes, hypertension, anaemia, epilepsy and assess cardiorespiratory fitness.

### Obstetric examination

- In the general examination, examine carefully for blood pressure, oedema, urinalysis and hepatic tenderness or enlargement.
- Look for the anticipated uterine swelling, palpate the abdomen lightly and then slightly more firmly.
- Measure the symphysis to fundal height distance (after 24 weeks this should correspond in centimetre to gestation in weeks  $\pm 2$ ).
- Examine for fetal parts and determine the lie (longitudinal, transverse or oblique).
- Assess liquor volume: is it normal, reduced (fetal parts abnormally easy to palpate) or increased (tense with difficulty in distinguishing fetal parts)?
- Assess the presentation (the fetal part occupying the lower segment of the pelvis). Is the head engaged?
- Auscultate for fetal heart beat with Pinard's stethoscope (listening usually between fetal head and umbilicus): what is the heart rate? (it should be 110–160 b.p.m.)

**Central nervous system (CNS)**

- Conscious level (GCS)
- Handedness
- Higher function speech, memory, comprehension
- Cerebellar function
- Extrapyramidal function
- Cranial nerves

**Any localizing signs**

**Upper limbs**

- Inspect
- Tone
- Pyramidal drift
- Power
- Co-ordination
- Sensation
  - Pinprick
  - Light touch
  - Vibration sense
  - Joint position sense
  - Hot/cold

**Lower limbs**

- Inspect
- Tone
- SLR
- Power
- Co-ordination
- Sensation
  - Pinprick
  - Light touch
  - Vibration sense
  - Joint position sense
  - Hot/cold

**Gait**

The diagram illustrates the distribution of dermatomes (sensory nerve pathways) across the body. It shows the following levels:

- Upper Limbs:** C2, C3, L1, C4, T3-T12, C5, T1, C6.
- Abdominal Reflexes:** T11, C6.
- Lower Limbs:** L1-L5, S1-S3.
- Gait:** S1-S3, L2-L5, C6-C8.

Reflex points are indicated by hammer icons at various locations:

- Upper Limbs:** Biceps, Triceps, Supinator.
- Lower Limbs:** Knee, Ankle, Plantars.
- Gait:** C7, C8, S3.

## History

Abnormalities of the nervous system can present with a very wide range of symptoms that include:

- headache
- fits, faints or funny turns
- dizziness or vertigo
- problems with vision
- hearing disturbance
- abnormalities of smell/taste
- speech difficulties
- problems swallowing
- difficulty walking
- weakness in a limb(s)
- sensory disturbance
- pain
- involuntary movements or tremor
- problems with sphincter control (bladder/bowels)
- disturbance of higher mental functions, such as confusion or personality change.

## Past medical history

- Any previous neurological disorder?
- Any systemic diseases, particularly cardiovascular conditions? (Stroke is a very common cause of neurological deficit.)

## Drugs

Consider both treatments of neurological disorders and medications that might be causing symptoms.

## Family history

Any family history of neurological disease? (There are many important hereditary neurological conditions, e.g. Huntington's chorea.)

## Social history

- What are the patient's disabilities? (See Table 22.1.)
- What can't the patient do that he/she would like to do?
- Does the patient use any aids for mobility?
- What help does the patient receive?

## Functional enquiry

- Consider symptoms of raised intracranial pressure (headache, exacerbated with straining, coughing, waking in morning, visual disturbance).
- Are there any previous neurological symptoms such as visual disturbance, weakness or numbness?

## Examination

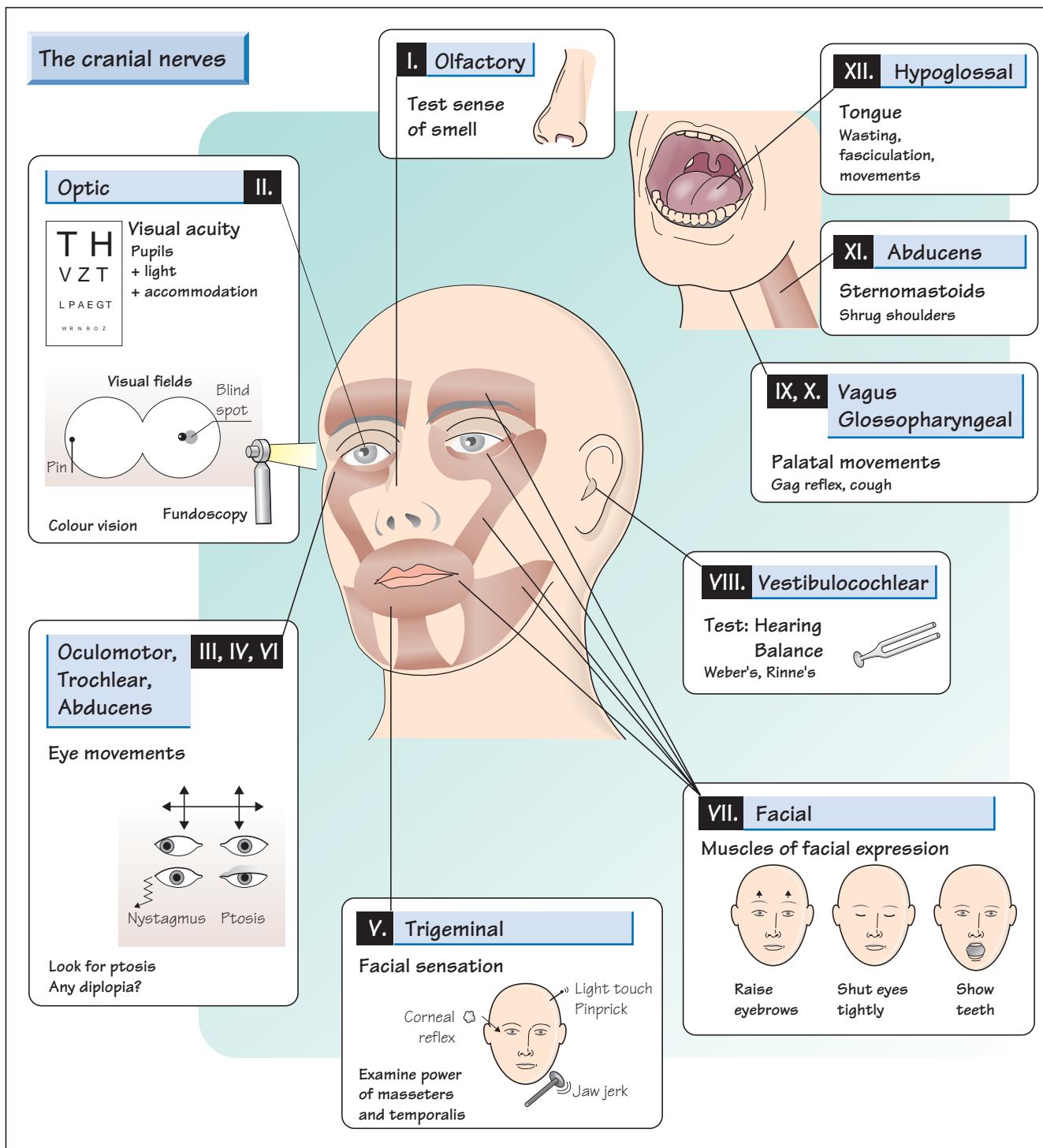
- In examining the nervous system the key objectives are to reveal and describe the deficits in function and to describe the likely

*Continued on pp. 52–53*

**Table 22.1** Barthel's Index of Daily Living

Activity	Score
Feeding	0 = unable 1 = needs help cutting, spreading butter, etc., or requires modified diet 2 = independent
Bathing	0 = dependent 1 = independent (or in shower) 0 = needs help with personal care 1 = independent face/hair/teeth/shaving (implements provided)
Grooming	0 = dependent 1 = needs help but can do about half unaided 2 = independent (including buttons, zips, laces, etc.)
Dressing	0 = incontinent (or needs to be given enemas) 1 = occasional accident 2 = continent
Bowels	0 = continent 1 = needs help, but can do something alone 2 = independent (on and off, dressing, wiping)
Bladder	0 = incontinent, or catheterized and unable to manage alone 1 = occasional accident (<once every day) 2 = continent
Toilet use	0 = dependent 1 = needs some help, but can do something alone 2 = independent (on and off, dressing, wiping)
Transfers (bed to chair and back)	0 = unable, no sitting balance 1 = major help (one or two people, physical), can sit 2 = minor help (verbal or physical) 3 = independent
Mobility (on level surfaces)	0 = immobile or <50 yards 1 = wheelchair independent, including corners, > 50 yards 2 = walks with help of one person (verbal or physical) > 50 yards 3 = independent (but may use any aid; e.g. stick) > 50 yards
Stairs	0 = unable 1 = needs help (verbal, physical, carrying aid) 2 = independent
<b>Total</b>	= /20

The total score can be useful as an estimate of dependence. As a rough guide, a score of 14 is often compatible with the level of support in a residential home; a score of 10 may just be compatible with discharge home with maximum support and a carer in attendance.



anatomical location of any lesion. Can the abnormalities be accounted for by a single lesion or are multiple lesions responsible? Is the problem due to a lesion in the brain, spinal cord, peripheral nerve or muscle?

- What is the *conscious level*? Assess with the Glasgow Coma Score.
- Examine *gait*. Ask the patient to walk, try heel-toe walking, examine for Romberg's sign.
- Is the patient right- or left-handed?

- Look at the patient. Are there any obvious abnormalities of posture, wasting or tremor?

#### Examine the upper limbs

- *Inspect* for obvious wasting, tremor, fasciculation, deformities and skin changes.
- Examine for pyramidal 'drift'; with arms outstretched, supine and with eyes closed.
- Examine for *tone* at the wrist and the elbow.

- Examine for *power*, comparing sides. Examine shoulder abduction, elbow flexion and extension, wrist extension, grip, finger abduction and adduction, and thumb abduction.
- Use MRC grades(0–5):
  - 0** complete paralysis
  - 1** visible contraction
  - 2** active movement with gravity eliminated
  - 3** movement against gravity
  - 4** movement against resistance
  - 5** normal power.
- Examine *co-ordination* through finger–nose testing, rapid movements of fingers, rapid alternating movements (if difficulty = dysdiadochokinesia in cerebellar disorder), pinch and ‘playing piano’.
- Test *reflexes* through biceps, triceps and supinator jerks (with reinforcement if necessary, e.g. clenching teeth).
- Examine *sensation*. Test light touch, pinprick, vibration sense, joint position sense and hot/cold reactions.
- Look for abnormalities that might correspond to dermatomal or peripheral nerve defects. Also test thoracic and abdominal sensation and test for abdominal reflexes.

### Examine the lower limbs

- *Inspect* for obvious wasting, fasciculation, deformities and skin changes.
- Examine for *tone* at the knee and, with the ‘rolling of the leg’ test and straight leg raises, check for possible sciatic nerve compression.
- Examine for *power*, comparing sides. Examine hip flexion, extension, abduction and adduction, knee extension and flexion, plantar flexion, dorsiflexion, inversion, eversion and great toe dorsiflexion.
- Use MRC grades (0–5).
- Examine *co-ordination* through the heel–toe test. Examine *reflexes*. Test knee, ankle and plantar responses, and examine for ankle clonus.
- Examine *sensation*. Test light touch, pinprick, vibration sense, joint position sense and hot/cold reactions.
- Look for abnormalities that might correspond to dermatomal or peripheral nerve defects.

### Examine the cranial nerves

#### I Olfactory:

- Test the sense of smell in each nostril.

#### II Optic:

- Test visual acuity.
- Test visual fields, examine for blind spot.
- Examine pupils and test direct and consensual reactions to light and accommodation.
- Examine with ophthalmoscope.

#### III, IV, VI Oculomotor, trochlear and abducens:

- Look for ptosis (drooping of the eyelid[s]).
- Examine eye movements and look for nystagmus.
- Enquire about any double vision.

#### V Trigeminal:

- Examine facial sensation to light touch and pinprick.
- Examine power of masseters and temporalis (‘clench teeth, open your mouth and stop me closing it’).
- Test corneal reflex.
- Test jaw jerk.

#### VII Facial:

- Test muscles of facial expression (‘raise eyebrows’, ‘shut eyes firmly’, ‘show teeth’).

#### VIII Vestibulocochlear:

- Test hearing.
- Perform Rinne’s test (512Hz vibrating tuning fork placed on mastoid process and its loudness compared with sound several centimetres from the external auditory meatus. Normally air conduction [AC] is better than bone conduction [BC]. BC > AC suggests conductive deafness. Impaired hearing and AC > BC suggests sensorineural deafness.)
- Perform Weber’s test (A 512Hz vibrating tuning fork is placed in middle of forehead and the patient asked which side the sound localizes to. Normally it is heard centrally: in conductive deafness it is localized to the poor ear and in sensorineural deafness it is localized to the good ear.)
- Test balance (standing with eyes closed, walking along straight line).

#### IX, X Vagus and glossopharyngeal:

- Examine palatal movements.
- Test for gag reflex and cough.

#### XI Abducens:

- Test the power of sternomastoids and shrug shoulders.

#### XII Hypoglossal:

- Examine the tongue for wasting, fasciculation and power.
- Examine the tongue at rest, put tongue out and move from side to side.

### Test higher mental function (Mini Mental Status Examination; see Chapter 117)

- Assess speech
- Examine memory
- Assess comprehension

### Localized deficits

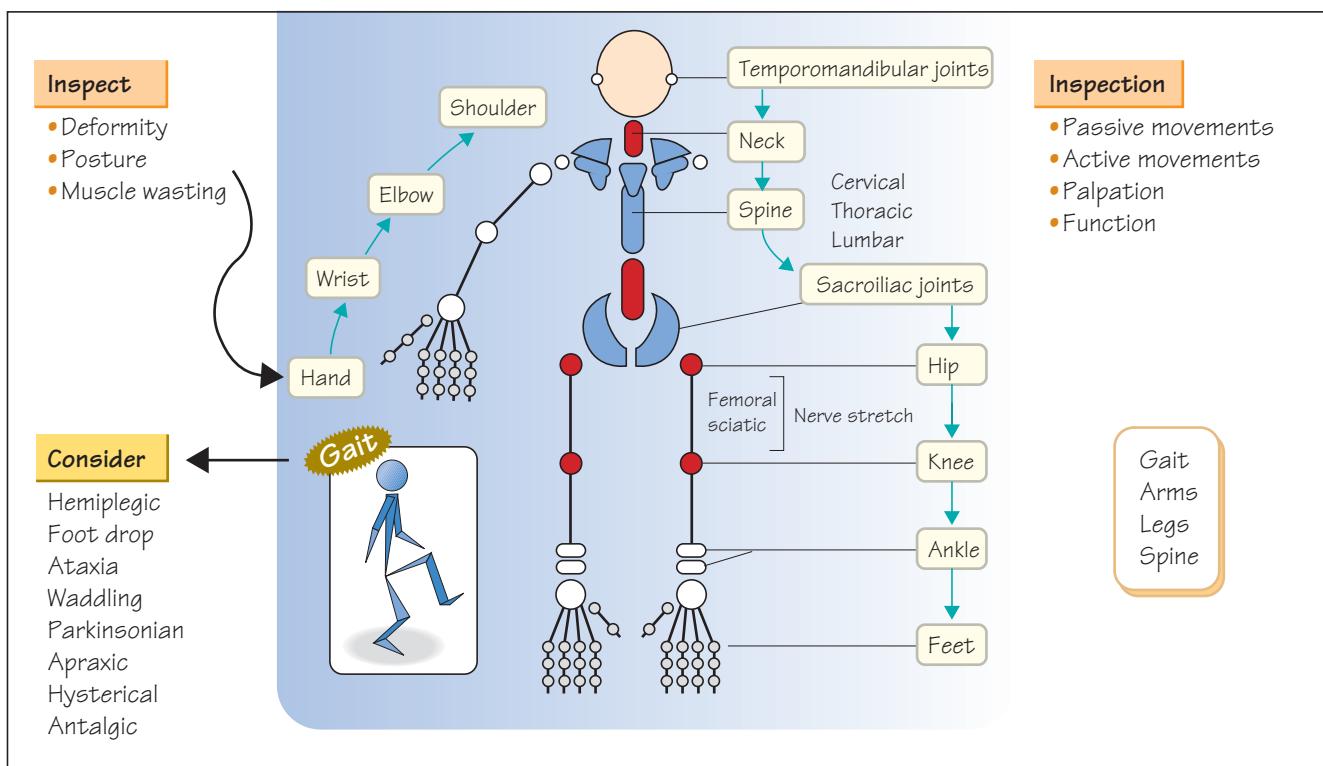
Consider the possibility of deficits localizing to any of the following:

- *Cerebellar function*. Examine gait, finger nose co-ordination, nystagmus and dysdiadochokinesia.
- *Extrapyramidal function*. Examine gait, tone, look for tremor, bradykinesia and dystonic movements.
- *Temporal lobe*. Examine memory and language comprehension.
- *Parietal lobe*. Examine object recognition, tasks such as dressing, using toothbrush, writing, reading and arithmetic.
- *Occipital lobe*. Examine visual acuity and fields (NB. in occipital blindness pupillary reflex to light will be intact).
- *Frontal lobe*. Examine higher mental function, sense of smell, affect, primitive reflexes (grasp, pout, palmo-mental reflex). Is there disinhibition and/or personality change?

### Are there signs of raised intracranial pressure?

Signs of raised intracranial pressure are:

- depressed conscious level
- false-localizing signs (e.g. III and VIth nerve palsies)
- papilloedema
- hypertension
- bradycardia.



## History

Disease of the musculoskeletal system can manifest with:

- pain (particularly of joints [arthralgia])
- deformity
- swelling
- reduced mobility
- reduced function (e.g. unable to walk)
- systemic features such as rash or fever.

## Past medical history

- Any history of previous joint or bone abnormalities?
- Has the patient had any operations such as joint replacement surgery?

## Drugs

Ask the patient about analgesics, NSAIDs, corticosteroids, other immunosuppressants, penicillamine, gold and chloroquine.

## Functional enquiry

- Do you have any pain or stiffness?
- Can you dress yourself? Can you climb stairs? When are the symptoms worse? (e.g. symptoms of inflammatory arthritis may be worse in the morning)
- Ask particularly about systemic features of illness such as fever, weight loss, rashes. Ask about dry eyes or mouth (Sjögren's syndrome) and Raynaud's syndrome.
- Consider symptoms of polymyalgia rheumatica (aching and stiffness of muscles of neck, shoulders, hips, thighs) or temporal

arteritis (headache, scalp tenderness, jaw claudication, visual disturbance).

- Any genitourinary or GI disease (e.g. as in Reiter's syndrome)?

## Social history

- Discover any functional consequences such as the patient being unable to walk, feed, etc.
- What aids is the patient using (e.g. wheelchair, chair-lift; any home modifications)?

## Examination

- Look at the patient for any obvious deformity, abnormal posture.
- Look for obvious muscle wasting: is muscle bulk normal? Look at shoulders, buttocks, hands and quadriceps.
- Look for associated abnormalities; for example, rheumatoid nodules, gouty tophi, psoriasis, or features of systemic rheumatological disease.
- Survey joints for swelling, tenderness, deformity, effusion, erythema and assess the patient's range of active and passive movements. Look for limitation of full extension and flexion.

## Examine hand

- Inspect for joint deformities, nail abnormalities, joint tenderness (including a gentle 'squeeze' across the MCP joints) and swelling.
- Look for muscle wasting (e.g. of thenar or hypothenar eminences) and fasciculation.
- Examine movements: flexion, extension, adduction and opposition of the thumb.

- Check flexion, extension, adduction and abduction of the fingers. Make a fist and pinch grip. Test the patient's function (e.g. writing, doing up buttons).

### **Examine wrist**

- Inspect for joint deformities, swelling and tenderness.
- Examine movements of flexion, extension, ulnar and radial deviation.

### **Examine elbow**

Inspect for deformities, rheumatoid nodules, bursae. Examine movements of flexion, extension, pronation and supination.

### **Examine shoulder and sterno-clavicular joints**

- Inspect for joint deformities, swelling and tenderness.
- Examine active and passive movements of abduction, adduction, internal and external rotation, flexion and extension. You can ask the patient to 'put his/her arms behind his/her head'.
- In a patient complaining of pain in the deltoid region, if resisted active movements are painful consider rotator cuff pathology (e.g. supraspinatus trapping, calcification or rotator cuff muscle tear). If there is equal pain with active and passive movements consider capsulitis, synovitis or arthritis of shoulder joint.

### **Examine temporomandibular joints, neck and spine**

Inspect the spine for deformity, abnormal kyphosis, scoliosis and lordosis. Look for the smooth curves of the spinous processes, for any 'steps', and then palpate looking for tenderness and any associated muscle spasm.

**Cervical spine** Examine active and then passive movements of the neck. Examine flexion, extension, lateral flexion and rotation. Look for the patient's range of movement and pain locally or in the upper limb.

**Thoracic spine** Examine the patient twisting whilst sitting with arms folded. Examine for chest expansion: the patient should manage >5 cm.

**Lumbar spine** Test the patient's range of movement: ask the patient to touch his/her toes keeping his/her knees straight. Assess extension, lateral flexion and rotation.

**Sacro-iliac joints** Palpate the joints. 'Spring' the joints by firm downward pressure on joint whilst patient prone. With patient supine flex one hip whilst maintaining the other extended.

### **Nerve stretch tests**

- Examine straight leg raising ± dorsiflexion of the foot. Perform the

femoral stretch test: with the patient in prone position, flex his/her knee and then extend his/her leg at the hip.

- Examine the leg for muscle wasting and fasciculation.

### **Examine hip**

- Look for differential leg length, abnormal rotation. Stand the patient on one leg and then the other. Examine for flexion, extension, abduction and adduction.
- Perform the Thomas test (flexion of the opposite hip can reveal any fixed flexion deformity of contralateral hip).

### **Examine knee**

- Any deformity or effusion? Perform the patella tap.
- Examine the stability of the joint in the anterior-posterior plane (cruciate ligaments):
  - The Lachmann test (patient lies supine with leg flexed 30°, the femur is fixed with one hand whilst the other hand pulls the tibia forward. The test is abnormal if there is abnormally increased forward movement of the tibia).
  - The anterior drawer test (patient lies supine and leg flexed at 90° and forward movement of the tibia is assessed).
  - The posterior drawer test (examine patient supine with leg flexed at 90° and examine the tibia for posterior subluxation and its correction with anterior movement of the tibia).
- Any joint line tenderness (suggesting meniscal injury)?
- Perform the McMurray test ('popping' and symptoms along the joint line when the knee is extended and internally rotated suggests meniscal injury).
- Examine for flexion and extension.

### **Examine ankle**

Inspect for deformity. Examine for plantarflexion, dorsiflexion, eversion and inversion.

### **Examine feet**

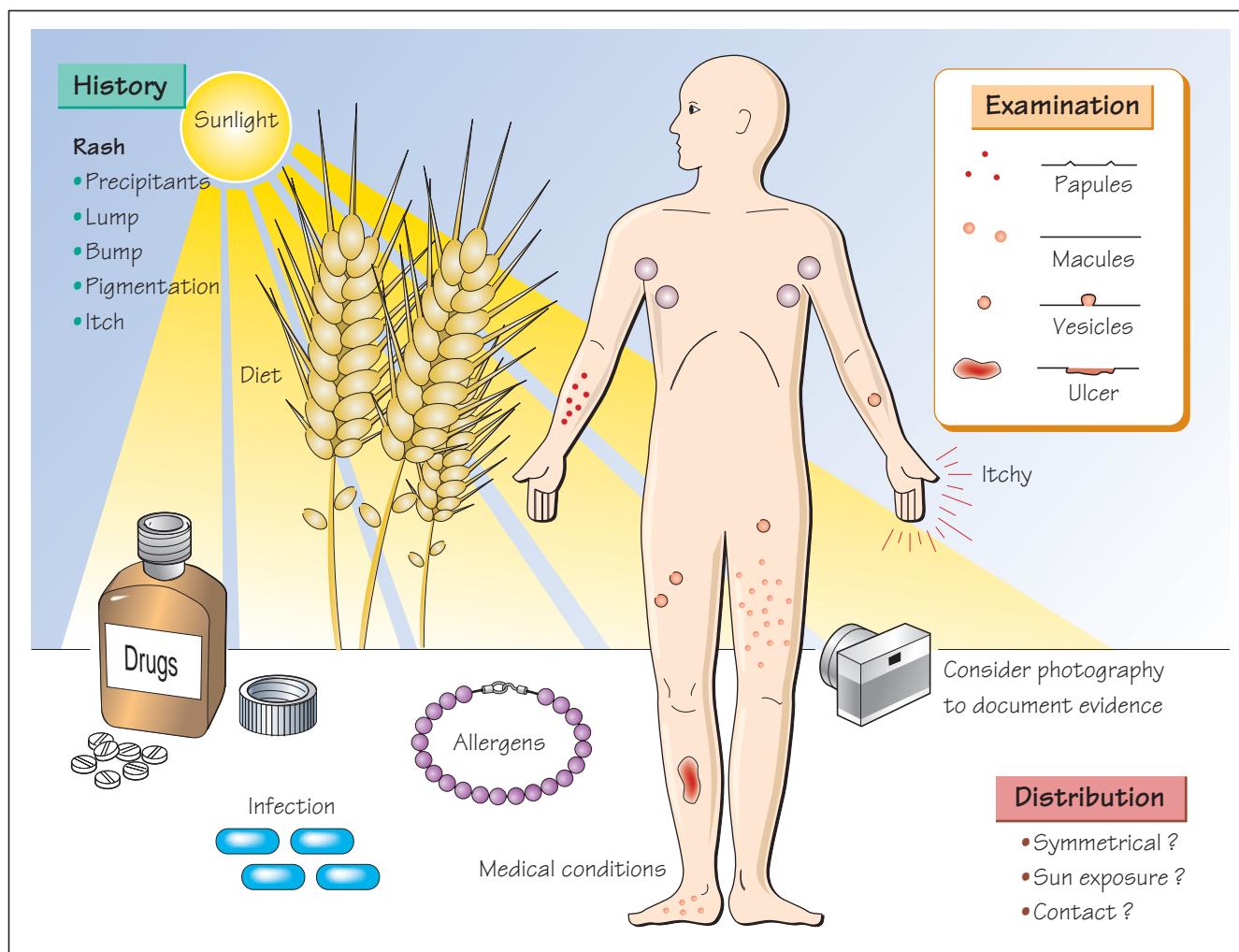
Inspect for deformities; for example, pes cavus, hallux valgus or callosities. Examine the great toe dorsiflexion.

### **Inspect gait**

- Look for steadiness, speed, stride length, arm swing, limping, favouring one leg over the other and ability turning.
- Perform the heel-toe test. Any features of spasticity, footdrop, parkinsonism, apraxia (impairment of complex movements despite normal motor and sensory function), ataxia (unsteady, broad-based gait), etc.?

For a more detailed description of the musculoskeletal system examination and other useful resources see the medical student handbook from Arthritis Research UK.

([www.arthritisresearchuk.org/home/medical\\_students.aspx](http://www.arthritisresearchuk.org/home/medical_students.aspx))



## History

An accurate history is vital in establishing the correct diagnosis in conditions affecting the skin. Common presentations include rash, itch, lumps, ulcers, change in skin coloration and incidental observations during presentations with other medical conditions.

- When was the rash first noticed? Where is it? Is it itchy? Were there any precipitants (e.g. medication, dietary, sunlight, potential allergens)?
- Where is the lump? Is it itchy? Has it bled? Has its shape/size/coloration changed?
- Are there other lumps?
- What is the colour change (e.g. increased pigmentation, jaundice, pallor)? Who noticed it? How long ago? Compare with old photographs.
- Are there any associated symptoms suggesting a systemic medical condition (e.g. weight loss, arthralgia, etc.)?
- Consider the possible consequences of serious skin conditions, such as fluid losses, secondary infection, metastatic spread to lymph nodes or other organs.

## Past medical history

- Did the patient have any previous skin conditions, rashes, etc.?
- Is there atopic tendency (asthma, rhinitis)?
- Did the patient have any skin problems in childhood?
- Any other significant medical conditions? (Particularly those which may have skin manifestations, e.g. SLE, coeliac disease, myositis or renal transplant.)

## Drugs

- A complete drug history is essential of all medications, prescribed and alternative, ingested and topical.
- Any previous treatments for skin disorders?
- Has/is the patient using immunosuppressants?

## Allergies

- Does the patient have any allergy to medication? If so, what was the allergic reaction?
- Does the patient know of any other possible allergens?
- Has the patient undergone any patch testing or IgE responses?

## Family history

- Any family history of skin diseases or atopy?
- Are there others in the family affected?

## Social history

- What is the patient's occupational history: any exposure to sunlight, potential allergens, skin parasites? Any change in washing products, pets, etc.?
- Has the patient travelled abroad recently?
- Any exposure to infectious conditions (e.g. chicken pox)?

## Functional enquiry

This should focus particularly on the possibility of any associated systemic disease, such as coeliac disease, parasitic infection, psoriatic arthropathy, SLE, etc.

## Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell? Are they pale, shocked, pigmented or febrile? (Serious skin conditions affecting large areas of skin can lead to life-threatening fluid loss and secondary infections.)
- What is the skin abnormality? Rash, ulcer, lump, discolouration, etc.:
  - *Macule* – a circumscribed area of change in normal skin colour without elevation or depression of the surrounding skin.
  - *Papule* – a solid elevated lesion <0.5 cm in diameter.
  - *Plaque* – an elevation above the skin surface that occupies a relatively large surface area in comparison with its height.
  - *Wheal* – a rounded or flat topped, pale red, papule or plaque that characteristically disappears within hours.
  - *Pustule* – a circumscribed elevation of the skin that contains a purulent exudate.
  - *Vesicle/bulla* – a circumscribed elevated lesion containing fluid. Vesicle <0.5 cm, bulla >0.5 cm.
  - *Ulcer* – a lesion showing destruction of the epidermis and dermis.
  - *Cyst* – a closed cavity that contains liquid or semi-solid material.

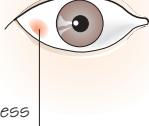
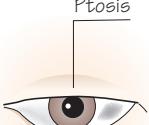
- Is there bruising or petechiae?

• If so, *where* is the skin abnormality? Completely examine the skin, nails and hair and, in addition, examine the oral cavity and the eyes. Which area of the skin is affected?

- Are there any secondary changes to the skin that are superimposed or consequences of the primary process? For example:

- *Scale* – desquamating layers of stratum corneum.
- *Crust* – dried serum, blood or purulent exudate.
- *Erosion* – an area with circumscribed denudation due to epidermal loss.
- *Lichenification* – skin thickening that is the result of chronic rubbing or scratching leading to accentuation of normal skin lines.
- *Atrophy* – epidermal atrophy results from a decrease in the number of epidermal cell layers. Dermal atrophy results from a decrease in the dermal connective tissue.
- *Scar* – a lesion formed as a result of dermal damage.
- *Excoriation* – superficial excavations of the epidermis that result from scratching.
- *Fissure* – a linear, painful crack in the skin.
- What is the *extent* (isolated, localized, regional, generalized, universal) and *pattern* of distribution (symmetrical or asymmetrical, exposed areas, site of pressure, skin creases, follicular)? Does it correlate with clothing, sun exposure or jewellery?
- What is the *colour* of the lesions and what is their *shape* (e.g. round, oval, polygonal, annular, serpiginous, umbilicated)?
- *Palpate* any lesions for temperature, mobility, tenderness and depth. Examine for enlargement of draining *lymph nodes*. Perform a *complete physical examination* to analyse the presence of systemic disease. Could this be a manifestation of a serious systemic condition (e.g. malignancy, SLE)?
- Documenting the skin abnormality accurately is important and can be aided by photography.

**Inspect**

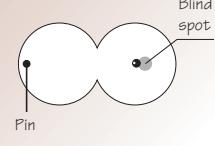



Redness

Pupils

- Symmetry
- Size, shape
- Reaction to light
- Reaction to accommodation
- (PERLA)

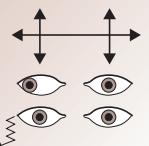
**Test**

Visual fields



Colour vision

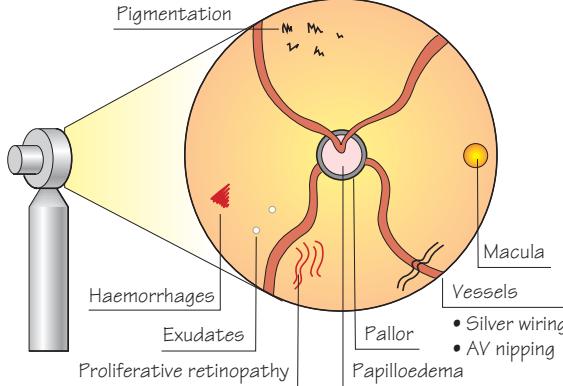


Diplopia

Nystagmus

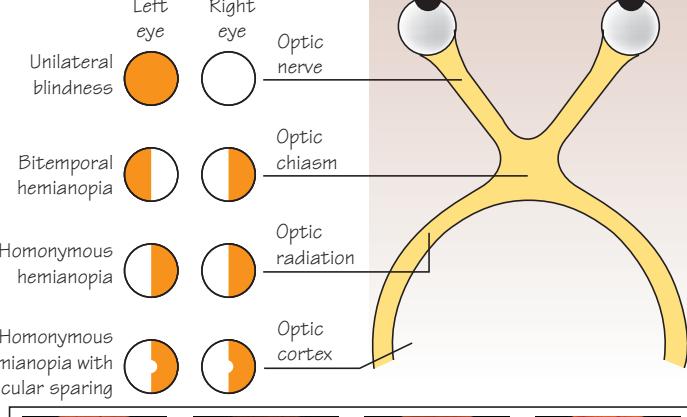
Eye movements

**Examine with ophthalmoscope**

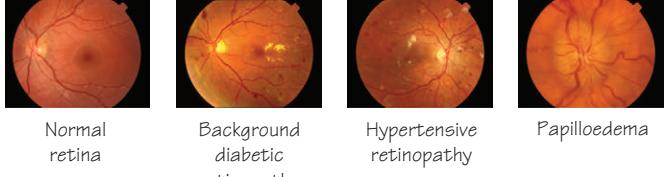


Pigmentation  
Haemorrhages  
Exudates  
Proliferative retinopathy  
Pallor  
Papilloedema  
Vessels  
• Silver wiring  
• AV nipping  
Macula

**Visual field defects**



Unilateral blindness  
Bitemporal hemianopia  
Homonymous hemianopia  
Homonymous hemianopia with macular sparing  
Optic nerve  
Optic chiasm  
Optic radiation  
Optic cortex



Normal retina  
Background diabetic retinopathy  
Hypertensive retinopathy  
Papilloedema

## History

Diseases of the eyes may present with:

- visual impairment or disturbance
- red eye
- painful eye
- double vision.

The eyes are also important windows for detecting systemic disease causing, for example, papilloedema, hypertensive or diabetic retinopathy.

Obtain a very detailed history of the nature of any visual symptom. Most important is whether one or both eyes are affected. Was the onset sudden or gradual? Are there any accompanying symptoms (ocular pain, headache, discharge, etc.)?

## Past medical history

- Previous visual problems?
- Diabetes mellitus?
- Hypertension?
- Neurological disease?
- Any specific eye treatments (e.g. laser)?

## Drugs

Are there any drugs the patient has taken that might cause visual symptoms or to treat ocular disease (e.g. drops for glaucoma)?

## Family and social history

- Any family history of inherited visual problems (e.g. glaucoma)?
- Any family history of eye symptoms (e.g. transmission of infective conjunctivitis)?
- What is the extent of the patient's visual disability?
- Is the patient registered blind?
- Any adaptations to the home?
- Does the patient own a guide dog?

## Examination

### Inspect the eyes

- Any obvious abnormalities (e.g. proptosis [abnormal protrusion of the globe], redness, asymmetry, obvious nystagmus, ptosis)?
- Look at the conjunctivae, the cornea, the iris, the pupils and the eyelids. Are the pupils symmetrical?

- What size are they? Do they respond normally and equally to light and accommodation?
- Is there ptosis? Check for eyelid closure.

### Test the eyes, individually

- Test visual acuity in each eye with, for example, a Snellen chart for far vision and a Jaeger chart for near vision.
- Test colour vision; for example, using Ishihara charts.
- Test visual fields with confrontation and examine for blind spot.
- Test eye movements: ask about diplopia and look for nystagmus.

### Examine the eyes with an ophthalmoscope

The ophthalmoscopic examination of the eye is a vital part of the complete physical examination. It can reveal the effects of systemic conditions such as hypertension and diabetes mellitus, causes of visual dysfunction such as optic atrophy, and reveal conditions such as raised intracranial pressure by demonstrating papilloedema. The ocular complications of conditions such as diabetes mellitus may be asymptomatic until sight-threatening complications have developed; hence the importance of screening examinations.

Optimize the conditions for fundoscopy. Both patient and examiner need to be comfortable. Examine the patient in a darkened room with a good ophthalmoscope producing a bright light and, if necessary use pupillary dilatation (contraindicated only in recent head injury when serial pupillary examinations are essential or where there is a risk of acute angle closure glaucoma). If you need to dilate, warn the patient of possible photophobia and visual blurring which will prevent driving.

Ask the patient to fix their gaze on a distant object. Examine their right eye with your right eye and their left eye with your left eye.

Examine from a distance looking initially for the presence of the red reflex and, if absent, consider lens opacities such as cataracts. Then

examine the optic disc (shape, colour, edge, physiological cup), the peripheries of the retina following the main vessels outwards from the disc (vessels, venous pulsation, haemorrhages, exudates, pigmentation) and, finally, the macula.

The presence of papilloedema, haemorrhages or exudates, or presentation with loss of vision, requires explanation.

A full examination with particular emphasis on the cardiovascular and neurological systems may be required.

### Important fundoscopic abnormalities

#### 1 Diabetic retinopathy:

- microaneurysms
- ‘dot and blot’ haemorrhages
- soft exudates
- proliferative changes
- laser treatment scars.

#### 2 Hypertensive retinopathy:

- silver wiring
- arteriovenous nipping
- haemorrhages and exudates
- papilloedema.

#### 3 Papilloedema:

- blurred elevated disc margin
- there may be accompanying haemorrhages
- loss of venous pulsation, sometimes tortuous vessels
- the disc may be pink (hyperaemic)
- there may be enlargement of blind spot.

#### 4 Optic atrophy:

- pale optic discs.

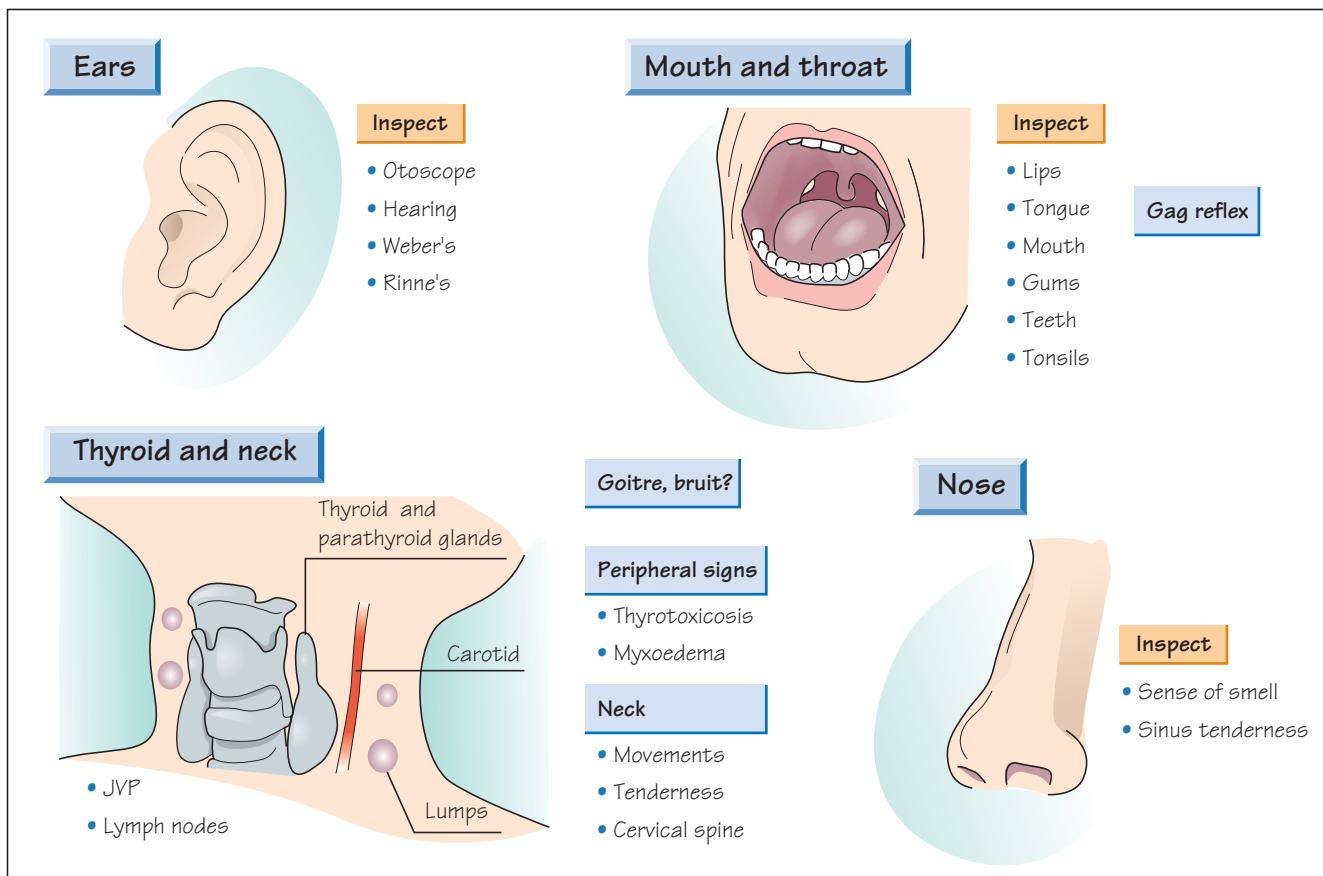
#### 5 Retinitis pigmentosa:

- retinal pigmentation.

**Table 25.1** Sudden loss of vision

Onset	Duration	Differential diagnosis	Other features
Seconds	Seconds	Tear film abnormality Papilloedema, optic disc drusen, vitreous debris (floaters)	Clears with blinking Associated with eye movement
Seconds	Variable	Orbital tumour	Other cranial nerve palsies?
Seconds	Less than 15 minutes	Carotid or vertebrobasilar disease Cardiac emboli Temporal arteritis  Postural hypotension	Cardiovascular disease Cardiovascular disease Headache, jaw claudication, scalp tenderness, diplopia, limb girdle pain, weight loss, night sweats Dehydration, low cardiac output, presyncope
Seconds	Minutes-indefinite	Retinal artery occlusion Retinal vein occlusion Retinal detachment  Occipital stroke	Cardiovascular disease Cardiovascular disease Flashing lights, floating spots, ‘curtain’ progressing from side of visual field
Minutes	Minutes-hours	Optic neuritis Migraine	Pain, (rarely exacerbated by exercise or elevated body temperature) Visual aura, e.g. zig-zag lights, headache

# Examination of the ears, nose, mouth, throat, thyroid and neck



## Ears

- Inspect the ears for abnormalities (e.g. tophii, skin cancers).
- Examine with an otoscope: look for pus, wax, other obstruction and tympanic membrane.
- Test hearing, balance and look for nystagmus.

## Nose

- Inspect the nose for any previous fracture, 'saddle' nose or rhinorrhoea. Examine nares, inferior turbinates and assess nasal airflow.
- Test for sense of smell and sinus tenderness by percussion.

## Mouth and throat

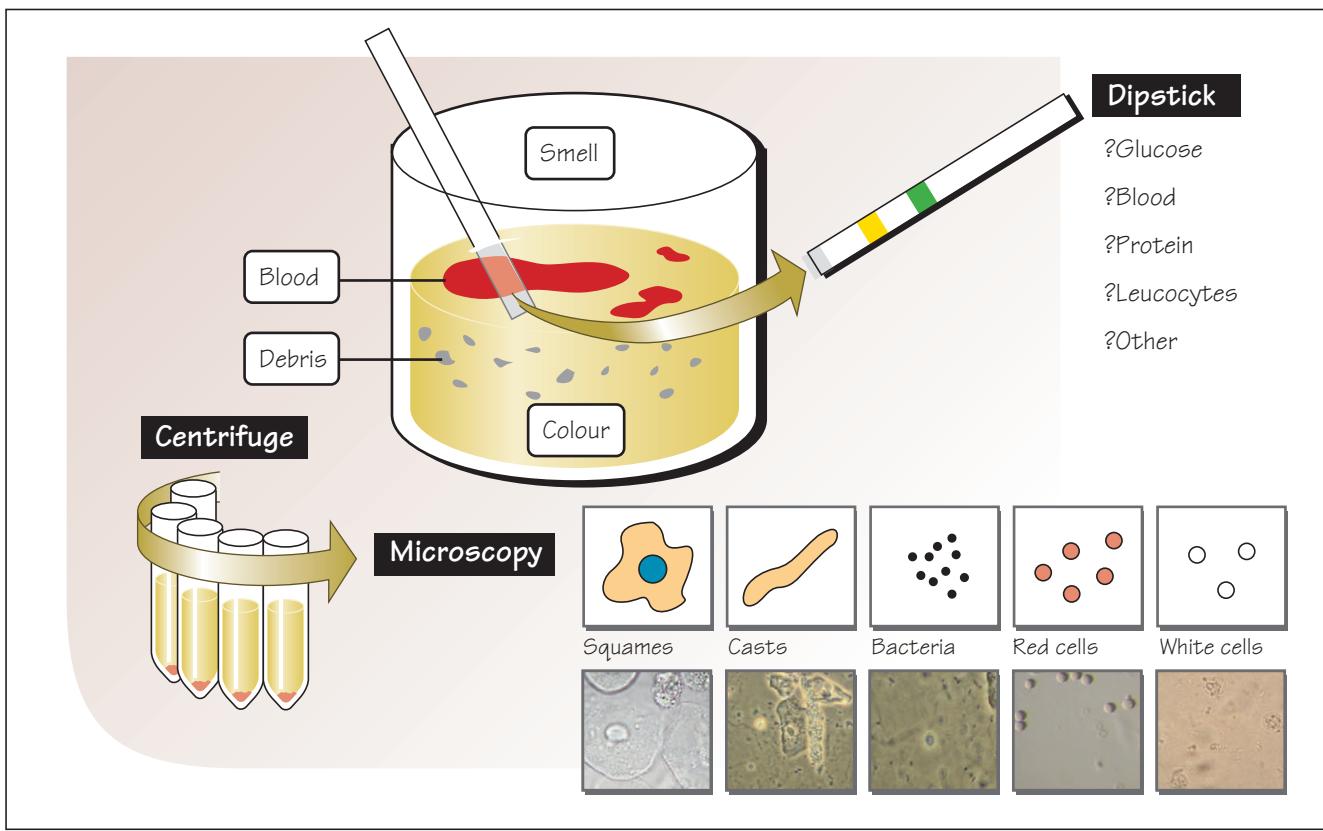
- Inspect with aid of torch and tongue depressor, lips, tongue, gums and teeth.
- Look for angular cheilitis, telangiectasia, pigmentation, wasting or fasciculation of tongue. Ask the patient to stick his/her tongue out and touch the roof of his/her mouth.
- Consider the possibility of dental abscess.
- Examine tonsils, uvula and posterior wall, salivary glands. Ask the patient to say 'aah'. Any inflammation, exudate, enlargement or growths? Palpate any visible abnormalities with a gloved finger.

## Neck

- Inspect anteriorly, posteriorly and laterally for masses, pulsations, lumps, deformity. Define the relationship of any lumps to the skin, muscles, trachea and thyroid. Assess movement of any lumps with swallowing.
- Not all lumps in the neck are lymph nodes. Consider the possibility of: branchial cyst; branchial fistula; carotid body tumour; cystic hygroma; pharyngeal pouch; cervical rib; thyroglossal cyst; thyroid lump or goitre.
- Examine active and passive movements of flexion, extension, rotation and lateral flexion. Examine for tenderness of the cervical spine.
- Examine carotid arteries and jugular venous pressure.

## Thyroid

- Look for peripheral signs of thyrotoxicosis and myxoedema.
- Inspect the neck: any goitre? Is there tenderness? Diffuse enlargement, single nodule? Is it hard, nodular?
- Ask the patient to swallow water and inspect again. Palpate for thyroid enlargement. Auscultate for bruit. Examine for any associated lymphadenopathy. Percuss upper sternum for retrosternal extension of goitre.

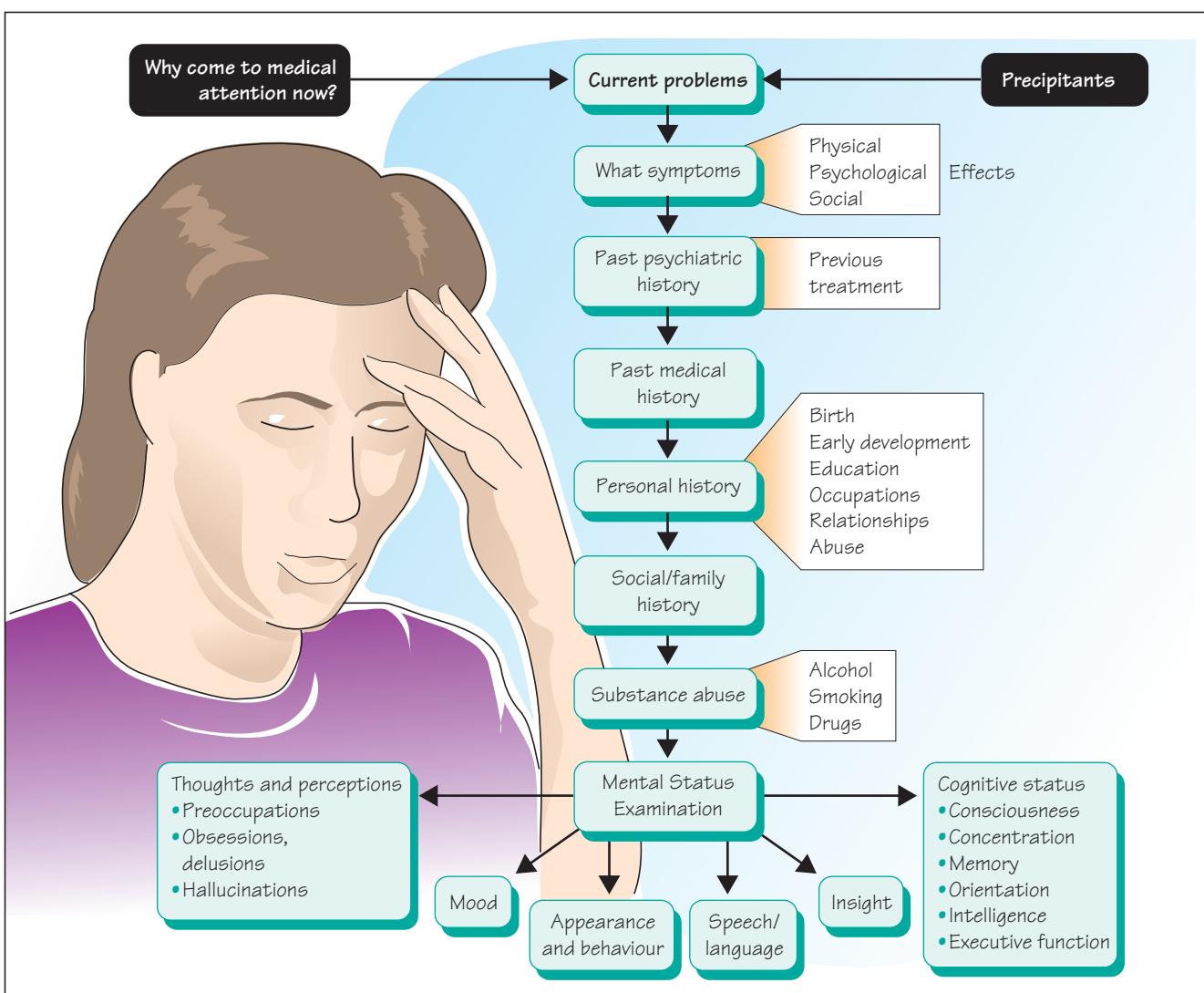


- Is the urine abnormally coloured, containing blood (a small amount of blood can give the urine a 'smoky' appearance or a rosy coloration), cloudy or containing solid matter?
- Ideally collect a mid-stream urine specimen (a 'clean catch').
- Check if the urine specimen has an abnormal smell.
- Dipstick the urine for the presence of protein, blood, glucose (and, with sophisticated dipsticks, leucocytes, nitrites, etc.). If positive for leucocytes and/or nitrite send for microbiological culture.
- Centrifuge the urine at 2000 r.p.m., resuspend the pellet in small volume and analyse under a microscope. Look for red blood cells, white blood cells, bacteria, casts and crystals.

The presence of red cells in the urine is relatively common (up to 5% of the population) but may indicate structural disease of the renal tract or glomerulonephritis. Proteinuria is abnormal and indicates renal disease and is associated with increased cardiovascular mortality.

**Table 27.1** Common causes of urine abnormalities

Glucose	Diabetes mellitus Renal glycosuria
Red cells	Lesion (tumour, stone) anywhere in renal tract (kidney, ureter, bladder, urethra) Glomerulonephritis Urinary tract infection Menstruation Trauma
Proteinuria	Glomerulonephritis Other causes of renal damage (e.g. diabetes, renovascular disease)
Leucocytes	Urinary tract infection Tuberculosis Urethritis Interstitial nephritis
Nitrite	Urinary tract infection
Red cell casts	Glomerulonephritis



In making a psychiatric assessment, always ensure that there is privacy and explain to the patient who you are and why you are seeing them.

### History

- What is the patient's problem?
- If the symptoms are long standing, why are they seeking medical attention now?
- How have they come to medical attention (e.g. self-referral, suicide attempt, found wandering and confused)?
- What is their status with respect to the Mental Health Act?

### History of the present illness

- What are the current symptoms (e.g. feeling low, hearing voices, frightened, confused, wanting to die)? Explore the main symptom(s)

in detail and discover any associated physical, psychological and social effects. Discover the timecourse of the symptoms, their onset and frequency.

- What treatments have been tried so far, with what effect?
- What does the patient believe to have precipitated, aggravated, or modified the illness?

Explore stressors and their relationship to symptoms:

- When did the symptoms begin?
- What have others noticed (friends, relatives, other professionals)?
- Ask about suicidality.

### Review of systems

The review of systems includes current symptoms not already identified in the history of the present illness. Particularly relevant are sleep, appetite, systemic symptoms such as fever and fatigue, and

neurological symptoms. Need to review for the presence of anxiety, mood disorder, psychotic symptoms, eating disorder.

## Past psychiatric history

Gather a chronological summary of all previous episodes of mental illness and treatment including hospitalization, previous contact with GP, psychiatrist, psychologist, counsellors, suicide attempts etc.

Also ask about the dose, duration of treatment, efficacy, side-effects, and patient's adherence to previously prescribed medications.

Ask about previous suicide attempts or other self-destructive behaviour.

## Past medical history and medication and allergies

Find out what medication is being prescribed and what is actually being taken. Ask if there are any side-effects.

## Personal history

The personal history reviews the stages of the patient's life. Ask about the following:

- Birth and any complications.
- Early development.
- Childhood (including separations during childhood, the home environment).
- Education and qualifications (including relationships with peers and teachers).
- Occupations (the sequence of jobs held by the patient, reasons for job changes, job satisfaction, relationships with colleagues and the patient's current or most recent employment).
- Relationships (including partnerships, marriages, parents and children), sexual history and an assessment of the patient's past and present levels of functioning in family and social roles (e.g. partnership, parenting, work, school).
- Cultural and religious influences.
- Any history of physical, emotional, sexual, or other abuse or trauma.

## Premorbid personality

Explore the following:

- Character (usual mood and its stability, sociability, motivation, perfectionism).
- Interests (e.g. hobbies).
- Beliefs (religious, moral and political views).

## Social history

Ask about the patient's living arrangements and any current important relationships.

## History of substance use

- Ask about the use of alcohol, smoking and other drugs (e.g. marijuana, cocaine, opiates, sedative-hypnotic agents, stimulants, solvents, and hallucinogens).
- Ask when it was first used, the amounts consumed and the routes of administration.
- Any evidence of dependence (craving, tolerance, inability to stop or control use, physiological withdrawal state, drug-related harm, reduction of interests and activities unrelated to drug use)?
- Ask about periods of abstinence and related offences.
- Ask when last used and consider current intoxication and/or withdrawal.

## Forensic history

- Any arrests or convictions?

## Family history

Draw out a family tree. Include available information about general medical and psychiatric illness in close relatives. This information should include any history of mood disorder, psychosis, suicide and substance-use disorders and the genetic relationship to those affected.

## Physical examination

A physical examination is needed to evaluate the patient's general medical (including neurological) condition.

## Mental Status Examination

The Mental Status Examination is a systematic collection of data based on observation of the patient's behaviour during the interview.

The purpose of the Mental Status Examination is to obtain evidence of current symptoms and signs of mental disorders from which the patient might be suffering. Further, evidence is obtained regarding the patient's insight, judgement and capacity for abstract reasoning, to inform decisions about treatment strategy and the choice of an appropriate treatment setting.

Need to assess:

- appearance
- behaviour
- conversation
- affect
- perception
- cognition
- insight
- judgement
- rapport.

The Mental Status Examination contains the following elements:

### 1 The patient's appearance and general behaviour.

Assess:

- manner
- rapport
- eye contact
- facial expression
- clothing
- cleanliness
- self-care (e.g. grooming, make-up)
- posture
- motor activity (agitated or retarded?)
- abnormal movements (tremor, stereotypy, tics, chorea)
- gait abnormality
- obvious physical abnormalities (e.g. evidence of self-harm, drug use).

### 2 Characteristics of the patient's speech and language:

- e.g. rate, rhythm, structure, flow of ideas and pathologic features such as perseveration, vagueness, incoherence, pressure of thought, thought block or neologisms.

### 3 Mood:

- What is their predominant mood?
- Do they appear depressed, elated, euphoric, anxious, fearful, suspicious, angry?
- Is there increased variability of mood (lability) or decreased (reduced reactivity)?

*Continued on p. 64.*

- Is the apparent mood congruent with speech content?
- What is their subjective interpretation of their mood? Ask ‘How are you feeling at the moment?’, ‘How are your spirits?’

**4 The patient's current thoughts and perceptions, including the following:**

- Any preoccupations, worries, concerns, thoughts, impulses and perceptual experiences.
- Cognitive and perceptual symptoms of specific mental disorders, usually elicited by specific questioning including hallucinations, delusions, ideas of reference, obsessions and compulsions.
- Suicidal, homicidal, violent or self-injurious thoughts, feelings and impulses. If these thoughts are present, elicit their intensity and specificity, when they occur and what prevents the patient from acting them out.
- Abnormal beliefs, delusions, feelings of external control, depersonalization and derealization.

**5 The patient's insight of his or her current situation and willingness to accept treatment.**

**6 The patient's cognitive status, including:**

- level of consciousness
- orientation (day, date, time)
- attention and concentration
- language functions (naming, fluency, comprehension, repetition, reading, writing)
- memory (long- and short-term, immediate recall)
- fund of knowledge (appropriate to age, social and educational background)

- calculation
- drawing (e.g. copying a figure or drawing a clock face)
- abstract reasoning (e.g. explaining similarities or interpreting proverbs)
- executive (frontal system) functions (e.g. list making, inhibiting impulsive answers, resisting distraction, recognizing contradictions)
- quality of judgement.

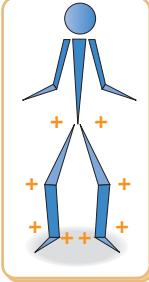
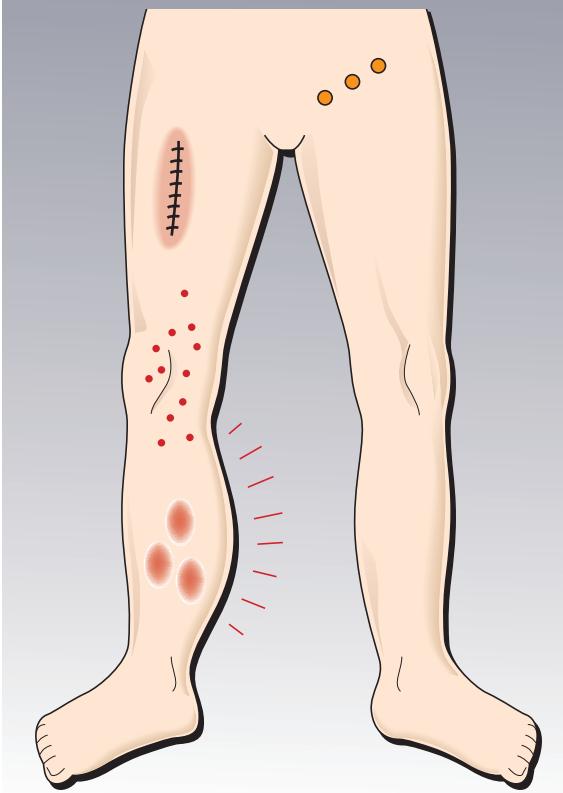
## Functional assessment

Functional assessment should include assessment of the physical activities of daily living; for example, eating, using the toilet, transferring, bathing and dressing. It should also include assessment of the more sophisticated activities of daily living; for example, driving or using public transportation, taking medication as prescribed, shopping, managing one's own money, communicating by letter or telephone and caring for a child or other dependent.

## 'Biological' features of depression

'Biological' features of depression are:

- low energy and amotivation
- poor sleep (early morning wakening)
- reduced appetite
- weight loss
- anhedonia
- low libido.

<p><b>Inspect</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deformity</li> <li>• Wasting</li> <li>• Fasciculation</li> <li>• Scars</li> </ul> <p><b>Skin</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All over</li> <li>• Nails</li> </ul> 		<p><b>Inspect</b></p> <p><b>Joints</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Straight leg raise</li> <li>• Sacroiliac</li> <li>• Hip</li> <li>• Knee</li> <li>• Ankle</li> <li>• Foot</li> </ul> <p><b>Neurology</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Gait</li> <li>• Tone</li> <li>• Power</li> <li>• Knee jerk</li> <li>• Ankle jerk</li> <li>• Clonus</li> <li>• Plantars</li> <li>• Sensation           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Pinprick</li> <li>– Light touch</li> <li>– Vibration</li> <li>– Hot/cold</li> <li>– Deep pain</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
--	---	--

Examination of the legs is an important and sometimes neglected part of the examination and can feature as an instruction in clinical examinations.

### Inspection

Ensure complete exposure of the lower limbs. Are there any obvious abnormalities? Look specifically for deformity, abnormal posture, wasting, scars, joint swelling, rashes, skin discolouration and oedema.

### Examine the skin

- Inspect all surfaces of the legs including the toes and between the toes and nails.
- Are there any rashes, discolouration, varicose eczema, ulceration, lumps or scars?

### Examine the vascular supply

- Is there good perfusion? Are the toes warm, cyanosed? Is there good capillary return?
- Palpate for peripheral pulses: femoral, popliteal, dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial.

- Palpate for popliteal aneurysms, auscultate for femoral bruits.
- Examine for oedema, calf swelling, tenderness, varicose veins and lymphadenopathy.

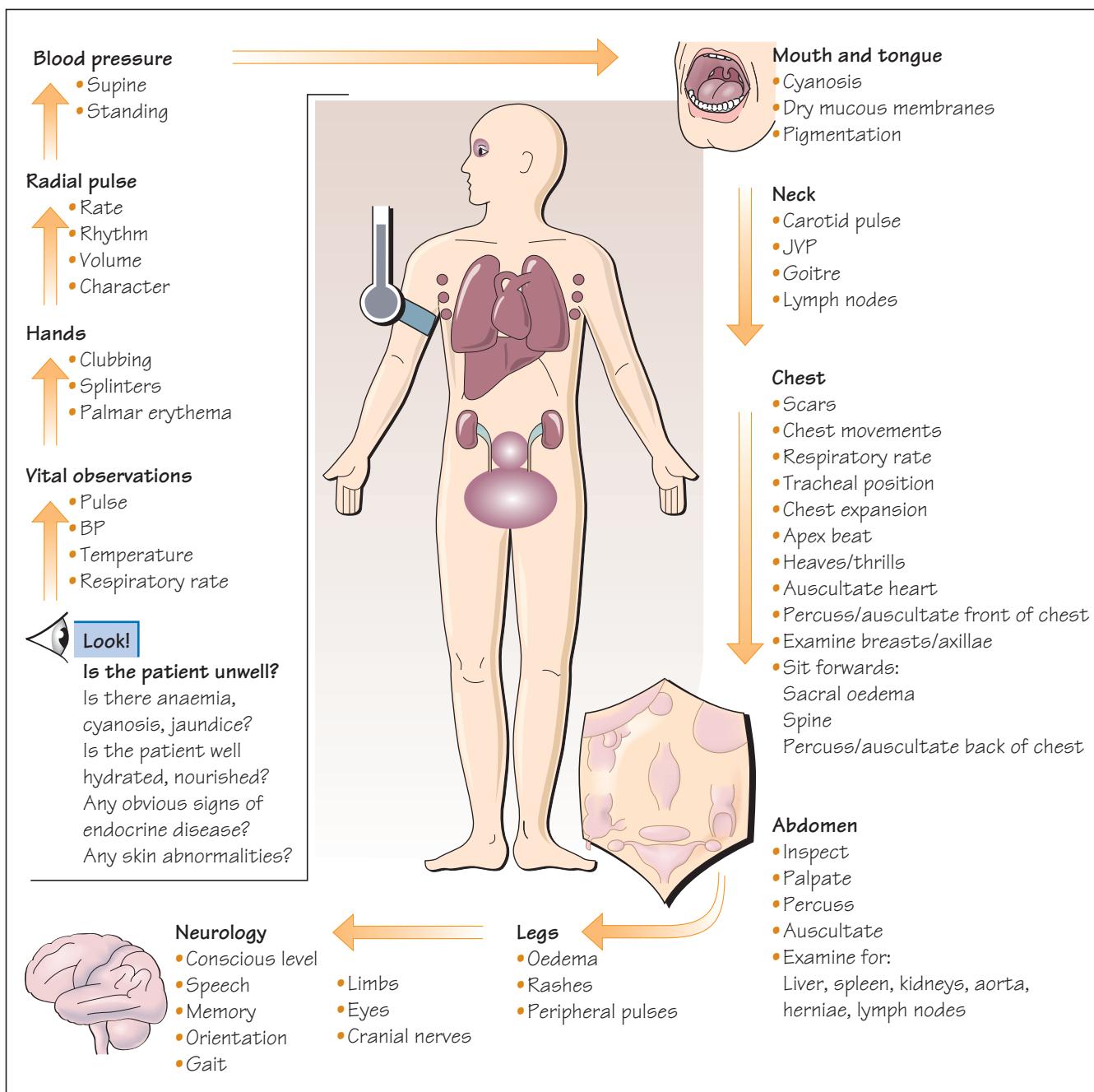
### Assess the neurology

- Examine gait.
- Inspect for abnormal posture, wasting, fasciculation.
- Assess tone.
- Assess power.
- Assess co-ordination, e.g. heel-shin.
- Examine knee and ankle jerks, plantar reflexes and look for clonus.
- Test sensation to light touch, pinprick, vibration sense, joint position sense and hot/cold.

### Examine the musculoskeletal system

Having already assessed gait, muscle power:

- Test straight leg raise
- Examine the joints:
  - Inspect the passive and active range of movements.



- Ensure the patient is comfortable, has privacy and understands what you are going to do.
- **STEP BACK AND LOOK** at the patient. Are there any obvious abnormalities?
- Is the patient well or unwell? In pain or comfortable? Do they need immediate resuscitation?
- Are there other diagnostic ‘clues’ (e.g. vomit bowl full of blood, sputum pot)?
- What are their vital observations? Check the pulse, BP, respiratory rate and temperature.
- Is there anaemia, cyanosis, jaundice, rash?
- Is the patient well hydrated?
- Does the patient look well nourished, wasted or obese?

## **Examination**

### **Examine the hands**

- Look for clubbing, palmar erythema, Dupuytren’s contracture, clubbing and splinter haemorrhages.
- Examine the radial pulse-rate, rhythm, volume and character.
- Whilst doing this look again for features of endocrine disease; for example, thyroid, acromegaly, Cushing’s syndrome, abnormal pigmentation and syndromes such as Marfan’s syndrome.
- Measure the BP (supine and standing).

### **Examine the mouth and tongue**

Look for central cyanosis, dry mucous membranes, dentition and pigmentation.

### **Examine the neck**

- Examine for cervical and supraclavicular lymphadenopathy.
- Look for an enlarged thyroid gland (goitre).
- Is the JVP elevated (at 45°)?
- Examine the carotid pulse: character and volume.

### **Examine the chest**

- Inspect the chest. Look for scars, symmetry of chest movement, use of accessory muscles, respiratory rate and pattern, intercostal recession, sputum pot and abnormal pulsations.
- Palpate for tracheal position and examine for chest expansion.
- Examine for the apex beat: both position and character.
- Feel for heaves and thrills.
- Auscultate the heart, listen sitting forward in expiration for the murmur of aortic regurgitation. Roll the patient onto their left side to listen for mitral murmurs, listen for carotid bruits.
- Percuss then auscultate the front of the chest.
- Sit the patient forward, look at the skin and spine for any abnormalities and examine for sacral oedema. Percuss and then auscultate the chest. Listen for vocal resonance.

### **Examine the breasts and axillae**

### **Examine the abdomen**

- Lie the patient flat, head supported by one pillow. Inspect and ask patient to cough and to take a deep breath. Lightly palpate and then palpate more deeply (watching patient’s expression).
- Examine specifically for aorta, liver, spleen, kidneys, herniae, inguinal lymphadenopathy, ascites.
- Auscultate for bowel sounds and bruits.

### **Examine the genitalia**

Consider performing rectal and vaginal examinations.

### **Examine the legs**

- Look for oedema, rashes, ulcers and discolouration.
- Examine for peripheral pulses and perfusion.

### **Examine the joints and skin**

Inspect and examine in more detail if there are any abnormalities on inspection.

### **Examine the nervous system**

- Assess the patient’s conscious level and mental state.
- Examine the patient’s speech and memory (e.g. the Mini Mental Test Examination).
- Examine the patient’s gait.

### **Examine the limbs**

- Examine upper limbs for drift, inspection, tone, power, co-ordination, reflexes and sensation.
- Examine lower limbs for inspection, tone, power, co-ordination, reflexes, plantar responses and sensation.

### **Examine the eyes**

Test visual acuity, visual fields, pupils and their response to light. Examine the fundi and eye movements.

### **Examine the face**

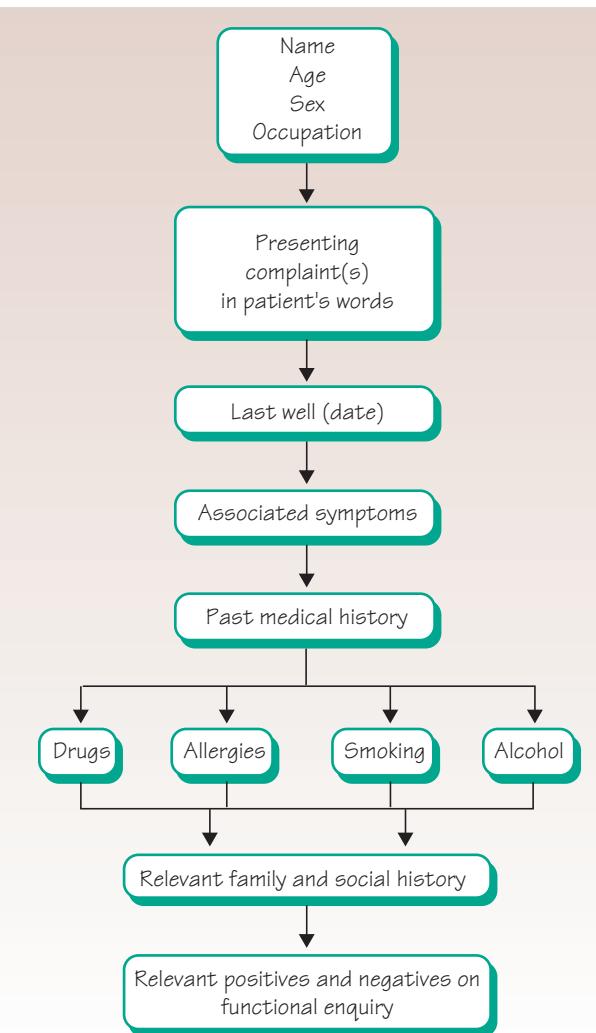
Examine the face for sensation and power, test jaw jerk and corneal reflex.

### **Examine the patient’s hearing**

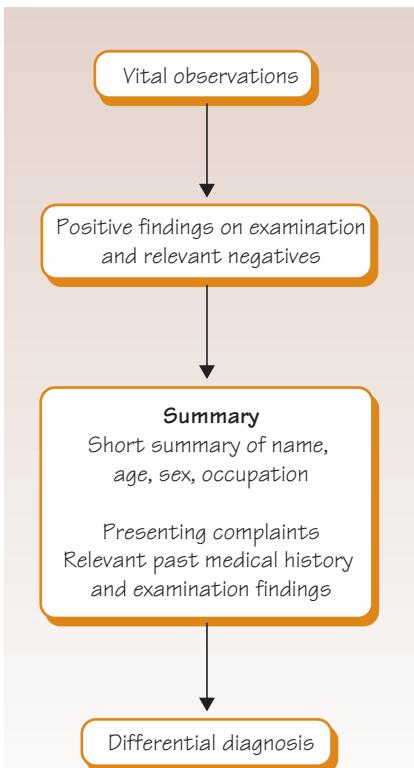
### **Examine the patient’s palatal movements, gag reflex, tongue and tongue movements**

**History**

This is...

**On examination**

Appeared well or unwell ?



The detail required will vary markedly depending upon the case, the context and the audience. It is imagined here that a patient has just been clerked on take by a junior doctor and is now to be presented to a consultant on the post-take ward round. In general, be concise and omit negative pieces of information but important, relevant negatives should be included.

The priorities are to communicate the patient's name, gender and age, to describe in detail the presenting complaint(s), to describe the significant past medical history, family history, medication and allergies, any relevant positive findings in functional enquiry and place the current presentation in the context of the patient's social circumstances. The presentation of the history should be complaint or problem led. Then, if possible, use the patient's words to describe the presenting complaint. Avoid the use of medical terms, such as dysuria, or medical jargon. In a complex case with several complaints these should be listed and then each presented in detail. A common mistake is insufficient emphasis on the presenting complaint.

The patient should be described as well or unwell in appearance, the vital observations given and positive and relevant negative examination findings described. Be certain about definite findings; for example, 'The BP was 142/78.' If you are uncertain about a finding, say so and why; for example, 'I could not feel a liver edge but there was a fullness in the right upper quadrant with dullness to percussion.' If the CNS examination was normal, say it was normal – do not describe every normal neurological sign that was demonstrated. However, if the main complaint is weakness of the left arm then

normal reflexes in that arm is an important finding that should be mentioned. Admit if you didn't perform a part of the examination, rather than give the implication of normality.

It is usually helpful to explain the patients understanding of their illness, their concerns and expectations.

Summarize the case in a few sentences, list the differential diagnosis and the relevant available investigations.

Many times other professionals will be 'presented' with your findings in the form of your case notes. Ensure that the *notes* are:

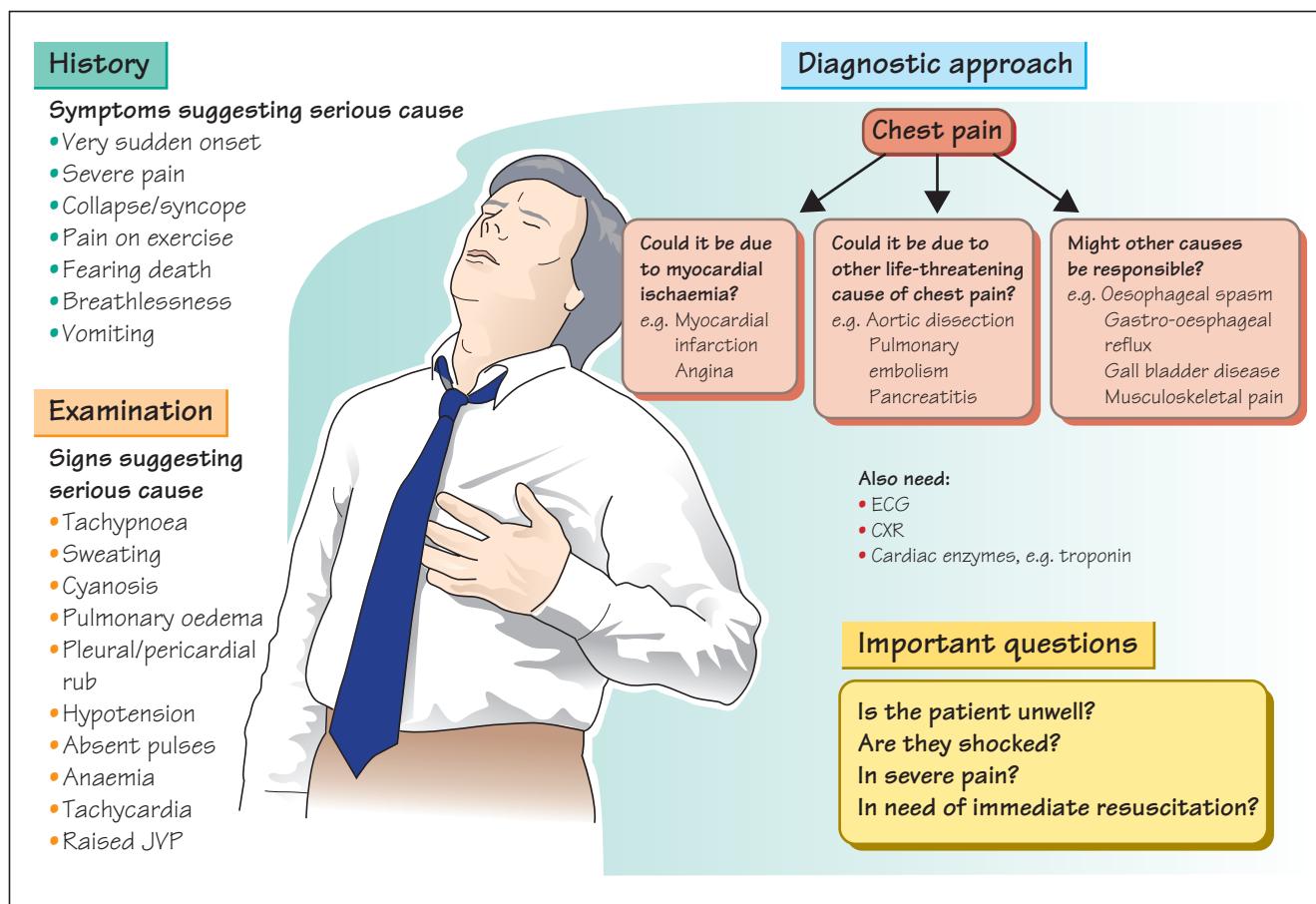
- dated
- timed
- signed
- legible
- clear
- detailed.

In addition:

- minimize jargon and abbreviations
- explain your thoughts (e.g. differential diagnosis, plan of investigations and treatments) and what you have told the patient and their relatives in writing.

**Remember:**

- 1 Patients can have access to your notes and read what you have written.
- 2 You may need to return to your notes in future so make sure they say enough to remind you and other professionals what occurred and what was communicated with the patient.



Chest pain is an important and common presentation of serious illnesses such as myocardial infarction, angina, pulmonary embolus and pneumothorax.

### History

Let the patient describe what has happened in great detail. Use the patient's words, 'What was *it* like?', 'Tell me more about the *pain*.' They may often describe pressure or tightness rather than pain. Once you have allowed the patient to describe the symptoms in full then consider the following directed questions:

- Ask about *onset*. Ask 'What were you doing when the pain started?' 'How quickly did it come on?' (Instantaneous, over minutes, seconds?)
- What is the *character* of the chest pain? Tightness, gripping, crushing, pressing, like a weight (often used to describe myocardial infarction), sharp, stabbing, like a knife (often used to describe pain arising from pleural irritation)?
- Ask about the *severity*. Ask if it was the worst pain ever? Ask the patient the score out of 10 compared to the worst pain they have ever experienced.
- What was the *duration*? Seconds, minutes, hours? When was the first time you ever had this pain?
- What was it *relieved by*? Rest, posture, nitrates, oxygen, analgesia?

- What was it *exacerbated by*? Exertion, breathing, movement, coughing?
- Ask about *location*. Across upper chest, epigastric, sternal? Can you point to the area with one finger?
- Ask about *radiation*. Arms, back, throat, jaw, teeth, abdomen?
- Were there *accompanying symptoms*? Dizzy, faint, syncope, palpitations, sweaty, nausea, vomiting, anxiety, hyperventilation, acid reflux, fever, haemoptysis, abdominal pain?
- Was there any relation to exertion, posture or breathing?
- Ask if the patient ever had it before. Is it similar/better/worse than previous pains/myocardial infarction/angina?
- What does the patient think it is?
- Ask about treatment already received (e.g. aspirin, GTN).
- Establish the character of the pain, its location, onset, radiation, precipitating, exacerbating and alleviating features and accompanying symptoms.

### Past medical history

- Any history of ischaemic heart disease, angina, myocardial infarction or cardiac operations?
- Any history of pulmonary disease?
- Any history of systemic disease (e.g. malignancy)?

- Ask about the risk factors for atherosclerosis: smoking, family history, hypertension, hyperlipidaemia and diabetes mellitus.

## Examination

### Does the patient need immediate resuscitation?

- Check the patient's airway and the patient's breathing. If possible give oxygen and obtain intravenous access, ECG monitor and a 12-lead ECG.
- Does the patient look unwell? Is he/she in pain, distressed, comfortable, vomiting, anxious, sweaty, pale, febrile, cyanosed or tachypnoeic? Are there any surgical scars (e.g. from CABG)?
- Is the patient well perfused or with cool peripheries?
- Pulse:** rate, rhythm, volume, character peripheral pulses present? Are they equal?
- BP:** are both arms equal?

- Is the **JVP** elevated?
- Chest movements:** symmetrical expansion, exacerbation of pain?
- Apex beat position?**
- Pain reproduced/exaggerated by chest wall pressure?
- Percussion:** any dullness?
- Auscultation:** check lung fields for added sounds – crackles, rub or wheeze?
- Heart sounds:** are there any murmurs, a pericardial rub or gallop?
- Check for peripheral **oedema**, ankles and sacrum.
- Any **urine output?**
- Abdomen:** any tenderness, guarding, rebound, bowel sounds, organomegaly or aneurysm?
- CNS:** any weakness or focal deficits?
- An **ECG**, **chest X-ray** and **cardiac enzymes** such as troponin are invaluable in the diagnosis of chest pain.

**Table 32.1** The differential diagnosis of chest pain

Cause of chest pain	Frequency	Common symptoms	Common signs	Important diagnostic investigations
Myocardial infarction	Common	Tight, heavy, crushing central chest pain Nausea, vomiting, anxiety, sweating Radiation to arms, jaw	In pain, sweaty, tachycardia (may have signs of MI complications, e.g. shock, heart failure) <b>(But may have none)</b>	ECG Chest X-ray Cardiac enzymes/troponin
Angina	Very common	Tight, heavy central chest pain Radiation to arms, jaw Precipitated by exertion Alleviated by rest, GTN	May have none	ECG Exercise test Coronary angiogram Troponin
Pulmonary embolus	Common	Central or pleuritic chest pain Sudden onset shortness of breath Haemoptysis	Tachycardia Tachypnoea Raised JVP Hypotension Shock Pleural rub <b>(But may have none)</b>	ECG Fibrin degradation products (FDPs) Chest X-ray Blood gases V/Q scan CTPA Troponin
Aortic dissection	Rare	Very sudden onset 'tearing' chest or back pain Collapse Nausea, sweating, vomiting	Hypertension BP difference between arms Absent pulses Neurological deficits <b>(But may have none)</b>	Chest X-ray ECG CT chest/MRI Echocardiogram
Pericarditis	Rare	Burning, aching or heavy chest pain Relieved by sitting forwards	May have pericardial rub	ECG Echocardiogram
Musculoskeletal	Very common	Localized pain Exacerbated or reproduced by movement, breathing, coughing	Localized tenderness	Normal ECG Chest X-ray
Dyspepsia/oesophageal reflux	Very common	Central, epigastric, substernal sharp or burning pain Can radiate to back Relief with antacids	Epigastric tenderness <b>(or none)</b>	Normal ECG Chest X-ray
'Pleurisy' may be due to pneumonia, viral infections, malignancy, PE	Common	Sharp, localized, stabbing pain Exacerbated by breathing, coughing, movement	Pleural rub May have signs of consolidation Fever	Chest X-ray

**History**

Where is the pain?

What type?

Radiation

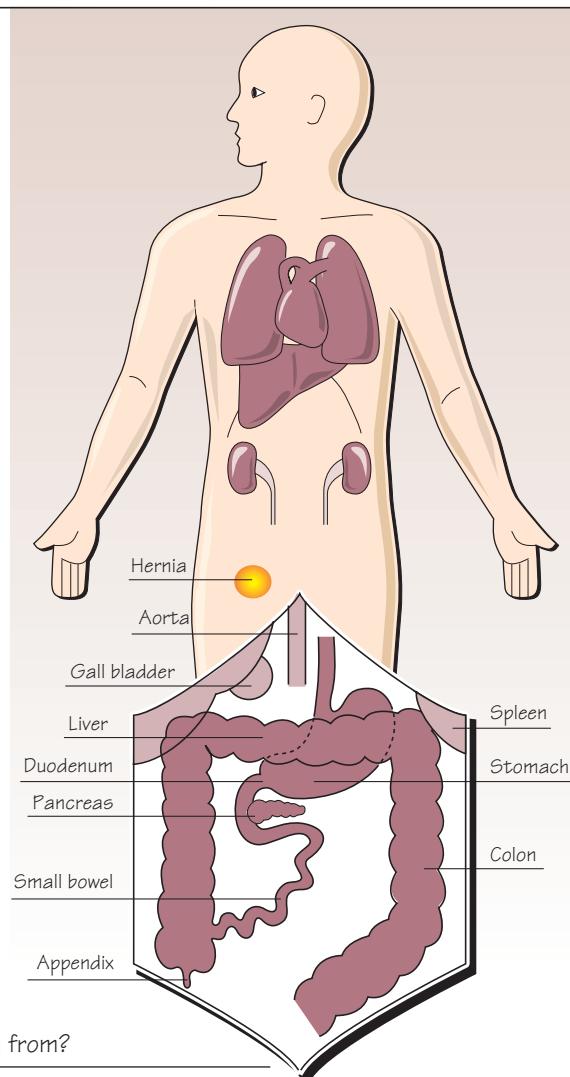
Precipitation

Alleviation

Other symptoms

**Remember**

Extra-abdominal sources of pain, e.g. myocardial infarction, metabolic disturbance



Where is the pain coming from?

**Examination**

Well/unwell

Systemic signs

- fever
- shock

Acute abdomen

- tenderness
- rebound
- guarding
- absent bowel sounds

Rectal examination

**Important questions**

- Is the patient unwell?
- Is there hypovolaemia or shock?
- Is there an acute abdomen?
- Which organ(s) is producing the pain?

Abdominal pain is a common and important complaint. It may represent a life-threatening disease, such as a perforated peptic ulcer, or a mild, self-limiting illness, such as gastroenteritis. More rarely it may be a presentation of extra-abdominal disease, such as myocardial infarction, or metabolic disturbance, such as diabetic ketoacidosis.

**History**

- When did the pain start? Did it start gradually or suddenly?
- What sort of pain is it? Aching, sharp, burning, etc.
- Is it constant or variable? Is it 'colicky' (waxes and wanes in cycles)?
- Where is the pain? Does it radiate? Does it radiate to the back?
- What exacerbates/precipitates the pain (movement, posture, eating)?
- What alleviates the pain?
- Are there any associated symptoms (vomiting, diarrhoea, acid reflux, back pain, breathlessness, GI bleeding, dysuria, haematuria)?
- Have there been previous episodes? When do they occur and how frequently?

- Any recent change in bowel habit? Are there any symptoms of indigestion, steatorrhoea or weight loss?

**Past medical history**

- Find out the PMH of any significant medical conditions.
- Ask if there is any history of previous abdominal surgery.

**Drugs**

- Ask about any medication that might cause pain (e.g. NSAIDs and peptic ulceration) or mask abdominal signs (e.g. corticosteroids).
- Consider alcohol as a cause of the pain (e.g. pancreatitis).

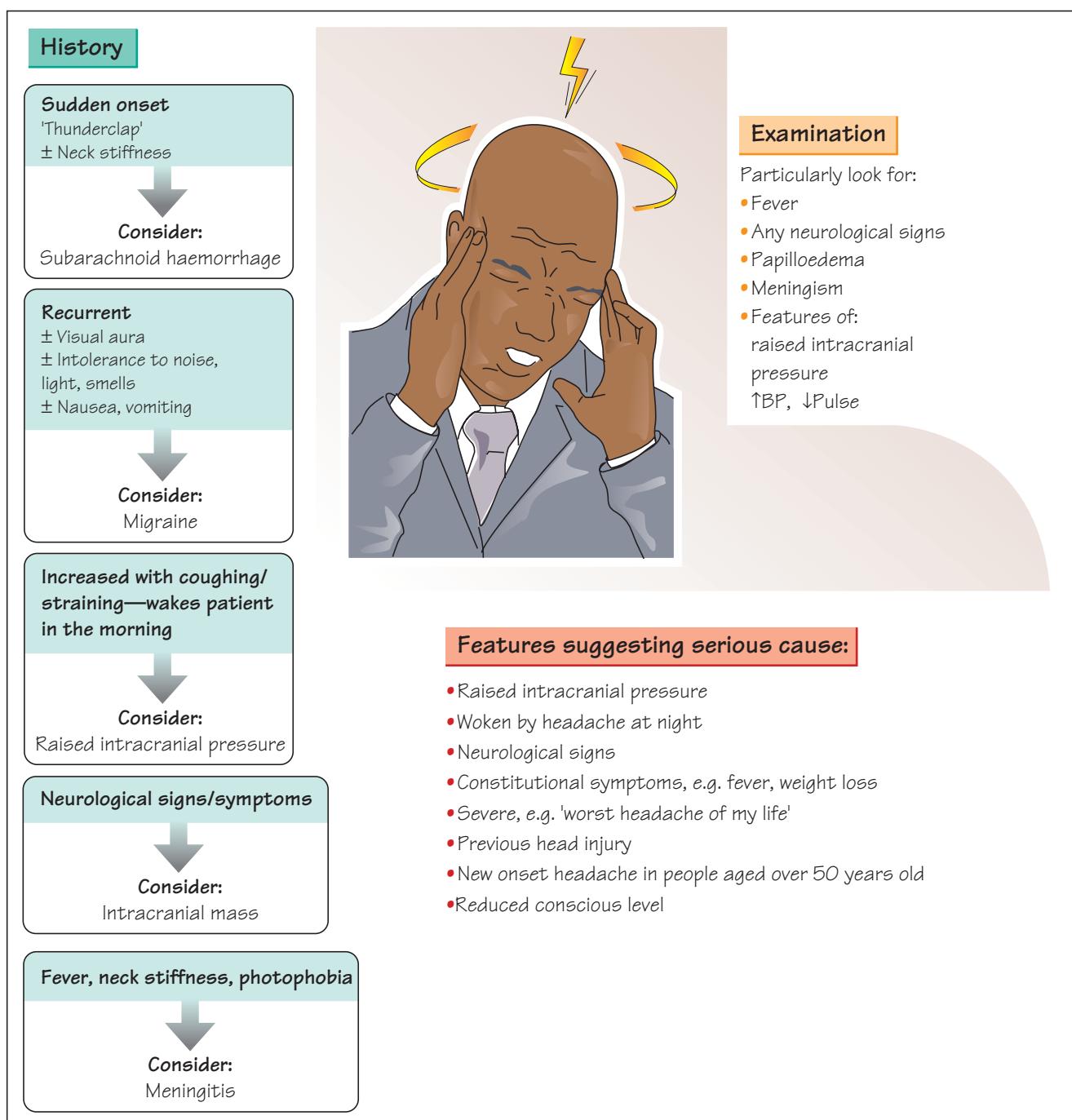
**Examination**

- Is the patient well or unwell? Comfortable or uncomfortable? Still or restless?
- Eyes open (fearfully watching the doctor's abdominal examination?) or closed and relaxed?

- Is there fever, anaemia, jaundice, lymphadenopathy, evidence of weight loss, malnutrition, foetus, ketosis?
  - Are they dehydrated, shocked, hypovolaemic?
  - Do they have an acute abdomen? (see Chapter 96).
  - Could there be obstruction (distension, vomiting, absolute constipation, high-pitched tinkling bowel sounds)?
- Is there tenderness, guarding, rigidity, rebound, visible peristalsis?
  - Might there be enlargement of aorta, liver, kidney, spleen, gallbladder, herniae, other masses?

**Table 33.1** The differential diagnosis of abdominal pain

Cause of abdominal pain	Frequency	Common symptoms	Common signs	Important investigations
Appendicitis	Common	Central abdominal pain, then localizing to right iliac fossa Fever, anorexia	Right iliac fossa tenderness, rebound, guarding	
Infective gastroenteritis	Very common	Vomiting, diarrhoea, diffuse abdominal pain	Dehydration Diffuse abdominal tenderness	Stool culture
Peptic ulcer	Very common	Epigastric pain Can radiate to back Increased certain foods Alleviated by antacids	Epigastric tenderness Acute abdomen if perforation	Upper GI endoscopy
Oesophageal reflux	Very common	Burning retrosternal, epigastric pain Alleviated by antacids Exacerbated at night, lying flat	None	Upper GI endoscopy
Biliary colic	Rare	Sudden onset, severe upper abdominal pain May have vomiting Can radiate to back/right shoulder	Right upper quadrant tenderness	Abdominal ultrasound
Cholecystitis/cholangitis	Common	Right upper quadrant or epigastric pain Can radiate to back/right shoulder Exacerbation with fatty foods	Right upper quadrant tenderness Fever	Abdominal ultrasound
Pancreatitis	Common	Severe, epigastric pain Can radiate to back Vomiting	Epigastric tenderness Signs of acute abdomen May have shock, breathlessness	Amylase Abdominal CT
Bowel obstruction	Common	Vomiting Absolute constipation Abdominal pain	Abdominal distension Generalized tenderness Tinkling bowel sounds	Abdominal X-ray
Diverticulitis	Common	Pain especially left lower quadrant Fever Change in bowel habit	Fever Tenderness Acute abdomen if perforation	Abdominal CT
Aortic aneurysm	Common	Central abdominal pain Back pain Sudden and severe with ruptured aneurysm	Expansile, pulsatile mass Shock with ruptured aneurysm	Abdominal CT Abdominal ultrasound
Renal colic	Common	Sudden onset, severe pain in loin radiating to groin or testis Pain may wax and wane Haematuria	Loin tenderness Dipstick urine positive for blood	Plain KUB X-ray IVP Ultrasound



Headache is a very common symptom that is rarely due to serious disease. It is thus vital to assess the symptom of headache with care, try to reach an accurate diagnosis of the cause of the headache and establish whether there are any features suggesting a sinister cause of headache.

### History

- What does the patient mean by headache? Is there pain? What is it like (e.g. throbbing, stabbing or aching)?

- How did it start? Did it start gradually or suddenly? What precipitated it?
- Have there been any accompanying symptoms (e.g. visual disturbance, vomiting, nausea, fever, photophobia, neck stiffness, rhinorrhoea or neurological deficit)?
- Is it similar to previous headaches? How often does the patient experience these headaches?
- What usually precipitates the headaches? Tension, anxiety, etc?
- How does this headache differ from previous headaches?

- Any history of trauma?
- Are there features of raised intracranial pressure? Is the headache exacerbated by coughing or straining? Is the headache waking the patient early in the morning?
- Any suggestion of meningitis? Accompanying neck stiffness, photophobia, fever, drowsiness?
- Any history of very sudden onset of headache suggestive of subarachnoid haemorrhage?
- Any accompanying neurological symptoms?
- Any change in personality, deterioration in mental abilities? History from relatives may be very informative.

## Past medical history

- Previous headaches, especially migraines (with detailed description)?
- Previous neurological conditions?
- Does the patient suffer from hypertension?

## Drugs

Any treatments taken for headaches?

## Family history

- Any family history of headaches, especially migraines?
- Any family history of cerebral haemorrhage, subarachnoid haemorrhage or meningitis?

## Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell? Is the patient in obvious discomfort, vomiting, photophobic?
- Look for pyrexia, neck stiffness and Kernig's sign.
- Are there any neurological abnormalities on full CNS examination?
- Look particularly for gait abnormalities, lateralizing signs and signs of raised intracranial pressure (e.g. papilloedema, bradycardia, hypertension, cranial nerve palsies).

N.B. Significant intracranial mass lesions may be present without papilloedema or other neurological signs. Therefore persisting headaches without a clear alternative diagnosis require further investigation.

**Meningism = headache + neck stiffness + photophobia**

**Table 34.1** The differential diagnosis of headache

Type	Headache	Other symptoms	Examination
Tension headache	Generalized	Neck aches/stiffness	Normal
Migraine	Throbbing Unilateral Recurrent	Vomiting Visual aura Photophobia	Normal (but rare 'hemiplegic' migraine)
Cluster	Localized to eye Recurrent	Eye watering	Conjunctival injection
Subarachnoid	Very sudden onset	Neck stiffness Photophobia	Meningism Subhyaloid haemorrhages
Meningitis	Severe	Neck stiffness Fever Drowsy Photophobia	Meningism Fever
Raised intracranial pressure or space occupying lesion (SOL)	Worse with straining/coughing Early morning headache	Neurological symptoms	Papilloedema Focal neurological signs
Temporal arteritis	Generalized, scalp tenderness	Jaw claudication Polymyalgia rheumatica	Temporal artery tenderness

## Evidence

The best historical features for diagnosing migraine can be summarized by the mnemonic POUNDing (Pulsating, duration of 4-72 hOurs, Unilateral, Nausea, Disabling). If 4 of the 5 criteria are met, the likelihood ratio (LR) for definite or possible migraine is 24, if 3 are met, the LR is 3.5 and if 2 or fewer are met, the LR is 0.41. In a patient with headache, several clinical features predict a serious intracranial abnormality: cluster-type headache (LR, 10.7); abnormal findings on neurologic examination (LR, 5.3); undefined headache (i.e., not cluster-, migraine-, or tension-type) (LR, 3.8); headache with aura (LR, 3.2); headache aggravated by exertion or straining (LR, 2.3); and headache with vomiting (LR, 1.8).

Detsky ME et al. Does this patient with headache have a migraine or need neuroimaging? *JAMA* 2006; **296**: 1274-83.

Clinical characteristics in patients with acute headache significantly associated with subarachnoid haemorrhage were: onset during exertion, worst headache of life, loss of consciousness, need to rest, neck stiffness, vomiting, blood pressure >160/100.

Perry JJ et al. High risk clinical characteristics for subarachnoid haemorrhage in patients with acute headache: prospective cohort study. *BMJ* 2010; **341**: 5204.

**History**

What?  
+ blood  
+ 'coffee grounds'

How long?

How often?

Other symptoms?  
• Pain  
• Diarrhoea  
• Weight loss

# VOMITING

**Examination**

Is the patient unwell?

Is there significant fluid depletion?  
• Pallor  
• Tachycardia  
• Hypotension  
• Postural hypotension  
• Dry mucous membranes

Is there obstruction?  
• Abdominal distension  
• Succussion splash  
• High pitched bowel sounds  
• Abdominal mass/tenderness

Any evidence of serious underlying cause?  
• Myocardial infarction  
• Diabetic ketoacidosis  
• Renal failure

**History**

Stool  
• Volume  
• Frequency  
• Consistency  
+ blood  
+ mucus/pus

Other symptoms?  
• Vomiting  
• Abdominal pain  
• Fever  
• Jaundice  
• Weight loss

# DIARRHOEA

**Examination**

Is the patient unwell?

Is there significant fluid depletion?

Any signs of?  
• Inflammatory bowel disease  
• Thyrotoxicosis  
• Malabsorption

Rectal examination

**Change in bowel habit**

What?  
• Increased/decreased frequency of motions  
• Change in colour/consistency  
• Urgency  
• Incontinence  
• Tenesmus

## Vomiting

Vomiting is a very common symptom of both serious and benign self-limiting conditions. Causes range from structural problems with the GI tract, such as small bowel obstruction, metabolic disturbances, such as uraemia, myocardial infarction, intoxication with alcohol or drugs, motion sickness, migraine, bulimia nervosa, severe pain, or viral gastroenteritis.

Address the following questions:

- What is the cause of the vomiting?
- Is there substantial fluid depletion or blood loss?

- Are there any features suggesting a serious underlying cause, e.g. metabolic disturbance, cardiopulmonary emergency (e.g. myocardial infarction) or bowel obstruction?

## History

- What does the patient actually mean by vomiting (retching or nausea or actual vomit)?
- How often have they been vomiting? What have they been vomiting (altered food, blood, 'coffee grounds') and for how long? Are they managing to drink and keep any fluids down?

- Does anything precipitate the vomiting? Movement or eating?
- What are the accompanying symptoms? Abdominal pain, other pains or diarrhoea?
- Does the patient have vertigo?
- Has there been reduced appetite? Weight loss?
- Any possibility of intoxication or of pregnancy?
- Are there any symptoms of neurological disease?
- Any history of GI disorders (e.g. pancreatitis, known bowel malignancy), previous abdominal surgery, previous episodes of bowel obstruction due to, for example, adhesions, medication (especially chemotherapy or opiates), diabetes mellitus, renal failure or excess alcohol intake?

### **Examination**

- Does the patient appear unwell? Are they in pain or febrile? Patients who are vomiting often appear pale and there may be strong vagal activation producing, for example, bradycardia.
- Is there evidence of significant fluid depletion? Is there pallor, tachycardia, hypotension or postural hypotension?
- Is there evidence of intestinal obstruction (abdominal distension, succussion splash, high-pitched bowel sounds and abdominal tenderness)?
- Is there a smell of ketones (due to 'starvation' or diabetic ketoacidosis)?
- Are there any neurological signs (e.g. of raised intracranial pressure or nystagmus)?

### **Diarrhoea**

Diarrhoea can be due to self-limiting illness, due to infections or be a manifestation of serious disease, such as ulcerative colitis, bowel malignancy or malabsorption.

Try to establish:

- If there is substantial fluid or electrolyte depletion or blood loss.
- If there are any features suggesting a serious underlying cause, for example, inflammatory bowel disease, subacute bowel obstruction or evidence of malabsorption.

### **History**

- What does the patient mean by diarrhoea? Frequent stools? Loose stools? Liquid stools? Is there actually increased stool volume? Is it extremely watery? Is there undigested food in the stool?
- How frequently does diarrhoea occur? For how long does the diarrhoea occur? Is there urgency or tenesmus?
- What is the colour and consistency of the stool? Any blood, mucus or pus? Are the stools pale, do they float (due to steatorrhoea)?
- If there is blood, is it mixed with stool, coating the surface or usually only present on toilet paper (this would suggest haemorrhoids)?
- Consider the possibility of 'overflow' diarrhoea due to constipation.
- Are there other associated symptoms such as recurrent mouth ulcers, vomiting or abdominal pain?
- Are there any symptoms of fluid depletion (e.g. faintness, postural dizziness)?
- Any systemic symptoms such as fever, rash or athralgia?
- Has there been recent change in bowel habit? Any constipation?
- Any features suggesting malabsorption (e.g. weight loss, symptoms of anaemia)?
- Any contact with others with diarrhoea and vomiting?
- Any history of previous diarrhoea, known GI disease or abdominal operations?

- Any foreign travel?
- Are there any drugs that the patient is taking that might be causing the diarrhoea? Has the patient taken any drugs for the treatment of diarrhoea?
- Any family history of inflammatory bowel disease or gut malignancy?

### **Examination**

- Is the patient well or unwell? Does the patient have a fever?
- Is there evidence of fluid depletion (tachycardia, postural hypotension, hypotension, dry mucous membranes)? Are there signs of weight loss, anaemia, angular stomatitis or koilonychia?
- What is the patient's body mass index (weight [kg])/height [metres squared])?
- Are there any signs of inflammatory bowel disease?
- Are there any signs of thyrotoxicosis?
- Is there abdominal tenderness, masses or rectal tenderness?
- Are bowel sounds normal, hyperactive or high-pitched tinkling (suggesting obstruction)?
- Any blood, mucus or masses on rectal examination?
- If there is blood rectally or if there is failure of symptoms to resolve the patient will probably require a sigmoidoscopy.

### **Change in bowel habit**

A change in bowel habit represents an important symptom as it may be due to a GI lesion, such as a rectal carcinoma, an adenomatous polyp or be due to malabsorption. However, a change in bowel habit can occur in benign conditions, such as irritable bowel syndrome.

### **History**

- What has the patient noticed? Increased frequency of motions? Change in colour, consistency of motion? For how long has this occurred?
- Are there any other symptoms such as diarrhoea, vomiting or flushing?
- Are there any features suggesting malignancy or malabsorption (e.g. blood, weight loss, abdominal mass, pain on defecation, jaundice or anaemia)?
- Any clear precipitation by particular foods?
- Any history of GI disorders (e.g. previous bowel carcinoma, inflammatory bowel disease or thyroid dysfunction)?
- Any family history of bowel malignancy?

### **Examination**

- Is the patient well or unwell?
- Are there any signs of weight loss, jaundice, anaemia, lymphadenopathy (including Virchow's node)?
- Any abdominal mass or herniae?

### **Rectal examination**

The patient is likely to need sigmoidoscopic examination.

### **Intestinal obstruction**

Intestinal obstruction should be considered in any patient with prolonged vomiting or unexplained abdominal pain.

The symptoms of bowel obstruction may include colicky abdominal pain, vomiting, absolute constipation (no faeces or flatus).

*Continued on p. 78.*

Consider features in the history pointing towards a cause of the obstruction (e.g. known bowel malignancy, previous abdominal surgery, metabolic disturbance leading to ileus).

On examination look for:

- signs of hypovolaemia (see Chapter 68)
- abdominal distension
- high pitched tinkling bowel sounds (but absent in ileus)

- succussion splash
- signs of bowel malignancy (e.g. mass, weight loss, anaemia, hepatomegaly)
- scars from previous operations suggesting adhesions as a possible cause
- digital rectal examination ± sigmoidoscopy for obstructing mass.

**Table 35.1** The differential diagnosis of vomiting

Cause of vomiting	Frequency	Symptoms	Signs
Gastroenteritis	Very common	Nausea Diarrhoea	Dehydration Abdominal tenderness
Intoxication (e.g. with alcohol)	Very common	Nausea Unsteadiness	Drowsy Smells of alcohol
Bowel obstruction	Common	Nausea Absolute constipation (no faeces or flatus)	Dehydration Abdominal distension Tinkling bowel sounds
Ileus	Common (postoperatively)	Vomiting	Absent bowel sounds
Metabolic disturbance (e.g. renal failure, ketoacidosis)	Rare	Nausea Vomiting	Active bowel sounds
Raised intracranial pressure	Very rare	Headache Neurological deficits	Papilloedema Hypertension Neurological signs
Pancreatitis	Rare	Abdominal pain	Abdominal tenderness Acute abdomen

**Table 35.2** The differential diagnosis of diarrhoea

Cause of diarrhoea	Frequency	Symptoms	Signs	Important investigations
Gastroenteritis	Very common	Abdominal pain Vomiting Blood unusual Self-limiting	Abdominal tenderness Dehydration	Stool culture
Inflammatory bowel disease	Common	Abdominal pain Weight loss Blood, pus, mucus	Abdominal tenderness Active bowel sounds	Sigmoidoscopy
Malabsorption	Uncommon	Steatorrhoea Weight loss	Rarely neuropathy Anaemia	Blood tests: albumin, full blood count Endoscopy
Bowel malignancy	Common	Weight loss BP	Abdominal mass Rectal mass Anaemia	Endoscopy Barium examinations

**History**

**Anaemia**

- Pale
- Tired
- Breathless

**Vomit**

- Blood
- 'Coffee grounds'
- Initial vomit
- How much?

**Abdominal pain**

- Ulcer

**Melaena**

- Fresh blood

**Examination**

**Signs of hypovolaemia**

- Pulse
- Blood pressure
- Postural fall in BP?

**Anaemia**

- Pallor
- Tachycardia
- Koilonychia

**Signs of chronic liver disease and portal hypertension**

**Cause of blood loss?**

- Abdominal mass
- Malignancy

NB. Rectal examination for mass, blood, melaena, faecal occult blood

This may present acutely with vomiting of blood (haematemesis) or passing of blood per rectum, which may be altered by passage through the GI tract and appear as melaena (black, tarry stool). Chronic GI haemorrhage may lead to anaemia and iron deficiency without obvious blood loss.

### History

- Has the patient been vomiting blood or 'coffee grounds'?
- How much, how many times and for how long has the patient vomited?
- Did the first vomit contain blood or only subsequent ones? (Consider the possibility of Mallory–Weiss tear – bleeding due to oesophageal tear following vomiting.)
- Any indigestion, heartburn, acid reflux or abdominal pain?
- Any blood loss per rectum or melaena (which suggests upper GI haemorrhage)? Blood mixed with stool or separate from it? Present on paper? Any change in bowel habit? Any pain on defecation? Any mucus, diarrhoea?
- Does the patient feel faint or dizzy, especially with sitting/standing upright?
- Are there symptoms suggestive of chronic anaemia (reduced exercise tolerance, fatigue, angina, breathlessness, etc.)?

### Past medical history

Any history of previous GI blood loss, anaemia, bleeding tendency, liver disease (consider varices)?

### Drugs

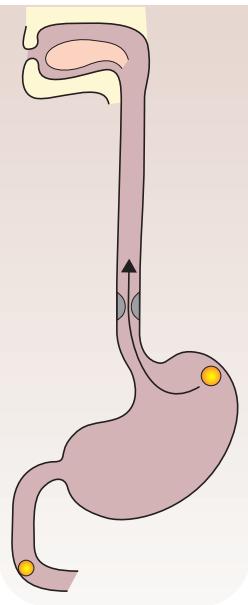
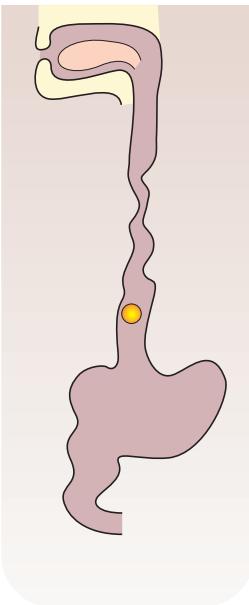
- Is the patient taking aspirin, NSAIDs, anticoagulation drugs or iron (produces black stools)?
- Ask about the patient's smoking and alcohol history. If the patient's alcohol intake is excessive, consider alcohol-induced gastritis, ulcers or even variceal haemorrhage.

### Family history

Is there history of bowel malignancy, colitis or rare hereditary conditions, such as Osler–Weber–Rendu syndrome?

### Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell? About to die because of hypovolaemic shock?
- Is the patient hypovolaemic? (See Chapter 68.) If so resuscitate the patient, obtain intravascular access and give fluids.
- Check the pulse, BP, postural BP, JVP and for pallor. Are they cold and clammy?
- Examine the patient's stool and any vomit bowl. Assess the volume of blood lost.
- Are there any signs of chronic liver disease?
- Does the patient have anaemia, koilonychia or telangiectasia? Are there any signs of heart failure?
- Check the abdomen for tenderness, distension or masses.

<h3>Indigestion</h3> <p><b>History</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pain           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Where?</li> <li>• Character</li> <li>• Radiation</li> <li>• Precipitant</li> <li>• Alleviated</li> </ul> </li> <li>Systemic symptoms           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaundice</li> <li>• Weight loss</li> <li>• Anorexia</li> <li>• Anaemia</li> </ul> </li> <li>Vomiting           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nausea</li> <li>• Change in bowel habit</li> <li>• Melaena</li> </ul> </li> </ul> 	<h3>Dysphagia</h3> <p><b>History</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In pain           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Anaemia</li> <li>• Jaundice/lymphadenopathy</li> <li>• Weight loss</li> <li>• Masses</li> <li>• Tenderness</li> <li>• Stool-(faecal occult blood)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Weight loss           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Weakness</li> <li>• Vomiting</li> </ul> </li> </ul> 
<p><b>Examination</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Liquids vs. solids</li> <li>Painful</li> <li>Where?</li> </ul>	<p><b>Examination</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Weight loss, anaemia</li> <li>Mouth tongue</li> <li>ENT examination</li> <li>Aspiration?</li> <li>Abdominal mass</li> <li>Hepatomegaly</li> <li>Weakness</li> <li>Watch patient swallow</li> </ul>

## Indigestion

Indigestion is a very common symptom but it means different things to different people. It can mean abdominal pain, difficulty swallowing, acid reflux, retrosternal pain, etc. It can be a symptom of many important diseases, including peptic ulceration, gastric carcinoma and oesophageal reflux.

### History

- What does the patient actually mean by indigestion?
- How do they use their hands to describe the symptom?
- What is the character of any pain or discomfort (e.g. burning, aching, stabbing)?
- What does it feel like? Where do they feel it?
- Does the pain or discomfort radiate (e.g. to the back)?
- When are the symptoms apparent (after meals, after certain foods, after alcohol, at night)?
- Does anything relieve the symptoms (e.g. sitting upright, antacids, drinking milk)?
- Any relationship with exertion? (Consider a cardiac source of the symptom).
- Any weight loss, anorexia, jaundice, symptoms of anaemia?
- Any vomiting, nausea, change in bowel habit, dark/black stools, haematemesis?

### Past medical history

- Are there any previous episodes of indigestion?
- Any history of peptic ulcers?
- Any previous endoscopies?
- Any treatment with H<sub>2</sub> antagonists or proton pump inhibitors?
- Any stomach operations (e.g. vagotomy and pyloroplasty, gallstones)?

## Drugs

- Are there any treatments (e.g. H<sub>2</sub> antagonists, proton pump inhibitors), *Helicobacter pylori* eradication or other possible causes of indigestion (e.g. NSAIDs)?
- Ask about the patient's alcohol and smoking history.

### Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell? In pain or comfortable?
- Any anaemia, jaundice, lymphadenopathy, clubbing?
- Well nourished or signs of weight loss?
- Are there any signs of blood loss?

### Examine abdomen

- Any masses, abdominal tenderness, abnormal bowel sounds?
- Give rectal examination and haemoccult test.

### Frequency of GI symptoms in dyspepsia-related diseases

Table 37.1 illustrates the difficulty in establishing a diagnosis in dyspepsia from history alone. Diseases with a significant difference in symptom frequency are shown in **bold** type. Weight loss and GI haemorrhage are features that increase the likelihood of an underlying gastric cancer. The table emphasizes the importance of careful history, examination and investigations, such as endoscopy, in reaching a precise diagnosis of the cause of indigestion.

## Dysphagia

Dysphagia means difficulty swallowing. It is usually due to structural disease of the oesophagus, such as a benign stricture, oesophagitis or oesophageal carcinoma, although extrinsic compression by a tumour or aneurysm, tumours of the oropharynx and neuromuscular disorders,

**Table 37.1** Percentage frequency of GI symptoms in dyspepsia-related disease

Symptom	Functional dyspepsia	Oesophagitis	Duodenal ulcer	Gastric ulcer	Irritable bowel syndrome	Gallstone disease	Alcohol-related dyspepsia	Gastric cancer
Anorexia	40	35	47	56	35	29	55	<b>64</b>
Nausea	39	17	34	39	33	28	37	<b>48</b>
Vomiting	24	22	34	34	<b>11</b>	23	<b>59</b>	49
GI haemorrhage	12	14	<b>26</b>	23	5	7	32	<b>34</b>
Heartburn	20	<b>64</b>	32	23	12	19	25	22
Weight loss	23	20	26	34	<b>16</b>	32	33	<b>72</b>

Adapted from Spiller RC. ABC of the upper GI tract. Anorexia, nausea and vomiting. *BMJ* 2001; **323**: 1354–7.

such as myasthenia gravis, bulbar palsy (e.g. motoneurone disease), stroke, achalasia or pharyngeal pouch, may be responsible.

### History

- Is there difficulty swallowing liquid and solids? How has this developed? (Difficulty swallowing both fluids and solids from the beginning suggests a motility disorder.)
- Is it difficult to make a swallowing movement (consider bulbar palsy)?
- Is swallowing painful (odynophagia)? (Consider malignancy or oesophagitis).
- Is there bulging of the neck or gurgling? (Consider pharyngeal pouch).
- Where does the patient feel things are sticking?
- Any coughing or choking with swallowing? (This would suggest a neuromuscular cause).
- Any weight loss?
- Any evidence of weakness elsewhere?
- Any haematemesis, vomiting or regurgitation?

### Past medical history

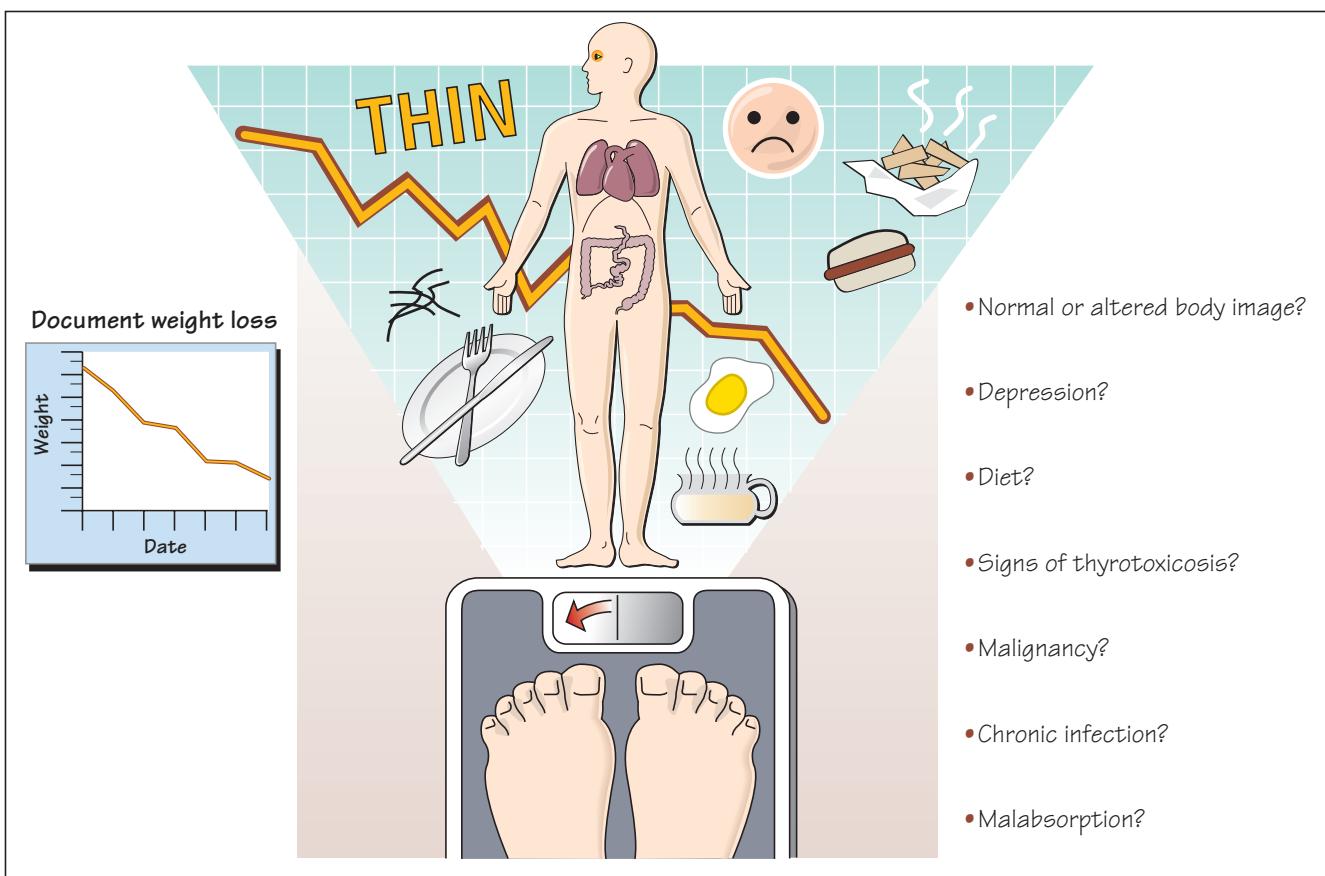
- Any history of ulcers, systemic illnesses (e.g. scleroderma) or neurological disorders (e.g. myasthenia gravis)?
- Any history of operations for reflux (e.g. fundoplication)?

### Drugs

- Any treatment such as proton pump inhibitors?
- Any drugs that might cause or exacerbate oesophagitis (e.g. NSAIDs)?
- Ask about the patient's smoking and alcohol history.

### Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell?
- Any signs of anaemia, lymphadenopathy or jaundice?
- Evidence of weight loss?
- Any abnormalities of the neck? Is there a goitre?
- Examine the mouth and tongue.
- Consider specialist ENT examination of pharynx and larynx.
- Any cardiovascular or respiratory signs?
- Look for signs of aspiration.
- Any abdominal masses? Any hepatomegaly or epigastric tenderness?
- Perform a neurological examination. A full examination is necessary with particular focus on any muscular weakness, fasciculation, the tongue and gag reflex.
- Watch the patient swallow fluid. Any choking, coughing or neck swelling?



Weight loss may be a sole presenting complaint or accompanied by other symptoms. It may represent serious physical or psychological illness.

### History

- How much weight has the patient lost and over how long?
- Are there objective measures of weight loss (e.g. clinic recordings, patient's measurements)?
- Has there been loosening of clothing, tightening of belts?
- Is the appetite normal or reduced?
- Are there any symptoms suggesting malabsorption (diarrhoea, abdominal pain, vomiting, steatorrhoea)?
- Are there any symptoms suggesting thyrotoxicosis (tachycardias, tremor, etc.)?
- Are there any features of depression (lowered mood, early morning wakening, suicidal ideation, etc.)?
- Are there any symptoms suggesting malignancy or chronic infection?
- Are there any symptoms of uncontrolled diabetes mellitus (e.g. polyuria, thirst, polydipsia)?
- Are there any symptoms suggesting major organ dysfunction (e.g. of heart failure)?

- What is the patient's perception of the weight loss? Do they regard it as abnormal? Do they think they look thin or normal?

### Past medical history

- Any history of previous serious illnesses?
- Any history of previous malignancy, thyroid disease, anorexia nervosa, malabsorption or depression?

### Drugs

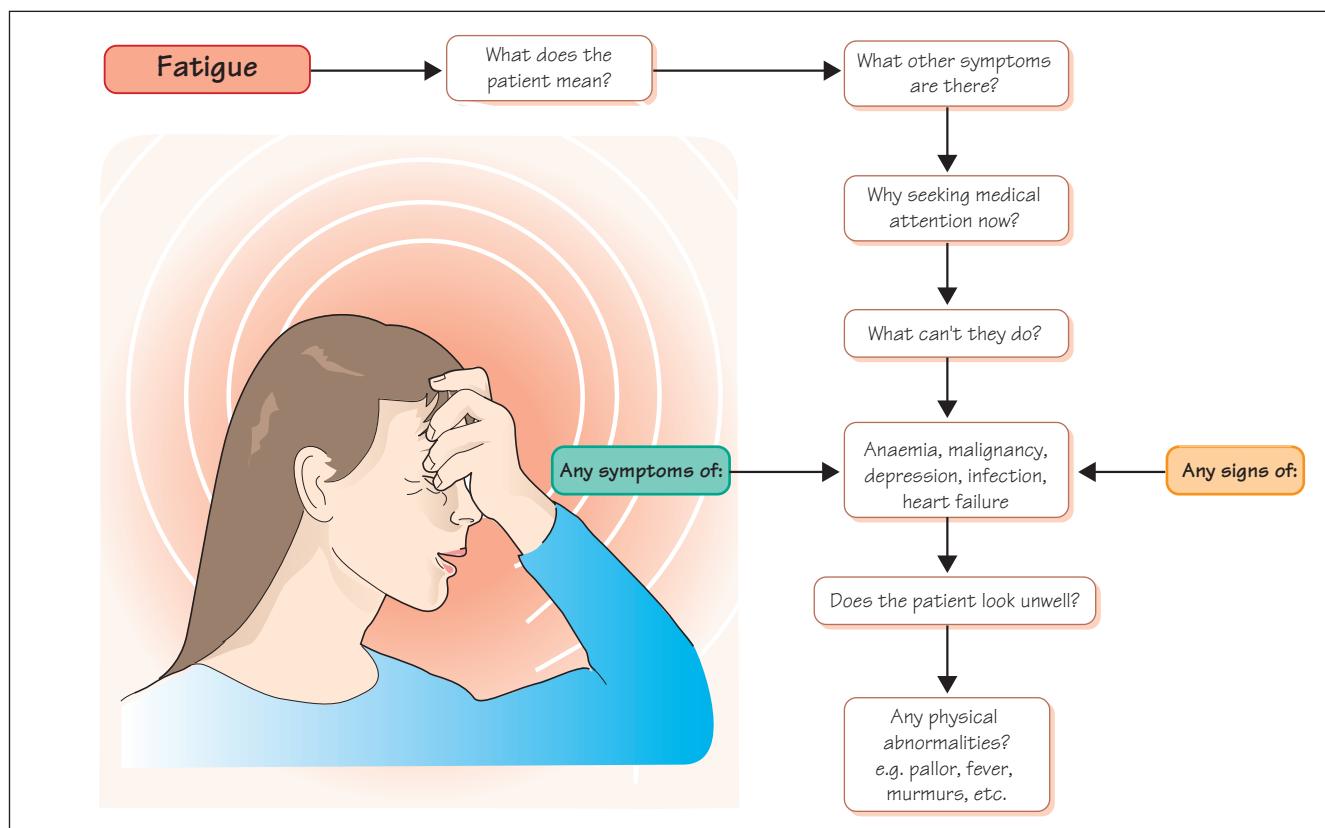
Is the patient taking any diuretics, laxatives or 'slimming' drugs (e.g. amphetamines)?

### Examination

- Does the patient look well or unwell?
- Any evidence of weight loss? (Have you weighed the patient?) Does the patient have a gaunt appearance with lax skin?
- Is there anaemia, jaundice, lymphadenopathy, pigmentation, hypotension or fever?
- Are there any signs of thyrotoxicosis?
- Are there any signs of malignancy or chronic infection?
- Are there any features of GI illnesses (e.g. Crohn's disease or ulcerative colitis)?

**Table 38.1** The differential diagnosis of weight loss

Cause of weight loss	Symptoms	Signs
Malignancy	Malaise Symptoms of specific malignancy (e.g. change in bowel habit, cough)	Anaemia, clubbing, lymphadenopathy, jaundice, hepatomegaly
Thyrotoxicosis	Anxiety, tremor, palpitations, heat intolerance, normal appetite	Tremor, goitre, thyroid eye disease, tachycardia
Malabsorption	Diarrhoea, abdominal pain, vomiting, steatorrhoea	Anaemia, neuropathy, bruising, proximal myopathy
Cardiac cachexia	Fatigue, breathlessness, leg swelling	Raised JVP, peripheral oedema, hypotension, cardiac enlargement, enlarged tender liver
Depression	Low mood, sleep disturbance, poor appetite	Of depression
Anorexia nervosa	Altered body image	Often profoundly thin
Chronic infection including HIV disease	Fever, malaise, rigors, night sweats	Fever, lymphadenopathy
Dietary inadequacy	Poverty, alcohol excess	



Fatigue or tiredness is a very common presentation and can be a manifestation of many different physical illnesses. However, it can also be a manifestation of social stresses or depressive illness. In many cases no identifiable organic disorder or psychiatric illness is found. It is particularly important to look hard for any clues concerning organic physical or psychiatric illness. Features suggesting an organic physical illness include weight loss, fevers, night sweats, specific pains, persistent symptoms of new onset and increasing age.

### History

- What does the patient mean by fatigue or tiredness?
- Is the patient feeling tired the whole time? Does he/she mean they are unable to exercise, have exertional breathlessness or are fed up?
- When were the symptoms first noticed? What seemed to precipitate it? Are there any other physical symptoms? Any significant social changes at this time?
- Why have they sought medical attention now?
- What does the patient think the problem is?
- Any breathlessness? Is there weight loss, fever or loss of appetite? Are there any other physical symptoms?
- Are there any features of anaemia, hypothyroidism, Addison's disease, underlying malignancy, renal failure, cardiac failure, chronic infection or obstructive sleep apnoea?

- What are they unable to do that they would like to? What do they do (are they working a 10-hour day and looking after three children or staying in bed all day long)?
- Are there any features of psychiatric illness (depression, anorexia, lowered mood, anhedonia, early morning wakening, suicidal ideation, etc.)?

### Past medical history

- Any history of previous illnesses, psychological problems, psychiatric illness or previous episodes of fatigue?
- A full **family and social history** is essential.

### Examination

- Does the patient look well or unwell? Are there any physical abnormalities?
- Look particularly for anaemia, heart failure, hypothyroidism, Addison's disease.
- If symptoms are severe and there is no clear explanation, investigations such as a full blood count, thyroid function, CRP, etc., are likely to be required.
- Focus in detail on any symptoms other than the fatigue, any objective features, such as weight loss, and any abnormal physical signs.

## Chronic fatigue syndrome

### Definition

Clinically evaluated, unexplained persistent or relapsing chronic fatigue that is of new or definite onset (i.e. not life-long), is not the result of ongoing exertion, is not substantially alleviated by rest, and results in substantial reduction in previous levels of occupational, educational, social or personal activities. Together with the concurrent occurrence of four or more of the following symptoms: substantial impairment in short-term memory or concentration, sore throat, tender lymph nodes, muscle pain, multi-joint pain without swelling or redness, headaches of a new type, pattern or severity, unrefreshing sleep or postexertional malaise lasting more than 24 hours, the

symptoms must have persisted or recurred during 6 or more consecutive months of illness and must not have predated the fatigue.

### Conditions that exclude a diagnosis of chronic fatigue syndrome

- Any active medical condition that may explain the presence of chronic fatigue, e.g. untreated hypothyroidism, sleep apnoea and narcolepsy, and iatrogenic conditions, such as side-effects of medication, malignancies and chronic infection.
- Previous or current diagnosis of a major psychiatric disorder.
- Alcohol or other substance abuse.
- Severe obesity.

**Table 39.1** The differential diagnosis of fatigue

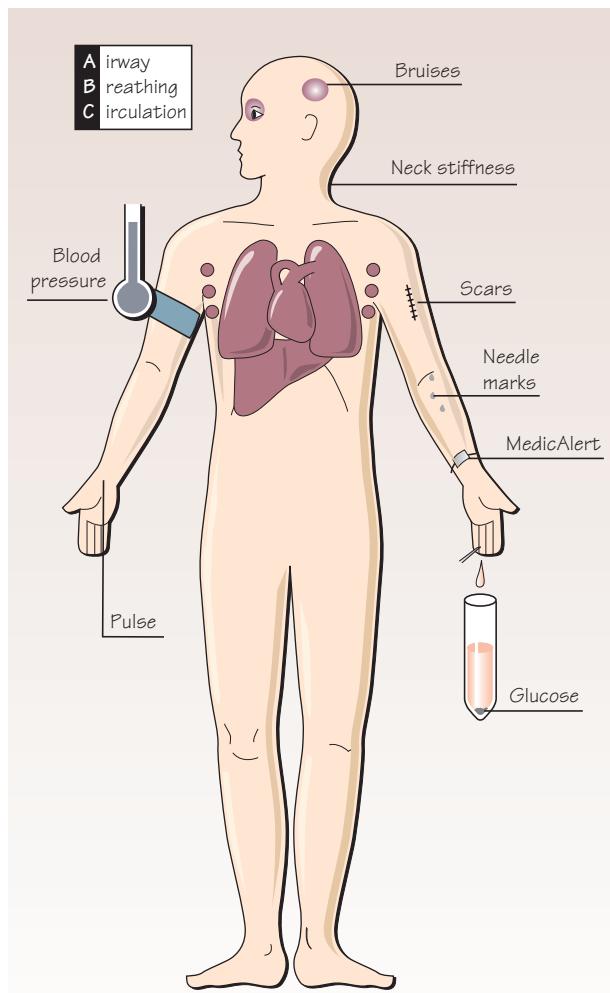
Cause of fatigue	Frequency	Symptoms	Signs	Important investigations
Anaemia	Common	Exertional breathlessness Angina	Pallor Signs of cardiac failure	Full blood count
Depression	Common	Sleep disturbance (especially early morning wakening) Low mood Anhedonia Poor appetite Suicidal ideation	Of depression	
Chronic fatigue syndrome	Common	Memory difficulties Headaches Myalgias Sore throat with fatigue of over 6 months	None	Full blood count Liver function Renal function
Hypothyroidism	Rare	Weight gain Cold intolerance Constipation Menorrhagia	Goitre Hair loss Puffy complexion Anaemia Slow relaxing reflexes	Thyroid function tests (TSH)
Heart failure	Rare	Exertional breathlessness Peripheral oedema	Raised JVP Gallop rhythm Enlarged liver Oedema Ascites	Chest X-ray ECG Echocardiogram
Addison's disease	Rare	Dizziness Poor appetite Vomiting	Pigmentation Hypotension (postural)	Electrolytes Synacthen test
Chronic infection	Rare	Fever Rigors Night sweats Poor appetite Weight loss	Fever Stigmata of endocarditis Other local findings in infection (e.g. empyema)	CRP
Renal failure	Rare	Polyuria Nocturia Itch Nausea Vomiting	Pigmentation Hypertension Haematuria Proteinuria Anaemia	Creatinine
Malignancy	Rare	Weight loss Reduced appetite Local symptoms (e.g. cough) Haemoptysis Breast lump	Lymphadenopathy Anaemia Jaundice Cachexia	Chest X-ray Full blood count
Obstructive sleep apnoea	Common	Snoring Frequent wakening at night Breathing pauses during sleep	Obesity Large collar size	Sleep study with oximetry

**History**

- From:
- Relatives
  - Friends
  - Witnesses
  - Ambulancemen
  - Police
  - Medical notes
  - GP

- Episodes
- Current
  - Past
  - Previous

Drugs  
Alcohol  
Social history

**Glasgow Coma Score (/?15)**

Motor	Obey	6	Verbal	Orientated	5	Eye opening	Spontaneous	4
Localize	5		Confused	4		To speech	3	
Withdraw	4		Inappropriate	3		To pain	2	
Flexion	3		Incomprehensible	2		None	1	
Extension	2		None	1				
None	1							

**Examination**

Temperature

Skin, rash, bruises, colour

Breath:

- Ketones, alcohol

Respiratory pattern

General examination

ABC

Glucose

Oxygenation

- Cyanosis

- Pulse oximetry

- Arterial blood gases

**Cranial nerves**

Pupils

- Size
- Symmetry
- Reaction to light

III, IV, VI

- Eye position
- Deviation
- Doll's eye movements

V, VII

- Corneal reflex
- Response to pain



- Caloric reflex

**Limbs**

Inspect

Posture, myoclonus, wasting

Tone

Symmetry

Power

Response to pain

Reflexes

Spontaneous

Sensation

Tendon, plantars, clonus, grasp

Response to pain

Protect from further damage  
Monitor ABC and level of coma

## History

- A history can and should always be obtained concerning an unconscious patient.
- Interview relatives or friends (if not present attempts should be made to contact them and history obtained by telephone if necessary).
- Interview any witnesses of the circumstances in which the patient became unconscious. Detailed descriptions of the process of loss of consciousness can be very helpful in reaching a diagnosis.
- Interview other sources for the history may include ambulance reports, ambulance officers, the police, the GP and any medical notes that can be obtained.
- Just as one takes a history from a patient, similar questions should be addressed to relatives and witnesses. The following features in the history are particularly important:
  - detail of events surrounding the loss of consciousness
  - any recent medical or psychological problems
  - drug history (both illicit and prescribed)
  - history of alcohol intake
  - allergies
  - any previous episodes of loss of consciousness
  - any past medical history of significant cardiorespiratory symptoms, neurological or metabolic disorders, especially diabetes
  - any recent medical symptoms such as of headache, fever or depression.
- A review of systems can often be obtained in surprising detail from relatives or friends.

## Examination

The priorities in examination of the unconscious patient are to ensure that there is an adequate Airway, the patient is Breathing and that there is an adequate Circulation.

Urgent resuscitative measures should be enacted to ensure this and will usually include:

- nursing the patient in the recovery position
- maintenance of the airway often with endotracheal intubation
- administration of oxygen
- if trauma is possible and could have produced spinal injury, immobilize the cervical spine manually, with collars and splinting
- intravenous access and fluids.

Measures should be undertaken to ensure that the patient sustains no further damage as a consequence of their coma.

**The possibility of hypoglycaemia should always be entertained in the unconscious patient**, a rapid bedside blood glucose test performed and intravenous glucose administered if hypoglycaemia is present or if there is uncertainty.

Once the need for resuscitation has been addressed the examination should establish the depth of the coma, its likely aetiology and possible consequences.

**Continual observation is essential to ensure that the 'ABC' is maintained.**

The depth of coma is often assessed using the *Glasgow Coma Score*.

The examination should look specifically for:

- hypothermia (measure rectal temperature)
- fever
- MedicAlert® bracelets or necklaces
- scars
- smell of ketones or alcohol
- bruises or evidences of fractures with particular attention to the head and neck
- neck stiffness and Kernig's sign (but not if trauma possible)
- the presence of rashes compatible with infection (e.g. meningococcal septicaemia) or drug consumption, or injection marks
- pupil size, symmetry and response to light.

The ears and mouth should be examined.

Injuries to the tongue or evidence of urinary incontinence may suggest recent epileptic fit.

Full cardiovascular, respiratory, abdominal and musculoskeletal examinations should be undertaken: there may be evidence of systemic illness (e.g. chronic liver disease) or the consequences of being unconscious (e.g. aspiration pneumonia).

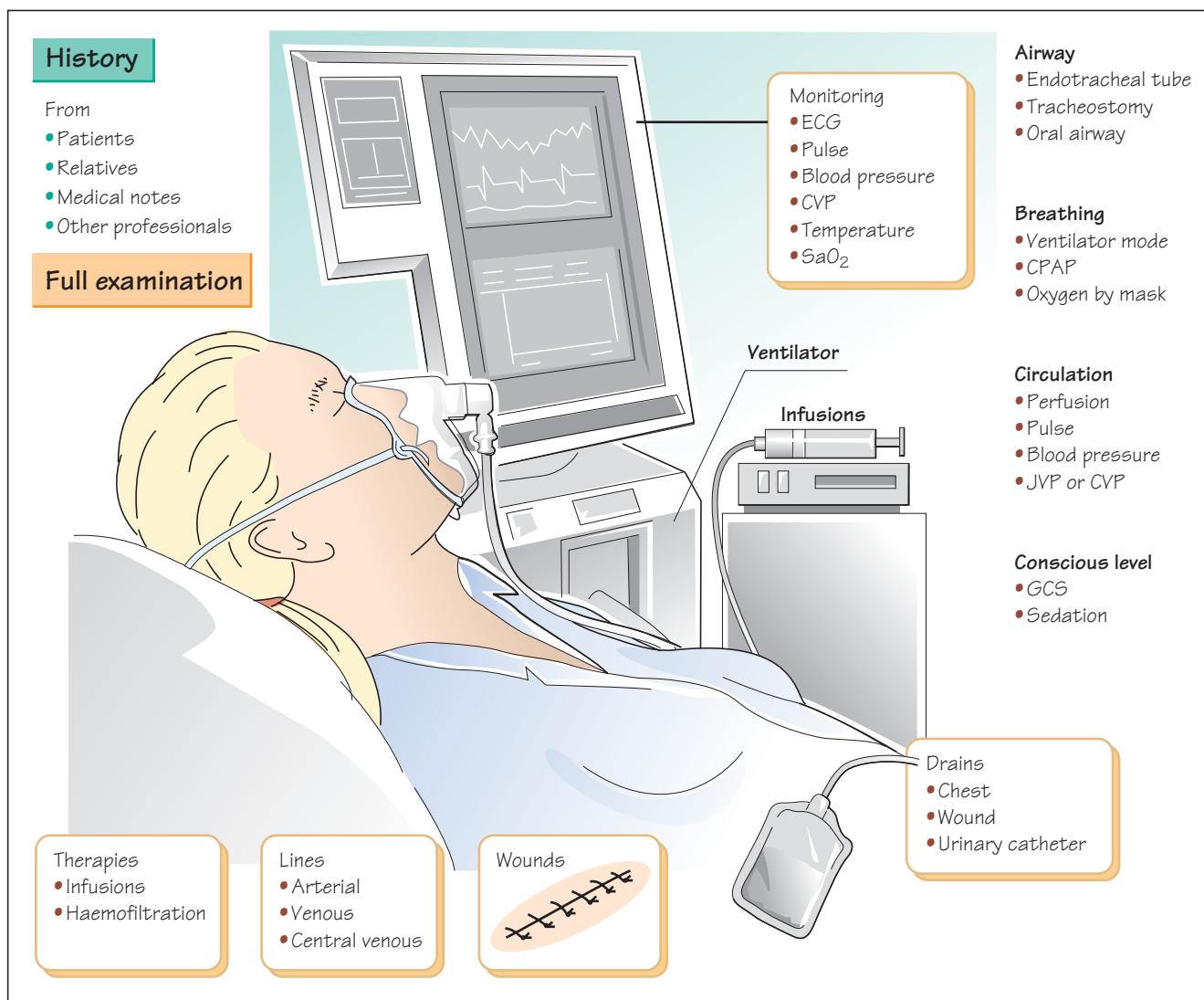
As for history taking, it is sometimes wrongly assumed that the neurological examination can only be very limited in the unconscious patient, but a detailed examination is possible and may yield vital diagnostic information and must be performed.

- The patient should be inspected for abnormalities of posture, abnormal movements, such as myoclonus and muscle wasting.
- The tone of limbs should be examined, a grasp reflex sought and limb power assessed if necessary in response to painful stimuli.
- The tendon reflexes should be assessed, clonus sought and the plantar responses examined looking especially for asymmetry.
- The response to sensory stimuli, often pain, should be assessed in the limbs and trigeminal nerve distribution.
- As detailed in the figure opposite, each cranial nerve should be examined. Particular attention should be paid to eye movements or deviation, pupil size, symmetry and response to light. A careful fundoscopic examination is necessary and the presence of papilloedema should be looked for. The presence of gag and corneal reflexes should be sought and if absent ensure that the airway and eyes are protected.

## Evidence

In comatose survivors of cardiac arrest the following signs at 24 hours were associated with death or poor neurological outcome: absent corneal reflexes (LR, 12.9), absent pupillary response (LR, 10.2), absent withdrawal response to pain (LR, 4.7) and no motor response (LR, 4.9).

Booth CM, Boone RH, Tomlinson G & Detsky AS. Is this patient dead, vegetative, or severely neurologically impaired? Assessing outcome for comatose survivors of cardiac arrest. *JAMA* 2004; **291**: 870–87.



It is important to take a history and carefully examine all patients, and those in the ICU are no exception. Whilst sophisticated monitoring, frequent blood tests and X-rays will reveal many important abnormalities, they will fail to demonstrate many vital clinical findings. Clinical signs such as the purpuric rash of meningococcal septicaemia, a new heart murmur, a drain bottle filling up with blood, a pleural rub, ileus, or hemiplegic weakness are just some examples that may only be detected by clinical examination and could critically alter diagnosis and management.

Similarly, despite the unconsciousness of many ICU patients it is still vital to obtain a full history from relatives, other witnesses and medical and nursing staff. Not only is this required to achieve precise diagnoses but details of previous illnesses, current medication, allergies and social history are all likely to be central to successful patient management.

### Examination

- **Airway:** How is the patient's airway maintained (nasal/oral endotracheal tube, tracheostomy, oral airway)?
- **Breathing:** How is the patient ventilated (self-ventilating, CPAP, machine ventilation [what modality])?
- **Circulation:** Is the patient well perfused? What are the patient's pulse, BP and CVP/JVP?
- What is the level of responsiveness? What sedation/analgesia has been administered? Document with the Glasgow Coma Score. What are the pupil size, symmetry and responses?
- **Despite apparent deep coma, it is good practice always to treat the patient as if they can hear and understand everything that you say and experience all that you do.**
- What monitoring is in place? What is the blood glucose? What is the urine output?

- What treatments are being administered through which routes?
- How long have central lines, chest drains, etc., been in place? Are they still functioning?
- What is the patient's temperature, skin colour (jaundice, anaemia, cyanosis)?
- Examine the skin from head to toe for rashes, pressure areas and wounds.
- Full examination of cardiovascular, respiratory, abdominal and CNS systems should be undertaken. This may require additional sedation to ensure the patient's comfort and temporary pausing of the ventilator to aid auscultation.
- Integrate the clinical observations with the monitoring. Are they concordant?

### Evidence

Scoring systems based upon physiological abnormalities have been developed in attempts to predict hospital mortality of ICU patients and as research tools. The most widely used are the Acute Physiology and Chronic Health Evaluation (APACHE) Score which uses vital observations, arterial blood gases, biochemistry, haematology, urine output, Glasgow Coma Score, age, chronic health conditions, length of pre-ICU in hospital stay and admission diagnosis.

Zimmerman JE, Kramer AA, McNair DS & Malila FM. Acute Physiology and Chronic Health Evaluation (APACHE) IV: hospital mortality assessment for today's critically ill patients. *Crit Care Med* 2006; **34**: 1297–310.

**History**

**Pain**

- When?
- Where?
- Increased by movements?

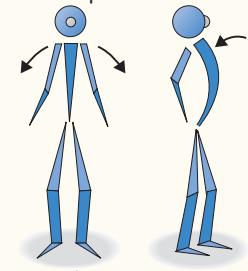
**Other symptoms**

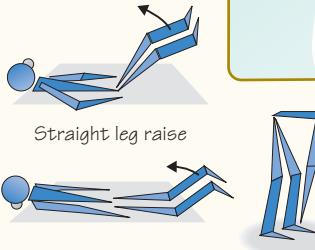
- Disturbance of bowel or bladder function
- Sciatica

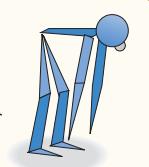
**Systemic symptoms**

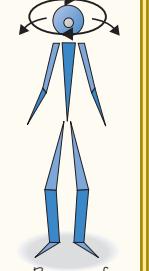
- Fever
- Weight loss

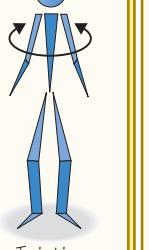


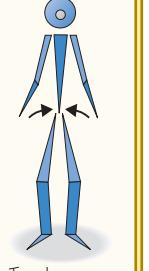
**Lumbar spine**  
  
Lateral flexion      Extension

  
Straight leg raise      Femoral stretch

  
Touch toes

**Cervical spine**  
  
Range of movements

**Thoracic spine**  
  
Twisting  
Chest expansion

**Sacroiliac joints**  
  
Tenderness

Back pain is a very common symptom producing considerable morbidity. It may be due to benign muscle strains, significant structural problems, such as disc prolapse or vertebral collapse, or, more unusually, a presentation of malignant disease, such as myeloma or bony metastases, or of intra-abdominal pathologies, such as aortic aneurysm or pancreatitis.

### History

- When did the pain start? Did it start suddenly or gradually? What was the patient doing?
- Where is the pain? Is the pain exacerbated by movement?
- Is there pain at night? (When low back pain is due to infection or cancer the pain is usually not relieved when the patient lies down.)
- Are there any associated symptoms (e.g. symptoms of cord compression, disturbance of bowel or bladder function, weakness, sensory disturbance)?
- Are there any symptoms of sciatica? Do these symptoms increase with straining or coughing? (This suggests disc herniation.)
- Are there systemic symptoms (e.g. fever, weight loss, rigors)?
- Are there any other symptoms (e.g. morning stiffness)?

### Past medical history

- Any history of back problems or operations?
- Any history of any known malignant disease, arthritis, TB or endocarditis?

### Drugs

Is the patient receiving analgesics, NSAIDs or corticosteroids?

### Family and social history

- What is the patient's occupation?
- Does the patient do manual work?
- Has the patient taken time off work?

### Examination

- Is the patient in pain or comfortable?
- Any fever?
- Is there evidence of systemic disease (e.g. anaemia, weight loss, jaundice, lymphadenopathy)?
- Examine the back and spine fully. Inspect the spine carefully looking for any skin changes, deformity, abnormal kyphosis, scoliosis,

lordosis. Look for smooth curves of the spinous processes, for any ‘steps’ and then palpate looking for tenderness and any associated muscle spasm.

- *Cervical spine*: examine active and then passive movements of the neck. Examine flexion, extension, lateral flexion and rotation. Look for range of movement, pain locally or in the upper limb. Examine again with gentle pressure on vertex of skull.

- *Thoracic spine*: examine twisting whilst sitting with arms folded. Examine for chest expansion: the patient should manage >5cm.

- *Lumbar spine*: test the range of movement. Ask the patient to touch his/her toes, keeping his/her knees straight. Assess extension, lateral flexion and rotation.

- *Sacro-iliac joints*: palpate the joints. ‘Spring’ the joints by firm downward pressure on joint whilst patient prone. With the patient supine, flex one hip whilst maintaining the other extended.

- *Nerve stretch tests*: Examine straight leg raising ± dorsiflexion of the foot. Carry out a femoral stretch test: with patient in prone position, flex the knee and then extend leg at the hip.

- Perform a full examination of cardiovascular, respiratory, abdominal and neurological systems.

- Examine particularly for abdominal masses, aortic aneurysm and sites of primary tumours such as breast, testis, prostate or lung.

- Examine for any signs of neurological deficit.

- Look particularly for any other joint abnormalities.

## **Worrying ('red flag') features of back pain**

### **1 Cancer as a cause of back pain:**

- history of cancer
- unexplained weight loss
- age >50 years or <20 years

- failure to improve with therapy
- pain persists for more than 4 weeks
- night pain or pain at rest
- thoracic spine pain.

### **2 Infection as a cause of back pain:**

- fever
- history of intravenous drug abuse
- recent bacterial infection
- history of TB
- immunocompromised.

### **3 Cauda equina syndrome as a cause of back pain (due to large central disc protrusion or other cause of lumbar canal stenosis):**

- urinary incontinence or retention
- saddle anaesthesia
- anal sphincter tone decreased or faecal incontinence
- bilateral leg weakness or numbness
- progressive neurological deficit.

### **4 Significant disc herniation as a cause of back pain:**

- major muscle weakness (strength three-fifths or less)
- foot drop.

### **5 Abdominal aortic aneurysm as a cause of back pain:**

- abdominal pulsating mass
- atherosclerotic vascular disease
- pain at rest or nocturnal pain
- age >55 years.

### **6 Inflammatory spinal disease as a cause of back pain:**

- early morning stiffness
- restricted spinal movements
- peripheral joint involvement
- iritis, skin rash (e.g. psoriasis), colitis, urethritis.

**Is BP truly elevated?**

- Is there evidence of malignant/accelerated hypertension?
- Is there evidence for a secondary cause?

**Factors affecting BP accuracy**

- Pain
- Incorrect size of cuff
- Anxiety
- 'White coat hypertension'

**Examine for:**

- Radial-femoral delay
- Cushingoid
- Abdominal bruits
- Renal size
- LVH/heart failure
- Urine protein/haematuria/casts
- Neurological deficits

**Fundoscopy**

**Grades**

- Silver wiring, tortuous vessels
- A-V nipping
- Flame haemorrhages and cotton wool spots
- Papilloedema

**Causes**

- Essential
- Renovascular disease e.g. renal artery stenosis
- Renal disease e.g. glomerulonephritis, reflux nephropathy

**Rarely**

- Cushing's disease
- Conn's disease
- Phaeochromocytoma
- Coarctation of the aorta

**Consequences**

- Stroke —
- Hypertensive retinopathy
- Heart failure (LVH) —
- Renal failure
- Proteinuria —

Hypertension is very common, usually clinically silent, potentially dangerous but treatable. Therefore, measurement of BP should be a routine procedure. The definition of BP above which hypertension is said to exist is difficult since it is distributed in the population as a normal distribution and increases with age. In a young adult BP of  $>140/90\text{ mmHg}$  can be considered as hypertension and treatment is likely to be beneficial. In the presence of diabetes or renal disease, achieving levels of BP much lower than this has been shown to be of benefit. In an elderly person BP of  $\geq 140/90\text{ mmHg}$  is common and may only warrant treatment in the presence of other cardiovascular risk factors. Some patients have elevated blood pressures in clinic ('white coat hypertension', up to 20%) and ambulatory 24-hour

measurements and/or home measurements may be useful to define whether hypertension is really present.

### History

Hypertension is usually asymptomatic. Very rarely it can be accompanied by headaches, malaise or other symptoms of the causative diagnosis.

Find out how long a patient has been hypertensive (e.g. measurements at GP's, during pregnancy, in hospital notes, at medicals).

The consequences of hypertension are heart failure, renal failure, visual symptoms, stroke and ischaemic heart disease.

- Rare causes of hypertension with specific symptoms are:
- Cushing's disease (weight gain, hirsutism, easy bruising).
  - Phaeochromocytoma (paroxysmal symptoms: palpitations, collapse and flushing).
  - Renal disease (microscopic haematuria/proteinuria and symptoms of renal failure).
  - Pre-eclampsia.

### Past medical history

- History of stroke, TIA, heart disease, renal disease, obstructive sleep apnoea, pre-eclampsia?
- Other vascular risk factors?

### Family history

There are very rare inherited specific causes of hypertension (e.g. Liddle's syndrome) but there is also a general genetic component to the development of hypertension.

### Drugs

- What is the patient's current and/or previous medication? Does the patient have any intolerance to drugs?
- Ask about the patient's alcohol consumption.

### Social history

- Ask about non-pharmacological methods (e.g. exercise, weight reduction, alcohol reduction, reduced sodium diet)?
- Ask about smoking and diet.

### Direct questioning

- Headaches?
- Visual symptoms?

### Examination

#### Blood pressure measurement using the auscultatory method

- Seat subject in calm, quiet environment with bared arm resting on support so that mid-point of upper arm is at level of heart.
- Ensure cuff is sufficiently large: the bladder should encircle > 80% of the upper arm.
- Place cuff so that mid-line of bladder is over the arterial pulsation of the brachial artery, with the lower edge of the cuff 2cm above antecubital fossa where the head of the stethoscope is to be placed.
- Inflate the cuff and identify level of pressure at which brachial pulse disappears by palpation.

- Auscultate over the brachial artery and inflate cuff to 30mmHg above the level previously determined by palpation.
- Deflate the bladder slowly whilst listening for the appearance (phase I) of the Korotkoff sounds, their muffling (phase IV) and their disappearance (phase V).
- Repeat several times, recording the systolic (phase I) and diastolic (phase V) pressures.
- Look for postural differences in BP.

(For the advantages and disadvantages of other methods of BP measurement see Pickering TG, Hall JE, Appel LJ *et al.* Recommendations for blood pressure measurement in humans and experimental animals. *Hypertension* 2005; **45**: 142–61.)

### Further examination

Also examine for:

- pulse
- left ventricular hypertrophy (thrusting apex beat, displaced if secondary dilatation)
- fundoscopy
- radial femoral delay (coarctation)
- Cushingoid appearance
- abdominal bruits
- neurological deficits (TIA, CVA)
- any signs of heart failure
- check the urine dipstick for blood and protein.

### First-line investigations

First-line investigations are ECG, creatinine and potassium. If in doubt about hypertension undertake 24-hour ambulatory measurement.

Assess the overall cardiovascular risk (age, gender, smoking history, renal disease, cholesterol and any known vascular disease) as this may influence the level of BP at which treatment of BP is beneficial.

### Evidence

#### Abdominal bruits

In some studies, abdominal bruits are audible in up to 30% of healthy patients, have a large number of non-reno-vascular causes and are audible in up to 80% of patients with angiographically proven renal artery stenosis. They thus have a modest sensitivity and specificity for renal artery stenosis.

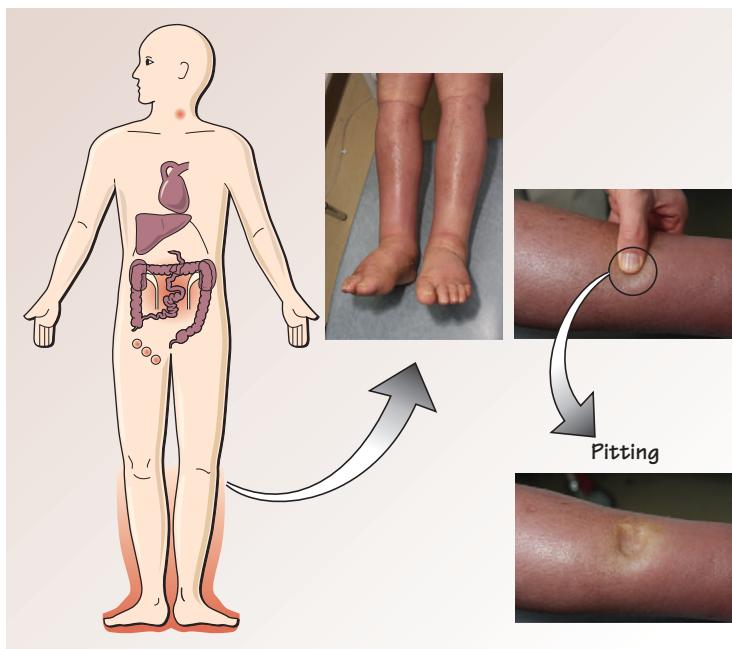
Turnbull JM. Is listening for abdominal bruits useful in the evaluation of hypertension? *JAMA* 1995; **274**: 1299–301.

**History**

- Swelling?
- Redness?
- Pain?

**Symptoms of:**

- Heart disease
- Liver disease
- Kidney disease
- Malabsorption

**Examination****Is JVP elevated?****Signs of cardiac failure?**

- Tachycardia
- Gallop rhythm
- Crackles
- Pleural effusion
- Enlarged liver
- Ascites

**Any lymphadenopathy?****Area of swelling?**

- Skin changes
- Ulceration
- Erythema

Swollen legs can be a manifestation of serious medical conditions including heart failure, DVTs and nephrotic syndrome. The symptoms in addition to the swelling may include pain.

**History**

- When was the leg swelling first noticed? Has it affected one or both legs?
- Is it painful? Has there been redness, exudates?
- Where does the swelling extend to? Is there also sacral oedema, ascites?
- Are there any associated symptoms (e.g. fever)?
- Are there any symptoms suggesting cardiac failure (e.g. chest pain, breathlessness or palpitations)?
- Are there any symptoms of liver disease (e.g. jaundice)?
- Are there any symptoms of renal disease (e.g. frothy urine [suggesting proteinuria])?
- Are there symptoms of malabsorption (e.g. weight loss, steatorrhoea)?
- Any prolonged immobility?

**Past medical history**

- Any previous leg swelling?
- Any previous DVTs, pulmonary emboli or varicose vein operations?
- Any history of cardiac, liver or renal disease?

**Drugs**

- Is the patient taking any diuretics or has the patient changed their medication recently?
- Is the patient taking any anticoagulants?

**Family history**

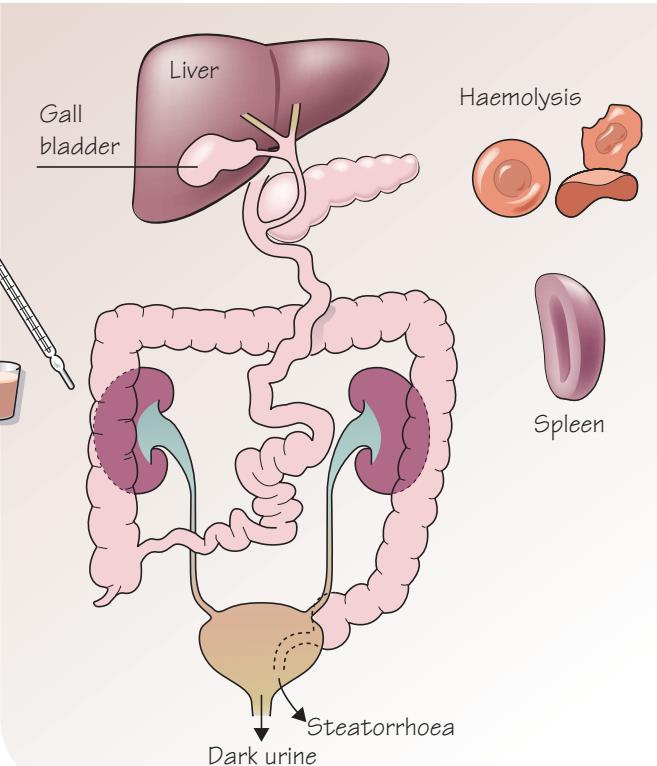
Any family history of oedema, thrombophilia (e.g. protein C, protein S deficiency or factor V Leiden)?

**Examination**

- Any oedema? Measure the legs. Is there pitting? How far up the leg does the swelling go?
  - Is there redness, warmth, calf tenderness or dilated superficial veins?
  - Any lymphadenopathy?
  - Is the JVP elevated?
  - Are there signs of cardiac failure (tachycardia, gallop rhythm, crackles, pleural effusion, enlarged liver, ascites)?
  - Are there signs of liver disease or kidney disease?
- Any signs of abdominal or pelvic masses or malignancy?
- Any proteinuria?

**History**

- Jaundice
- Dark urine
- Pale stools
  
- Pain
- Itching
  
- Weight loss
- Fever
  
- Alcohol
- Drugs
- Family history



**Examination**

- Jaundiced?
- Signs of chronic liver disease?
- Signs of portal hypertension?
- Tender
- Liver
- Gallbladder
- Murphy's sign
- Masses



Jaundice

**Courvoisier's Law**

'In the presence of jaundice a palpable gallbladder is unlikely to be due to chronic cholecystitis'

Jaundice may be a presenting symptom in many important conditions including advanced malignancy, gallstones, cirrhosis, hepatitis, haemolysis and carcinoma of the pancreas. The patient or others may notice the yellow coloration of the sclerae and skin, or features of associated conditions, such as malignancy or chronic liver disease that may result in presentation.

### History

- When was the jaundice first noticed and by whom? What does the patient mean by jaundice? (Sometimes people think that jaundice means generally ill, off-colour or depressed.)
- Are there any other symptoms (abdominal pain, fever, weight loss, anorexia, steatorrhoea, dark urine, pruritus)?
- Any travel? Consider malaria or infectious hepatitis.
- Any features suggesting malignancy (e.g. weight loss, back pain), chronic liver disease (e.g. abdominal swelling due to ascites) or infective hepatitis?

### Past medical history

Any history of:

- previous jaundice?
- known viral hepatitis?
- chronic liver disease or malignancy?
- blood transfusions?

- anaesthetics (especially halothane)?
- gallstones or previous cholecystectomy?

### Drugs

Consider all medication, prescribed, illicit and alternative, as a potential cause of jaundice.

### Alcohol

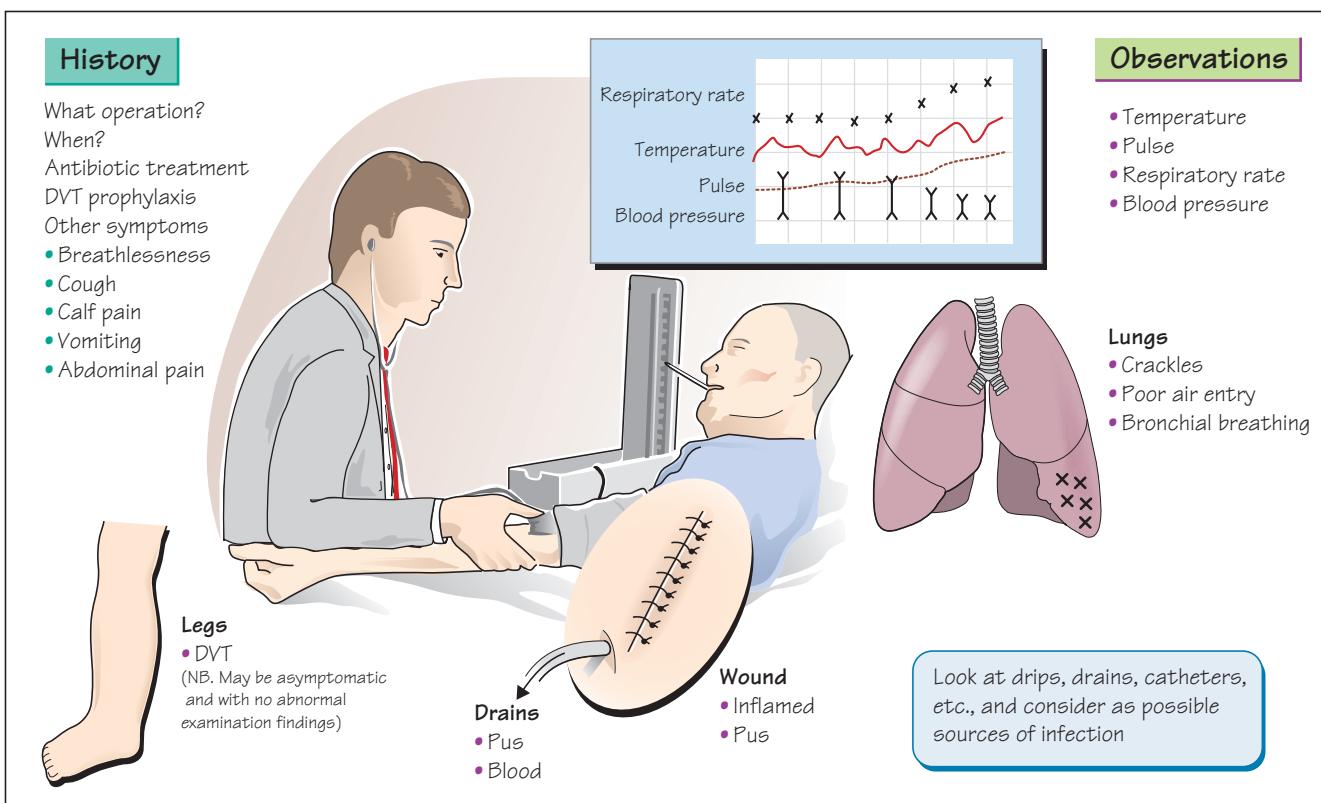
What is the patient's consumption of alcohol? Is the patient dependent on alcohol?

### Family history

Consider inherited causes of jaundice (e.g. haemolytic anaemias, Gilbert's syndrome).

### Examination

- Is the patient jaundiced? Look at sclerae.
- Are there signs of anaemia?
- Are there signs of weight loss, chronic liver disease?
- Any excoriations (suggesting pruritus)?
- Is there hepatomegaly, splenomegaly or both? Does the patient have a palpable gallbladder?
- Are there any abdominal masses or tenderness?
- Any features of portal hypertension?



Fever is a common finding in the postoperative period and can point towards very important complications. Common causes include pulmonary atelectasis, chest infections, wound infections, pulmonary emboli, DVT and abscesses.

### History

- When was the operation and what was the operation? Look at the operation and anaesthetic notes.
- Is the patient well or unwell?
- Does the patient have any symptoms (e.g. fever, rigors, cough, chest pain, haemoptysis, shortness of breath, calf pain, wound pain, wound discharge)?
- Are there any features suggesting an anastomotic breakdown (e.g. pain, ileus)?
- Is there a drain, drip, central line, etc., *in situ*?
- Has or is the patient receiving a blood transfusion?

### Drugs

- Has the patient received any prophylactic or other antibiotics?

- Has the patient received any anticoagulation medication or TED stockings?
- Is the patient immunosuppressed?

### Allergies

Does the patient have any allergies to medications?

### Examination

- What is the patient's temperature? Look at the fever chart.
- Is there tachycardia, tachypnoea, cyanosis, respiratory distress?
- Examine the operative area carefully. Undress the wound. Is it inflamed, excessively tender or exuding pus?
- What is coming out of any drains?
- Examine drip sites for inflammation.
- Is there a subphrenic or pelvic abscess? Consider rectal examination.
- Are there any findings on examination of the chest to suggest atelectasis or consolidation?
- Are there any signs of DVT or pulmonary emboli?
- Any urinary abnormalities suggesting UTI?

**History**

- Headache
- Photophobia
- Drowsy
- Neck stiffness

Kernig's sign positive



On!

?Immunosuppression  
?Complement deficiencies  
?CSF foreign bodies/  
shunts/leaks



**Examination**

- Fever
- Papilloedema
- Evidence of sinusitis or otitis media
- Stiff neck
- Meningococcal purpuric rash

Glasgow Scale

Glasgow	← Drowsy
Coma	← Confused
Scale	← Unconscious

**Differential diagnoses**

Bacterial	Meningitis
Viral	
Tuberculosis	
Cerebral abscess (? focal signs)	
Encephalitis (usually no meningism)	
Other bacterial infections, e.g. pneumonia	
Malignant meningitis	

Bacterial meningitis may present with a combination of headache, neck stiffness, photophobia, confusion, drowsiness and fever. Viral meningitis, subarachnoid haemorrhage, cerebral abscess and encephalitis are important differential diagnoses. Give antibiotics urgently and admit the patient to hospital if there are features of meningitis. Consider the possibility of meningitis in close contacts.

### History

- Does the patient have a headache? If so, when did the headache start? What is it like? Did it begin suddenly ('thunderclap') or gradually?
- Are there associated symptoms: photophobia, neck stiffness, nausea, vomiting, fever, drowsiness or confusion?
- Has the patient had any previous headaches?
- Are there any neurological symptoms: diplopia, focal weakness, sensory symptoms?
- Other systemic symptoms: nausea, vomiting, fever, rigors?

### Past medical history

- Any history of previous meningitis, CSF leaks or shunts, recent severe head trauma, recent ear infection or sinusitis?
- Is the patient immunosuppressed? Received vaccinations ?

### Family and social history

- Any family history of meningitis, contact with patients with suspected meningitis or recent foreign travel?

### Drugs

- Has the patient had recent antibiotics or any antibiotic allergies?

### Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell? Alert, drowsy or unconscious?
- What is the patient's temperature?
- Check the pulse, BP and respiratory rate.
- Any rash, especially of meningococcal septicaemia, neck stiffness, photophobia or Kernig's sign?
- Are there any abnormalities on neurological examination?
- Fundi: normal or papilloedema?
- Examine the throat, nose, ears and mouth.
- Perform a full general examination looking particularly for other septic foci.

### Evidence

'The absence of all three of fever, neck stiffness and altered mental status virtually eliminates a diagnosis of meningitis.'

Attia J, Hatala R, Cook DJ & Wong JG. The rational clinical examination. Does this adult patient have acute meningitis? *JAMA* 1999; **282**: 175–81.

**History**

- Fatigue
- Breathlessness
- Angina
- Malaise

Diet  
Malabsorption  
Blood loss  
- Gut  
- Gynaecological  
Chronic illness  
- Malignancy  
- Renal failure  
- Other

Family history of anaemia

**Examination**

Pallor, jaundice

Hepatosplenomegaly

Lymphadenopathy

Bruising

Petechiae

Peripheral neuropathy

Rectal examination  
FOB positive?

**Microcytosis**

Iron deficiency  
Thalassaemia

**Normocytosis**

Chronic disease  
Renal failure  
Blood loss  
Malignancy

**Macrocytosis**

B<sub>12</sub> deficiency  
Folate deficiency  
Liver disease  
Myxoedema

Anaemia may present with a variety of subtle symptoms. These can include fatigue, reduced exercise tolerance, shortness of breath and worsening angina. However, anaemia is often discovered incidentally when a blood count is undertaken routinely or during the course of investigation of another illness. The underlying cause of the anaemia, such as GI haemorrhage, may also bring the patient to medical attention. Anaemia is not a diagnosis and requires an explanation.

### History

- What are the patient's symptoms? Fatigue, malaise, breathlessness, chest pain, none?
- Have these developed suddenly or gradually?
- Are there any clues to the cause of anaemia?
- Question dietary adequacy and iron content. Are there any symptoms consistent with malabsorption? Are there any features of GI blood loss (dark stools, blood per rectum, vomiting 'coffee grounds')?
- If the patient is female, is there excessive menstrual blood loss? Ask about frequency and duration of periods and the use of tampons and pads.
- Are there any other sources of blood loss?

### Past medical history and functional enquiry

- Are there any previous suggestions of chronic renal disease?
- Any history of any chronic illness (e.g. rheumatoid arthritis or symptoms suggesting malignancy)?
- Are there any features of bone marrow failure (bruising, bleeding, unusual or recurrent infections)?
- Are there any features of vitamin deficiency such as peripheral neuropathy (with vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency/subacute combined degeneration of the cord [SACDOC])?
- Any reasons to suspect haemolysis (e.g. jaundice, known leaking prosthetic valve)?
- Any history of previous anaemia or investigations such as GI endoscopy?
- Any dysphagia (due to an oesophageal lesion producing anaemia or a web as a consequence of iron deficiency anaemia)?

### Family history

Any family history of anaemia? Consider particularly sickle cell disease, thalassaemia and inherited haemolytic anaemias.

## Travel

Ask about travel and consider the possibility of parasitic infections (e.g. hookworm and malaria).

## Drugs

Certain drugs are associated with blood loss (e.g. NSAIDs producing gastric erosions or bone marrow suppression due to cytotoxic agents).

## Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell? Is the patient breathless or shocked due to acute blood loss?
- Are there any signs of anaemia? Look for conjunctival, tongue, nailbed and palmar pallor. (NB. Significant anaemia may be present without obvious clinical signs.)
- Is there koilonychia ('spoon'-shaped nails) or angular cheilitis as seen in long-standing iron deficiency?
- Any sign of jaundice (due to haemolytic anaemia)?
- Any circumoral freckling (Osler–Weber–Rendu syndrome)?
- Any telangiectasia (hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia)?
- Are there any signs of deficient or defective platelets (e.g. bruising, petechiae)?
- Any signs of abnormal white cells or features of infection?
- Are there features of malignancy? Any recent weight loss, masses, clubbing or lymphadenopathy?

- Is there hepatomegaly, splenomegaly or abdominal masses?
- Is the rectal examination normal? Any faecal occult blood (FOB)?
- Are there signs of peripheral neuropathy? (This suggests vitamin B<sub>12</sub> or folate deficiency)

## Evidence

Pallor can suggest the presence of anaemia (although its absence does not rule out anaemia). Conjunctival pallor was assessed for its ability to predict the presence of severe anaemia (haemoglobin = 90 g/L). LR calculated for conjunctival pallor present, borderline and absent was: pallor present, LR 4.5 (1.80–10.99); pallor borderline, LR 1.80 (1.18–2.62); pallor absent, LR 0.61 (0.44–0.80).

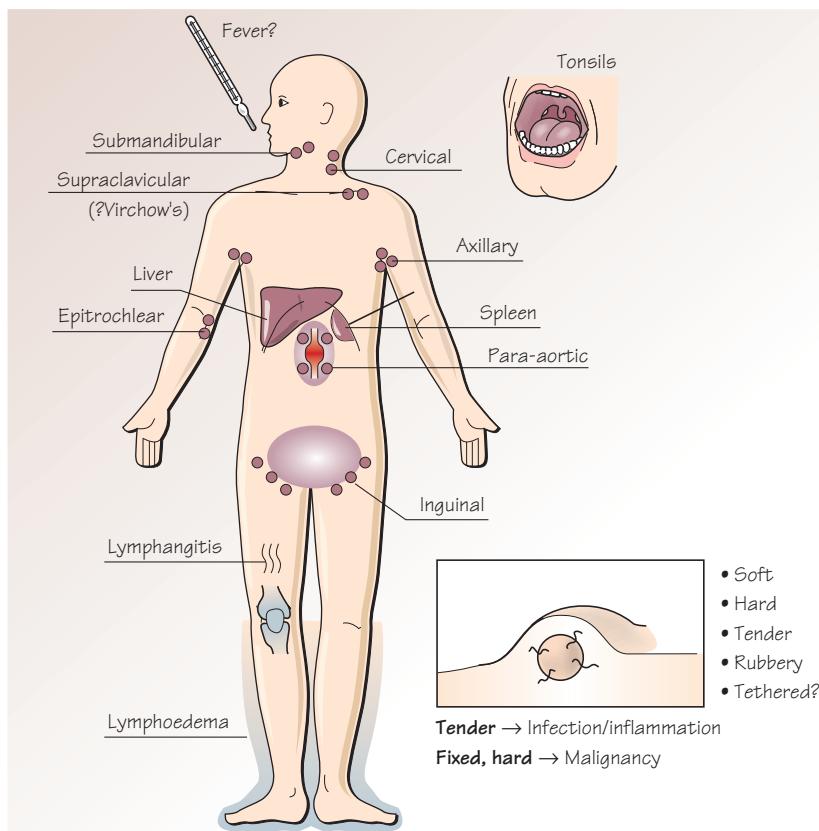
Sheth TN, Choudhry NK, Bowes M & Detsky AS. The relation of conjunctival pallor to the presence of anaemia. *J Gen Intern Med* 1997; **12**: 102–6.

Tongue pallor has been described as the best site for detection of pallor in the detection of anemia.

Kalantri A, Karambelkar M, Joshi R, Kalantri S & Jajoo U. Accuracy and reliability of pallor for detecting anaemia: a hospital-based diagnostic accuracy study. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e8545.

**Examination**

- Examine all areas for enlarged lymph nodes
- Examine for spleen and liver
- Examine area drained by enlarged lymph node
- Ask about systemic symptoms
  - Fevers
  - Night sweats
  - Itch
  - Weight loss
- Could this be
  - Lymphoma?
  - Malignancy?
  - Tuberculosis?



Enlarged lymph nodes are common with self-limiting viral infections but can also be due to serious conditions such as malignancy or TB. It is important to consider pathology in the area drained by any enlarged lymph node.

**History**

- Which glands have been noticed as enlarged and for how long? Are they still increasing in size? Are they painful?
- Have there been any associated symptoms (e.g. weight loss, fevers, night sweats, pruritus, alcohol induced pain, cough, sore throat, rash)? (Weight loss, fevers, night sweats are the 'B' symptoms of lymphoma.)
- Any contact with glandular fever, TB? Any other infectious conditions?

**Examination**

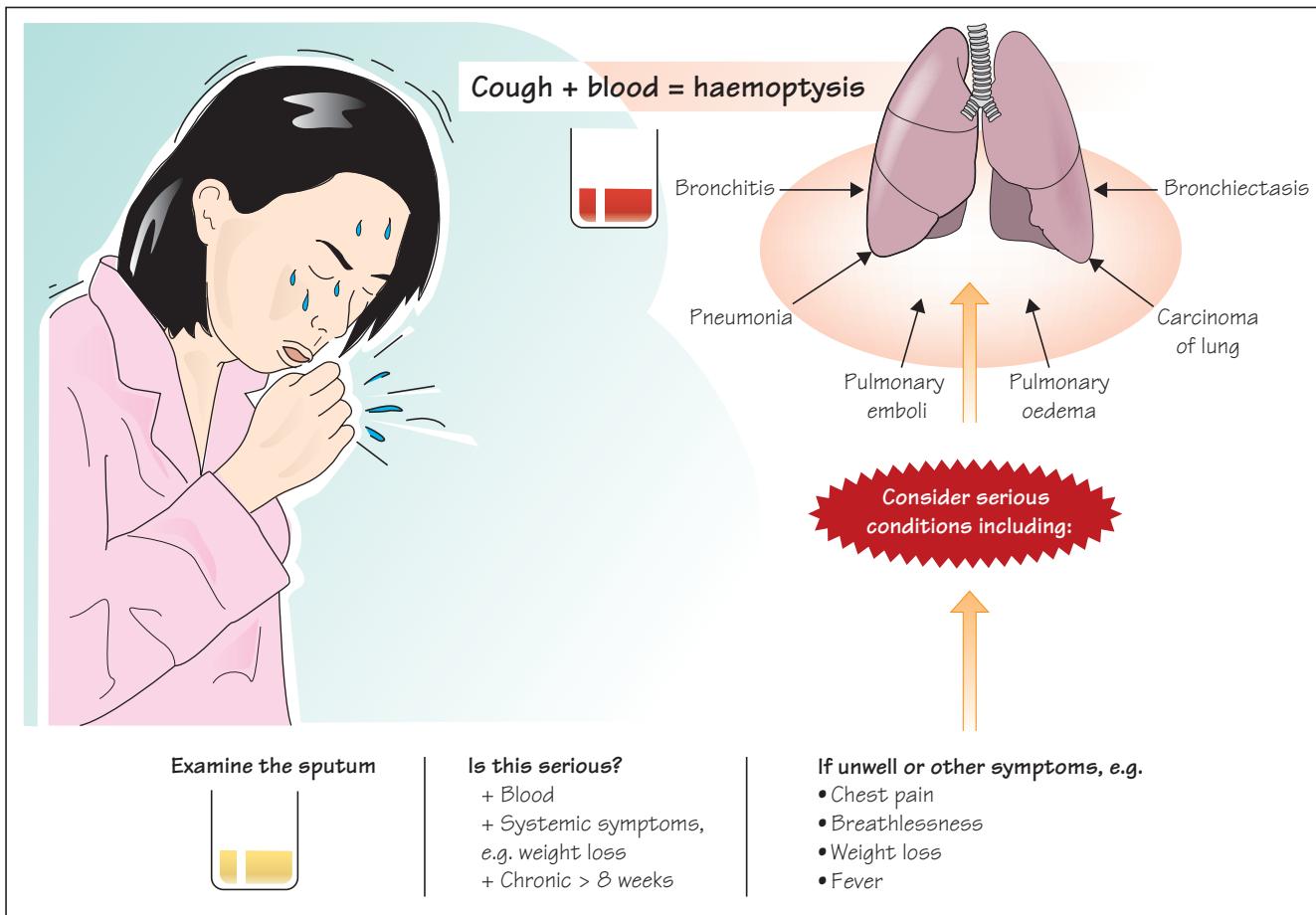
- Is the patient well or unwell? Is the patient febrile?
- Examine the enlarged lymph nodes.
- Examine for lymphadenopathy elsewhere.
- Where are they enlarged? What do they drain? Examine carefully (e.g. very careful examination of breasts for axillary lymph nodes, full

throat examination with laryngoscopy if abnormal cervical node enlargement).

- Are they painful, soft, rubbery, craggy, tethered?
- Is the overlying skin normal?
- Is the drained skin normal? Are there any lesions (e.g. cellulitis, abscess, melanoma)?
- Examine the mouth and throat (tonsils).
- Is spleen enlarged?
- Any lymphoedema?

**Table 49.1** Common causes of lymphadenopathy

Generalized	Local
Lymphoma	Bacterial infection
Glandular fever	Cancer
Other infections (e.g. other viral infections, brucellosis)	TB
SLE	
Drugs	
Sarcoid	



## History

Cough is a very common symptom. It may be caused by mild, self-limiting illnesses, such as the common cold, or can be due to serious respiratory disease, such as carcinoma of the bronchus. It is essential to establish the duration of the cough, whether it is productive of sputum and whether there are symptoms suggestive of serious disease, such as haemoptysis, breathlessness, chest pain or weight loss.

## Examination

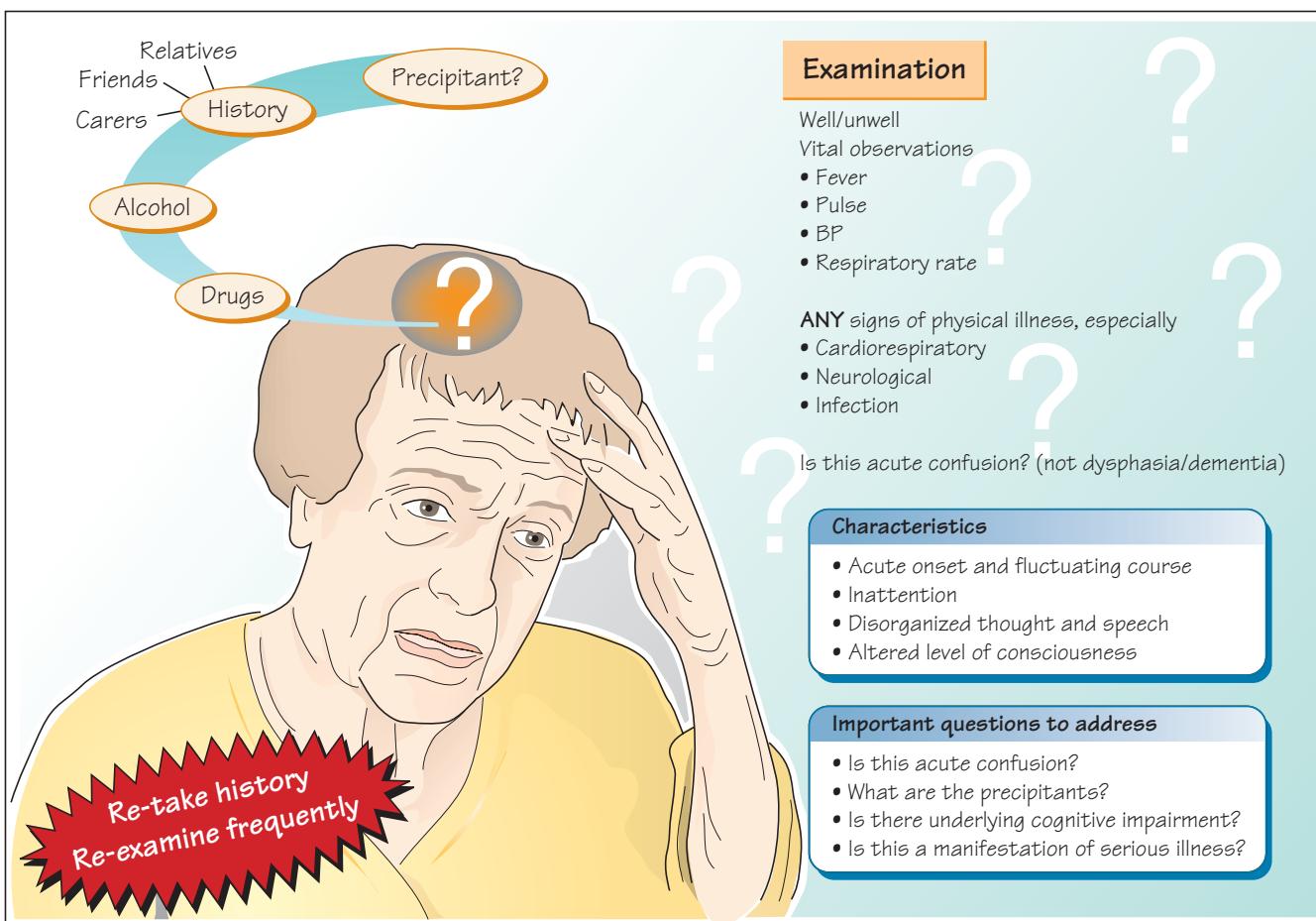
- What is the colour, amount of sputum?
- Any blood (haemoptysis)?
- Is there evidence of serious acute illness?
- Is there fever, tachycardia, tachypnoea, chest pain or breathlessness?
- Is there a history of chronic respiratory disease?
- Are there features of sinusitis (e.g. maxillary toothache, purulent nasal secretions or facial pain)?
- Are there systemic features suggesting serious underlying illness (weight loss, fevers, anorexia)?

Are there any features of pertussis? (posttussive vomiting, inspiratory whoop, paroxysmal cough)

- Is the patient a smoker (current or ex-smoker)?
- Has the patient been exposed to particular infectious agents (e.g. pertussis, allergens or new medications [especially ACE inhibitors])?
- Carry out a full respiratory system examination.
- Are there any signs of consolidation, pulmonary oedema, clubbing or crackles?

## Causes of haemoptysis

- bronchitis
- pneumonia
- PE
- pulmonary oedema
- carcinoma of bronchus
- bronchiectasis
- pulmonary haemorrhage (e.g. Goodpasture's syndrome).



Confusion is a common presentation of illness and is found in over 10% of patients aged over 65 years who are referred to hospital. Confusion is a common symptom of delirium, which is characterized by disturbances of consciousness and attention, perception, thinking, memory, psychomotor behaviour, emotion, and sleep. The onset of delirium is usually over hours to days, and tends to fluctuate. Changes may be particularly apparent at night. There is usually a reduced ability to maintain attention to external stimuli: the patient is easily distractible and it is difficult to engage the patient in conversation. Thought may be disorganized and/or speech incoherent. It may be due to mild illnesses, such as UTI, or be an indicator of life-threatening conditions, such as myocardial infarction. [In contrast, dementia is an acquired and usually irreversible decline in cognitive function. Dementia usually results from an identifiable degenerative brain disease (for example Alzheimer's disease or Huntington's disease). Dementia is usually not associated with a change in level of consciousness, and a diagnosis of dementia requires a chronic impairment].

### History

- When did the patient first become confused? How did it manifest? Discover the onset, any progression and fluctuation.

- Any clear precipitants (e.g. change in medication, recent operation, hospitalization, alcohol withdrawal)?
- Any other symptoms (e.g. urinary frequency, fever, headache, cough, chest pain, other causes of pain)?
- Are there any other features (e.g. unable to walk or urinary incontinence)?
- Are there any features of psychiatric illness (e.g. depression, might there be pseudodementia)?
- What have relatives, friends or other carers noticed?
- Any recent falls, head injuries? (Consider subdural haematoma.)

### Past medical history

- Any previous episodes of confusion?
- Any significant physical or psychiatric illnesses?

### Drugs

- Gather a full drug history.
- Are there any recent changes in medication?

### Alcohol

- Does the patient have a problem with alcohol dependence or withdrawal?

## Family and social history

Establish the usual domestic arrangements, if there are any changes and the patient's functional abilities.

## Functional enquiry

A full functional enquiry is vital and may reveal symptoms of an underlying physical condition, such as chest infection or subdural haematoma.

## Examination

- Is the patient physically well or unwell?
- Are there any systemic features of illness (e.g. tachycardia, dehydration, fever, tachypnoea)?
- Could there be hypoglycaemia or hypoxia?
- Perform a full clinical examination.
- Any cardiorespiratory disturbance (e.g. with cyanosis, respiratory distress or signs of cardiac failure)?
- Look carefully for any focal neurological signs.
- Examine the urine for signs of infection.
- Are they confused (rather than, for example, dysphasic)?
- Document with the Mini Mental Status Examination (see Chapter 117) and the Confusion assessment method section (below).
- If there are no clues in the history or examination pointing towards the cause of the confusion, investigations, such as ECG, arterial blood gases, chest X-ray, urine microscopy, dipstick and blood cultures are likely to be required.

## The confusion assessment method for the diagnosis of delirium

There are a large number of bedside instruments designed for the diagnosis of delirium of which the Confusion Assessment Method (CAM) has the best evidence for its performance (Wong CL et al. Does this patient have delirium? *JAMA* 2010; **304**: 779–86).

Key diagnostic features of the acute confusional state are:

- 1 Acute onset and fluctuating course.
- 2 Inattention.
- 3 Disorganized thinking – usually manifests as incoherent or disorganized speech.
- 4 Altered level of consciousness – ranges from vigilance (delirium tremens) to lethargy and coma.

## Scoring the confusion assessment method

Consider the diagnosis of delirium if features 1 and 2 AND either feature 3 or 4 are present. This requires extra consideration in cases with suspected concurrent dementia or with prominent psychotic features.

**1 Acute onset?** Is there evidence of an acute change in mental status from the patient's baseline?

**2 Inattention:**

**A.** Did the patient have difficulty focusing attention? (e.g. easily distractible or having difficulty keeping track of what was being said):

- (a) Not present at any time during interview.
- (b) Present at some time during interview but in mild form.
- (c) Present at some time during interview in marked form.
- (d) Uncertain.

**B.** If present or abnormal, did this behaviour fluctuate during the interview (i.e. tend to come and go or increase and decrease in severity):

- (a) Yes.
- (b) No.
- (c) Uncertain.
- (d) Not applicable.

**C.** If present or abnormal, describe this behaviour.

**3 Disorganized thinking.** Was the patient's thinking disorganized or incoherent? (e.g. rambling or irrelevant conversation, unclear or illogical flow of ideas, or unpredictable switching from subject to subject).

**4 Altered level of consciousness.** Overall, how would you rate the patient's level of consciousness:

- (a) Alert (normal).
- (b) Vigilant (hyperalert, overly sensitive to environmental stimuli, startled very easily).
- (c) Lethargic (drowsy, easily aroused).
- (d) Stupor (difficult to arouse).
- (e) Coma (unrousable).
- (f) Uncertain.

**5 Disorientation.** Was the patient disoriented at any time during the interview? (e.g. thinking that he or she was somewhere else, using the wrong bed or misjudging the time of day).

**6 Memory impairment.** Did the patient demonstrate any memory problems during the interview, such as an inability to remember events in the hospital or difficulty remembering instructions?

**7 Perceptual disturbances.** Did the patient have any evidence of perceptual disturbances (e.g. hallucinations, illusions or misinterpretations)?

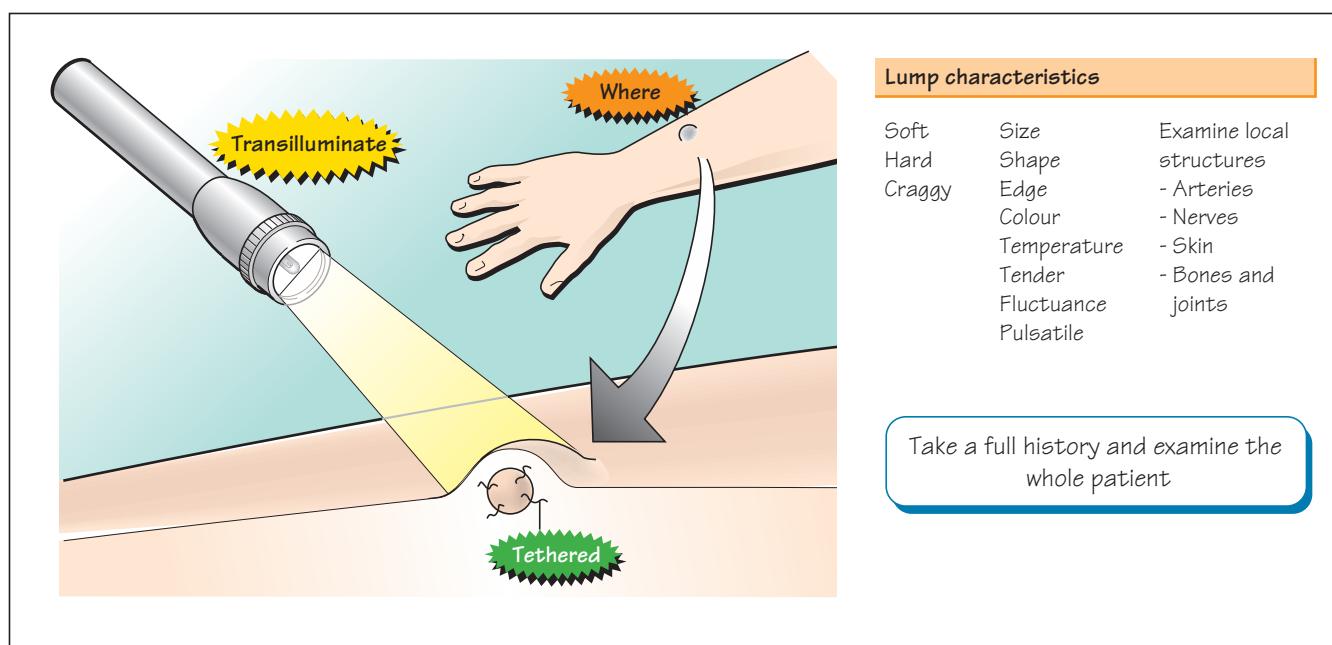
**8 Psychomotor agitation.** At any time during the interview, did the patient have an unusually increased level of motor activity? (e.g. restlessness, picking at bedclothes, tapping fingers or making frequent sudden changes of position).

**9 Psychomotor retardation.** At any time during the interview, did the patient have an unusually decreased level of motor activity? (e.g. sluggishness, staring into space, staying in one position for a long time, or moving very slowly).

**10 Altered sleep–wake cycle.** Did the patient have evidence of disturbances of the sleep–wake cycle? (e.g. excessive daytime sleepiness with insomnia at night).

## Evidence

Inouye SK, van Dyck CH, Alessi CA et al. Clarifying confusion: the confusion assessment method. *Ann Intern Med* 1990; **113**: 941–8.



Lumps can be a manifestation of benign or malignant disease. A careful history and examination is vital in determining their likely nature.

### History

- Where is the lump? How was it noticed (suddenly appeared, pain, itch, bleeding, change in pigmentation, etc.)?
- Is it enlarging? Is it producing local symptoms?
- Any other symptoms (e.g. weight loss, malaise or change in bowel habit)?

### Past medical history

Any history of serious illnesses or other lumps?

### Examination

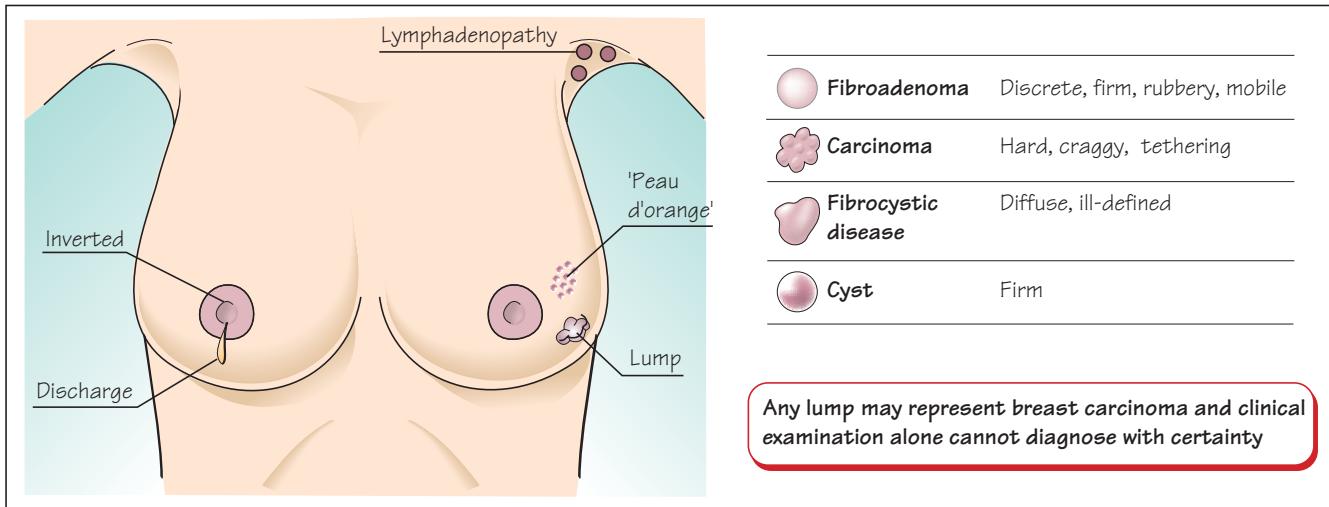
- Where is the lump? Describe its location accurately. Is it associated with a particular organ (e.g. thyroid, breast)? Measure the size, document accurately and consider taking a photographic record.
- Are there multiple lumps?
- Any overlying skin change? (e.g. discolouration, erythema)
- What is the consistency of the lump: rubbery, soft, hard or craggy? Is it fluctuant? Is it hot or of normal temperature?

- Is the lump subcutaneous, deep, tender, pulsatile, pigmented?
- Is the lump mobile or fixed? Is it tethered to skin or underlying tissues? Does it move with, for example, swallowing?
- Is there a cough impulse? Does it transilluminate?
- Auscultate: is there a bruit?
- Is there associated lymphadenopathy?
- THEN examine the whole patient!

### Evidence

#### Distinguishing a mole from a melanoma

- Use the seven-point checklist. Has there been a change in size, shape or colour? Has there been bleeding or crusting, sensory change? Diameter  $>7$  mm?
  - Or use the ABCD checklist: Asymmetry; irregular Border; Colour, variegation; Diameter,  $>6$  mm.
- Both checklists had a high sensitivity and specificity in the diagnosis of melanoma.
- Whited JD & Grichnik JM. Does this patient have a mole or a melanoma? *JAMA* 1998; **279**: 696–701.



Breast lumps may be noticed by the patient, revealed during mammography or found during clinical examination. They have a variety of causes including carcinoma, abscesses and benign lumps.

### History

- When was the lump first noticed? How? Has it changed in size or character since?
- Any variation with menstrual cycle? Any nipple discharge?
- Any pain?
- Are there any other symptoms? Lymphadenopathy, fever, other lumps, weight loss, back pain?

### Past medical history

- Any previous breast lumps? If so, what treatment (e.g. mastectomies, local excision, radiotherapy, chemotherapy, breast reconstruction, other breast operations)?
- Any history of any other serious illnesses?
- What is the pregnancy history? Has the patient undergone lactation or menarche?

### Drugs

Has the patient taken oestrogens or tamoxifen? Has the patient undergone chemotherapy?

### Family history

Any family history of breast or ovarian cancer (e.g. *BRCA1/2* genetic predisposition)?

### Examination

- Ensure (as always) that the patient is comfortable, warm, has privacy and the presence of a chaperone if appropriate and that you have clearly explained what you are going to do.
- Inspect* the breasts. Are they symmetrical? Is there an obvious lump, any tethering of the skin? Is the overlying skin abnormal (e.g. *peau d'orange* appearance, puckering, ulceration)?
- Are the nipples normal, inverted, any discharge?
- Palpate*. Palpate the breasts, gently initially and then more firmly using the pulps of the first three fingers. Use gentle circular motions and examine each quadrant of the breast and the axillary tail. Take time to examine carefully. It may be helpful to examine with the arm elevated above the head and with the patient sitting at 45°.
- Are there any lumps? Where? What size? What is their consistency: firm, soft rubbery, craggy, etc.?
- Is the lump tender? Examine the overlying skin for discolouration and tethering. Examine for tethering of the lump to deep structures.
- Examine for axillary and other lymphadenopathy.
- Are the arms normal or swollen?
- Look for possible metastatic spread, non-metastatic manifestations of malignancy and any features of infection.

See Chapter 20 for description of breast examination.

Rhythm  
Rate

Other symptoms and signs:

- Cardiac disease
- Anxiety
- Thyrotoxicosis

ECG

Irregular	
Regular/rapid	
How did they start?	

- Faint
- Sweaty
- Breathless
- Chest pain
- Syncope

Palpitations are an awareness of the heart beating. The symptoms arising from irregularity of the heart beat can vary from the slight and inconsequential (feeling a skipped beat due to a ventricular ectopic) to the major and life threatening (no cardiac output with unconsciousness due to ventricular fibrillation). It is important to analyse the symptoms carefully and assess the existence of underlying cardiac or systemic illness, such as coronary artery disease, anxiety or thyrotoxicosis. Palpitations in a patient with a previous MI or known LV dysfunction might be due to life-threatening ventricular tachycardia (VT) which might warrant insertion of an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD). Bradyarrhythmias (slow heart beat) do not usually produce a sense of palpitations but produce dizziness, syncope, heart failure or fatigue.

### History

- Describe the palpitations in detail? What do you mean by the term palpitation?
- What precipitated it (e.g. fright, chest pain)?
- How did it start (instantaneously is more common with tachyarrhythmias whilst an onset over minutes may occur with the awareness of sinus tachycardia)?
- How long did it last for? What terminated it (e.g. Valsalva, medication, spontaneous)?
- What were the accompanying symptoms: faintness, sweat, breathlessness, chest pain, thumping in the chest or neck, loss of consciousness? Any post-event polyuria (suggesting tachycardia producing atrial natriuretic factor release)?
- What was the rate of the palpitations? Was it regular or irregular (tap out)?
- Are there any other symptoms of cardiac disease (e.g. chest pain, exertional breathlessness, orthopnoea, PND)?
- Are there any symptoms of thyrotoxicosis (e.g. tremor, sweaty, goitre, eye signs)?
- Witness description and ECG during an attack are very helpful.

Palpitations which have a sudden onset and/or offset, are regular and terminated with vagotonic manoeuvres are likely to be due to a supraventricular tachycardia (SVT).

### Past medical history

Any past history of collapses, presyncope, previous palpitations, ECG monitoring, 24-hour ECG tape results, cardiac disease or embolic events (e.g. stroke)?

### Drugs

- Has the patient taken any anti-arrhythmics or any drugs with pro-arrhythmic effects? Any drugs that could cause electrolyte disturbance (e.g. loop diuretics and hyperkalaemia), anticoagulants?
- Ask about alcohol, caffeine intake and smoking.

### Family history

Any family history of premature cardiac disease or arrhythmias?

### Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell?
- Airway, Breathing, Circulation
- What is the BP? Are there signs of shock?
- Oxygen by mask, ECG monitoring and intravenous access if unwell.
- Pulse: check rate, volume and rhythm.
- Carry out a full cardiac examination.
- Are there signs of heart failure?
- Are there signs of thyrotoxicosis?
- Carry out an ECG examination which is vital to look at the current rhythm, whether there is pre-excitation, prolonged QT interval and evidence of previous MI.

**History**

**What symptoms?**

- Pain
- Loss of function
- Stiffness
- Swelling

**Other joints affected?**

**Systemic symptoms**

- Fever
- Rash
- Weight loss

**Important clinical questions**

- Could this be septic arthritis?
- Is there evidence of systemic disease?
- What are the functional consequences?

**Examination**

**Inspect**

- Deformity
- Wasting
- Effusion
- Skin overlying

**Range of movements**

- Active
- Passive

**Function**

- Grip/gait

**Systemic features**

- Other joints
- Fever
- Rashes
- Tophi
- Psoriasis

Joint problems may arise due to trauma, infection or as a consequence of a systemic illness.

It is important to consider septic arthritis in any painful joint, particularly if there are systemic features of infection. Classically the joint is very tender with reduced range of movement and warmth, and a joint aspiration may be required to make the diagnosis and distinguish from conditions such as gout.

### History

- What is the joint problem: pain, stiffness, swelling, deformity?
- What joint or joints are affected?
- How did the symptoms begin? Was there trauma or sudden or gradual onset?
- When are the symptoms worst? What exacerbates them? What alleviates them?
- Has there been any locking of the joint or giving way?
- Have there been any systemic features (e.g. rash, fever, rigors or weight loss)?
- What are the functional consequences (e.g. unable to walk, rise from a chair or write a letter)?

### Past medical history

- Any previous joint problems: rheumatism or arthritis?
- Any joint replacement surgery?
- Any other serious illnesses?
- Any gout, arthritis, etc.?

### Drugs

Any medications to treat, for example, NSAIDs, antibiotics, allopurinol, corticosteroids, etc.?

Alternative remedies, chiropractor, fish oil, glucosamine?

### Family and social history

Any family history of arthritis or musculoskeletal problems?

### Occupational history

Could the occupation have predisposed to joint arthritis?

What are the social consequences of the joint problem?

### Examination

- Is the patient in pain or uncomfortable? Any abnormal posture?
- Is there evidence of systemic inflammation/infection? Fever, tachycardia, tachypnoea, hypotension?
- Any other signs of rheumatological disease (e.g. butterfly rash, gouty tophi, psoriasis, nodules)?
- Carry out a full general examination looking for systemic manifestations of rheumatological disease.
- Inspect the affected joint(s): examine the unaffected joint first.
- Is there swelling, erythema, deformity, muscle-wasting abnormalities of overlying skin?
- Palpate carefully. Is there tenderness, warmth, effusion or synovial thickening?
- Examine the active and passive movements of the joint.
- Examine function (e.g. gait, grip).
- Examine other joints.

Cause of red eye	History	Examination
Conjunctivitis	- Infective - Allergic	Mild discomfort Itchy
		'Sticky' exudate 'Stringy' exudate
Acute glaucoma		Intense pain, vomiting Vision misty
		Fixed dilated pupil
Dry eye		Dry, gritty
		Schirmer's test
Episcleritis		Uncomfortable
		Redness of part of eye
Iritis		Painful and photophobic
		Small pupil, redness maximal around edge of cornea
Scleritis		Ache, pain worse on movement of eye
Keratitis		Sharp pain, watering
		Localized redness

Red eye may be a manifestation of a benign self-limiting condition, such as viral conjunctivitis, or it may be due to a sight-threatening emergency such as acute glaucoma. Red eye is due to inflammation of the conjunctiva or episclera. A careful history and examination is essential to establish the correct diagnosis.

### History

- How long has the eye(s) been red?
- Is there discomfort or irritation?
- Is it painful? Is it worse with eye movement? Is there a headache with it?
- Is vision impaired at all?
- Is the eye 'sticky'? Any exudate?
- Is the eye dry or gritty?
- Are there any systemic features (e.g. fever, malaise, vomiting, arthralgia or rashes)?
- Is there any eye itching or seasonal variation?
- Any photophobia?

### Past medical history

- Any previous history of eye problems?
- Does the patient wear contact lenses?

- Any previous history of known illnesses (e.g. sarcoid, immunosuppression)?

### Family history

Any family history of glaucoma?

### Examination

- Are there any systemic findings (e.g. fever, arthritis)?
- Inspect the eyes:
  - Is the redness in one or both eyes?
  - Is it localized or generalized?
  - Are there exudates?
  - Is the visual acuity normal?
  - Are the pupils normal and responsive to light?
  - Are eye movements normal?
- Examine with an ophthalmoscope. A Schirmer's test and/or slit-lamp examination may also be required.

**History**

- What?
- When?
- Precipitation
- Deafness
- Tinnitus
  
- Other symptoms?  
e.g. nausea, vomiting

**Examination**

Any signs of shock, hypotension?

Any cardiovascular abnormalities?

- Especially hypotension\postural hypotension

Any neurological abnormalities?

Especially:

- Hearing
- Nystagmus
- Balance
- Cerebellar function

Feeling dizzy is a common symptom and can be caused by serious neurological or cardiovascular conditions. However, dizziness has a variety of benign causes and it encompasses a variety of different symptoms, and so it can be difficult to reach a precise diagnosis.

**History**

- What does the patient actually mean by the term dizzy? Does the patient mean unsteadiness, true vertigo (sensation of surroundings moving), feeling faint, headache, etc?
- Is the patient dizzy at present? What does it feel like? How long and how often is the patient dizzy?
- Are there any precipitants? Head movement/position, change in posture, exertion, etc?
- Any deafness, tinnitus?
- Are there any accompanying symptoms (e.g. nausea, vomiting, headache, palpitations, chest pain, etc.)?
- Are there any other symptoms (e.g. other neurological symptoms such as weakness or cardiovascular symptoms such as chest pain)?
- What alleviates the dizziness (e.g. sitting down)?

**Past medical history**

Any previous history of:

- Serious cardiac, psychiatric or neurological disease?
- Episodes or syncope?

**Drugs**

- Is the patient taking any drugs that might cause the symptom (e.g. diuretics producing postural hypotension)?
- Is the patient taking any treatment (e.g. vestibular 'sedatives')?

**Examination**

- Perform a full examination with particular emphasis on cardiovascular and neurological systems.
- Are there any signs of dehydration, shock, or anaemia?
- Check the pulse, BP and postural hypotension.
- Any heart murmurs?
- Are there any neurological signs? Examine particularly gait, hearing and for nystagmus. Examine for peripheral neuropathy with joint position sense, tendon reflexes and sensation.
- Examine the external auditory meatus.
- Test vestibular function and perform Hallpike's manoeuvre.
- Questions to address are:
  - Any evidence of cardiovascular disease?
  - Any evidence of vestibular, cerebellar or other neurological disease?

**Evidence**

In 417 elderly patients with dizziness seen in primary care cardiovascular disease was the most common major contributory cause of dizziness (57%), then peripheral vestibular disease (14%), and psychiatric illness (10%). An adverse drug effect was considered to be the most common minor contributory cause of dizziness (23%). 62% of the patients were thought to have two or more contributory causes.

Maarsingh OR et al. Causes of persistent dizziness in elderly patients in primary care. *Ann Fam Med* 2010; **8**, 196–205.

**Common causes**

- Airway obstruction
  - Asthma
  - COPD
- Pulmonary embolism
- Pulmonary oedema
- Pneumothorax
- Pneumonia
- Pleural effusion

**Any signs of heart failure?**

- Crackles ×××
- Gallop
- Elevated JVP
- Oedema

**Any signs of infection?**

- Fever >37°C
- Cough→Sputum
- Crackles ×××
- Bronchial breathing

**Breathlessness**

<p><b>+Chest pain</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Myocardial ischaemia + pulmonary oedema</li> <li>• Pulmonary embolus</li> <li>• Pneumothorax</li> <li>• Pleurisy (infection)</li> </ul>	<p><b>+Haemoptysis</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pulmonary embolus</li> <li>• Pneumonia</li> <li>• Pulmonary haemorrhage</li> </ul>	<p><b>+Cough</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pneumonia</li> <li>• Pulmonary oedema</li> <li>• Asthma/COPD</li> </ul>	<p><b>+No abnormal cardiorespiratory signs</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pulmonary embolus</li> <li>• Anaemia</li> <li>• Metabolic acidosis</li> <li>• Anaphylaxis</li> <li>• Septicaemia</li> </ul>
<p><b>+Crackles</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pulmonary oedema</li> <li>• Infection</li> <li>• Fibrosis</li> </ul>	<p><b>+Wheeze</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Asthma</li> <li>• COPD</li> <li>• Pulmonary oedema</li> </ul>		

Shortness of breath is a symptom that may be due to a very wide variety of diseases affecting the cardiovascular and respiratory symptoms. It may also be a manifestation of metabolic acidosis, anaemia, septicaemia or even anxiety.

### History

- How long has the patient been breathless?
- How did it start: suddenly or gradually? What was the patient doing when it started: lying down, running, walking, etc?
- Is it getting worse?
- What brings it on? What alleviates it (e.g. posture, medication or oxygen)?
- Any orthopnoea or PND?
- Are there any accompanying symptoms (e.g. chest pain, cough, palpitations, haemoptysis and wheeze)?
- What is your exercise tolerance? What does the breathlessness stop you doing?

### Past medical history

- Have there been any previous episodes?
- Any history of any cardiovascular or respiratory diseases (especially heart failure, asthma, COPD or pulmonary emboli)?
- Are there any potential causes of acidosis (e.g. diabetic ketoacidosis, renal failure)?
- Are there any allergies?
- Does the patient smoke?

### Drugs

- What treatments has the patient taken? Any exposure to drugs with respiratory side-effects (e.g. amiodarone and pulmonary fibrosis)?
- Any use of home oxygen/nebulizers/inhalers?

### Social history

- How has breathlessness interfered with any activities?

- What can't the patient do that the patient would like to do?
- Have there been any occupational exposures (e.g. pneumoconiosis)?

## Examination

- Is the patient unwell and in need of resuscitation including intubation and artificial ventilation?
- Give oxygen by mask (use controlled oxygen flow if history of COPD and monitor arterial blood gases for hypercapnia).
- Is there tachypnoea, tachycardia, fever, cyanosis, anaemia or shock?
- Any use of accessory muscles, audible wheeze or stridor?
- Are there any signs of heart failure or fluid overload (e.g. crackles, gallop rhythm, elevated JVP, peripheral oedema)?
- Are there any signs that suggest infection? (e.g. fever, sputum, signs of consolidation)
- Are there any signs of pleural effusion? (dull to PN, reduced BS).
- Are there any signs of pneumothorax? (hyperresonant to PN, reduced BS).
- Are there any signs of pulmonary embolus? (raised JVP, pleural rub or signs of DVT).
- Consider the rare possibility of tracheal or other upper airway obstruction.
- Signs of respiratory distress:
  - tachypnoea
  - use of accessory muscles
  - tachycardia
  - unable to speak in sentences because of breathlessness
  - anxiety
  - cyanosis
  - stridor
  - drowsy or confused.

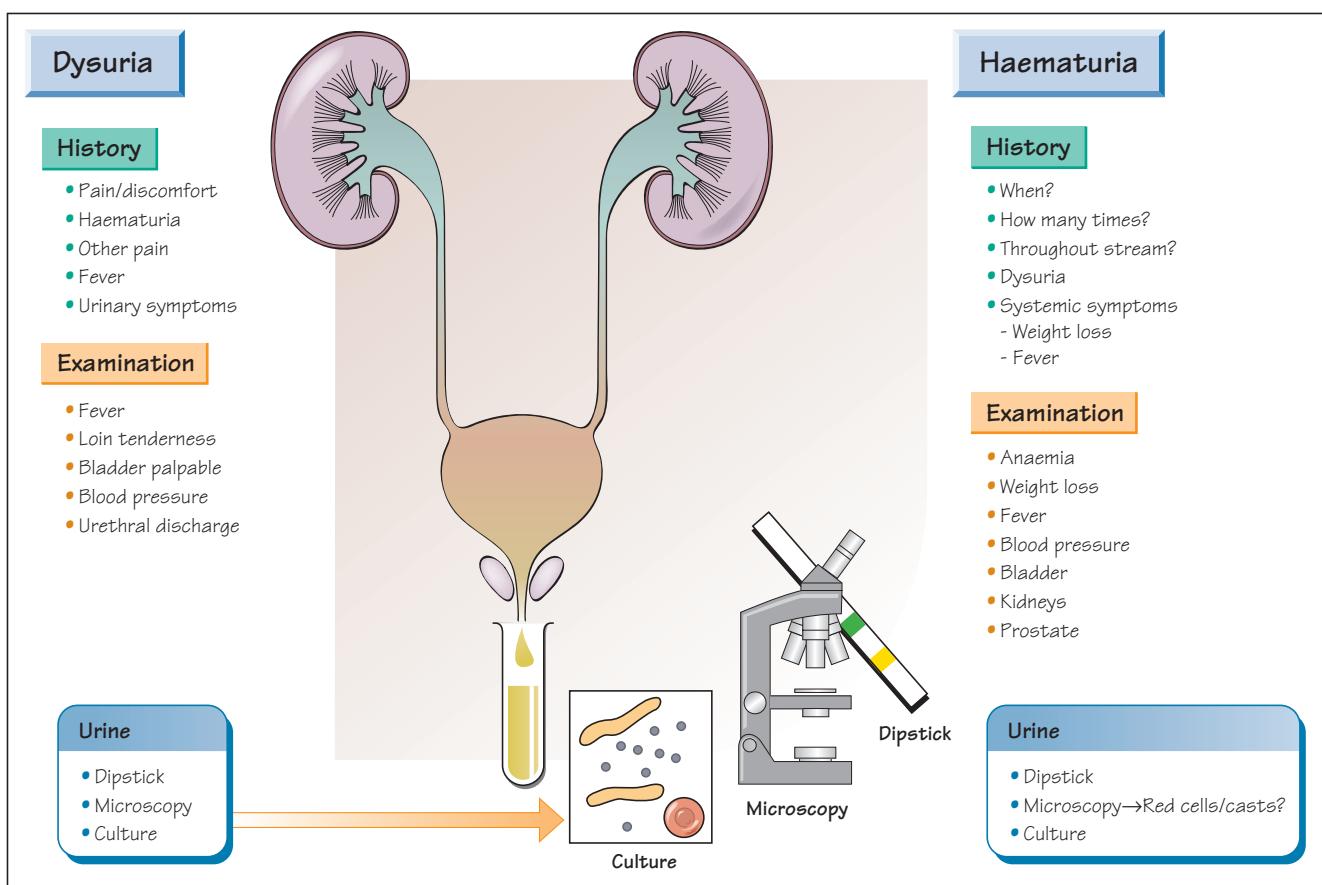
## MRC Dyspnoea Scale

- 1 Breathless only with strenuous exercise.
- 2 Short of breath when hurrying on the level or up a slight hill.
- 3 Slower than most people of the same age on a level surface or have to stop for breath when walking at my own pace on the level.
- 4 Stop for breath walking 100 meters or after a walking few minutes at my own pace on the level.
- 5 Too breathless to leave the house, or breathless when dressing or undressing.

## Evidence

In breathless patients presenting to an emergency department, the features that increased the probability of it being due to heart failure were a past history of heart failure (LR = 5.8), the symptom of paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea (LR = 2.6), orthopnoea (LR = 2.2), breathlessness on exertion (LR = 1.3), a third heart sound (S3 gallop) (LR = 11), jugular venous distension (LR = 5.1), pulmonary crackles (LR = 2.8), leg oedema (LR = 2.3), the chest radiograph showing pulmonary venous congestion (LR = 12.0), and the electrocardiogram showing atrial fibrillation (LR = 3.8).

Wang CS, FitzGerald JM, Schulzer M, Mak E & Ayas NT. Does this dyspneic patient in the emergency department have congestive heart failure? *JAMA* 2005; **294**, 1944–56.



## Dysuria

Dysuria is the symptom of pain or discomfort when passing urine. The commonest cause by far is UTI but other conditions such as urinary calculi, urethritis, prostatitis and malignancy of the lower urinary tract can also produce dysuria.

### History

- Ask the patient when is the pain or discomfort? Whilst or during attempting to urinate?
- Is there associated haematuria, penile or vaginal discharge, offensive smelling urine, cloudy urine or passage of 'grit' or calculi?
- Any loin pain? Suprapubic pain?
- Has the episode been associated with recent instrumentation, sexual intercourse or dehydration?
- Are there any other urinary symptoms (e.g. hesitancy, poor stream, terminal dribbling, incontinence)?
- Are there any systemic features such as weight loss, fever, rigors, sweats or confusion?
- Has a urine sample been sent for analysis?

### Past medical history

Any previous episodes of dysuria, UTIs, urinary calculi, renal disease or diabetes mellitus?

## Family history

Any family history of recurrent UTIs, particularly those associated with reflux nephropathy?

### Drugs

- Is the patient taking any antibiotic treatment?
- Does the patient have any allergies to antibiotics?

### Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell?
- Any fever?
- Any loin tenderness?
- Is the bladder palpable?
- BP elevated?
- Any penile or vaginal discharge?
- Consider rectal examination of prostate if prostatitis suspected
- Obtain mid-stream ('clean catch') urine sample. Tests: microscopy for cells and casts; dipstick for blood, protein, leucocytes, nitrites and culture.

## Haematuria

Large amounts of blood may be detected in the urine by the patient, smaller amounts (e.g. in glomerulonephritis) can produce a 'smoky'

appearance and even smaller quantities can be detected using dipsticks or microscopy. The presence of blood in the urine may be due to malignancy anywhere in the renal tract, calculi, infection, glomerulonephritis or other renal diseases and is common in women during menstruation. The presence of microscopic haematuria is common affecting up to 5% of the population in some surveys. Persistent microscopic haematuria usually warrants careful consideration of the possibility of underlying glomerulonephritis or malignancy. This will include a full history and examination with particular focus on any symptoms arising from the urinary tract, proteinuria and hypertension. Investigations such as ultrasound, renal biopsy and cystoscopy are often required to define the cause.

### History

- Is there haematuria? If so, when and how many times?
- Where in the stream is it noticed: throughout or just terminally (suggesting lower tract disease)?
- Are there any associated features such as dysuria, fever, frequency, loin pain?
- Are there any other urinary symptoms such as hesitancy, poor stream, terminal dribbling, incontinence?
- Are there any systemic symptoms such as weight loss, itch, nausea, anorexia?
- Has haematuria been noticed previously (e.g. with dipstick during medicals)?

### Past medical history

Any history of previous haematuria or of other diseases that affect the renal tract?

### Drugs

- Is the patient taking any anticoagulants? (But haematuria still suggests an underlying abnormality.)
- Is the patient taking any anti-hypertensives?

### Family history

Is there a family history of renal disease (e.g. polycystic kidney disease)?

### Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell?
- Are there any signs of weight loss, fever, anaemia or renal failure?
- Check BP and check for signs of hypertensive damage (e.g. retinopathy, left ventricular hypertrophy).
- Are there any abdominal masses, palpable bladder, kidneys or an enlarged prostate?
- Obtain a mid-stream ('clean catch') urine sample. Tests: microscopy for cells and casts; dipstick for blood, protein, leucocytes, nitrites and culture.

The illustration shows a man with a distressed expression. A hand is holding a stethoscope to his neck. Labels indicate 'Pin point pupils?' pointing to his eyes, 'Lacerations' pointing to a cut on his arm, and a red starburst labeled 'Airway, breathing, circulation'. In the background, there are concentric circles suggesting a medical consultation room.

To the right of the patient, there is a bottle of alcohol, a glass of red liquid, a skull and crossbones icon labeled 'POISON', and a bottle of drugs with tablets scattered nearby. A label 'See the tablets' points to the drugs.

**Important clinical questions**

What is the physical threat to the patient?  
What is the risk of further attempts?  
Is there an associated psychiatric illness?

Attempted suicide is a very common reason for hospital admission. Suicide is an important cause of death accounting for over 20% of deaths in those aged 15–40 years old. It is important to establish the continuing medical threat from medications or toxins, to consider whether there is underlying psychiatric disease, to understand the personal and social background to the attempt, and to assess and reduce the risk of further attempts. The majority of attempts are not life threatening, use an overdose of medication (commonest drugs are paracetamol, aspirin, tricyclic antidepressants and opiates) and do not have a serious underlying psychiatric disorder. However, it is important to recognize that individuals who have attempted suicide are more likely to attempt suicide again in the future and may complete it.

### History

*To enable assessment of physical harm:*

- Gather history from patient, relatives, other witnesses and ambulance officers.
- When was the attempt made, where and with what? Consider the possibility of multiple drug overdose, the use of alcohol, carbon monoxide poisoning from exhaust fumes, self-harm by laceration, insulin overdose, etc.
- What other medications might the patient have had access to? Were empty tablet containers found?
- What symptoms are there since the overdose (e.g. sleepiness, fits, vomiting)?

*To help determine suicidality of current episode:*

- How was the patient found? Did they tell someone of the attempt? Did they phone an ambulance and, if not, who did?
- Was a suicide note found?
- What led to the suicide attempt?
- Did they want to die? Was it a demonstrative act?
- How do they feel about it now: silly or disappointed that they failed?
- What did they want to achieve (to die/sleep/switch off)?
- Did you think it would kill you ?

### Past medical history

- Have there been previous suicide attempts? If so, when, how and why?
- Any known psychiatric illnesses? If so, what treatment was the patient given?
- Any history of any other significant medical conditions?

### Drugs

- What is the patient's normal medication?
- Do they take any illicit drugs?
- What other medications does the patient have access to?

### Examination

- Examine the adequacy of the airway and ensure it is not obstructed.

- Assess and optimize breathing and circulation. Hypotension is a common finding with a wide variety of medications used in overdose.
- Assess the level of consciousness with Glasgow Coma Score.
- Check for vital observations.
- Check for signs of drug overdose:
  - pinpoint pupils and depressed respiration with opiates
  - smell of alcohol
  - cherry red skin colour with carbon monoxide poisoning
  - hyperventilation with aspirin poisoning
  - jaundice with late presenting (>48 hours) paracetamol overdose
  - obvious lacerations or other signs of self-harm.
- Perform a careful clinical examination.
- Look at the tablets, the tablet containers and prescriptions.
- Assess the patient's mental state looking particularly for depression, psychosis and assess risk of further attempts.

## **Suicide risk**

Suicide risk may change and should be assessed frequently, particularly if there are changes in the patients circumstances, treatment or stressors. Patients often want help for their suicidal thinking and behaviour and commonly describe relief when their suicidal risk is professionally addressed. It is essential that medical professionals develop their own style and confidence in discussing suicide as part of a risk assessment. This confidence will indicate to the client that their suicidal thoughts can be openly discussed, are not unusual or shameful, and are amenable to many forms of help.

### **Assessing suicidal risk**

Demographic risk factors are poor predictors for an individual suicide risk. It is important to carefully enquire about each individuals current suicidality. This can inform likely suicide risk. The following questions can form a basis for assessing this risk but will require modification depending upon the patient and the relationship with the patient. Risk level for suicide tends to increase with more positive and detailed responses to these questions.

### **Questions to help assess suicide risk**

(For this and other resources see <http://square.org.au/>)

#### **Suicidal ideation (thoughts)**

##### **Passive suicidal ideation:**

- Do you wish you didn't have to go on living?
- Do you have thoughts of wanting to die?

##### **Active suicidal ideation:**

- Do you have thoughts of wanting to take your own life?

#### **Suicidal threats**

- Did you talk about killing yourself with others?
- Have you told anyone you are going to kill yourself?

#### **Suicide plans**

- Have you thought about how to kill yourself?

#### **Details of suicide plans**

##### **Decision:**

- Have you decided on a method to kill yourself?

##### **Details:**

- Did you make a plan of exactly what you might do to kill yourself?

##### **Resistance:**

- Have you been able to resist carrying out the plan?
- What's stopped you enacting the plan?

##### **Preparations:**

- Have you made preparations to kill yourself?

##### **Time profile:**

- For how long have you had the plan?
- Have you set a date to kill yourself?

##### **Affairs:**

- Have you put your affairs in order?
- Have you made arrangements for after you die?
- Have you written a note?

#### **Current and previous suicide attempts**

- Have you ever tried to take your own life before?

#### **Attempt details**

##### **Circumstances:**

- What were the circumstances of this attempt?

##### **Method:**

- What did you do ?

##### **Intent:**

- What did you want to achieve (to die/sleep)?

##### **Lethality:**

- Did you think it would kill you?

##### **Now:**

- Do you have thoughts of wanting to harm yourself here?
- Do you have anything you can hurt yourself with?
- Do you want help to avoid hurting yourself?
- Can you ask for help if you feel suicidal again?

## **If significant risk for suicide is identified what management should be enacted?**

A clearly articulated plan should be formed with management that might include planned engagement with health professionals, environmental interventions to reduce risk (e.g. restricting access to lethal means, increased supervision, detention) psychotherapeutic or medication interventions, facilitating access to community services.

**History**

- What immunosuppression?
- How long? How severe?
- Prophylactic medication
- Vaccination

**Beware**

- Viral infections
- Bacterial infections
- Protozoal infections
- Fungal infections

CMV

Fungi

Herpes zoster

**Examination**

- Fever

**Remember signs may be masked**

- Eyes
- Ears
- Nose
- Throat
- Skin

**Remember unusual**

- Infections
- Malignancies

Patients who are immunosuppressed may present with masked or unusual symptoms. For example, corticosteroids may reduce the severity of signs of an intra-abdominal perforation, and an isolated fever in a neutropaenic patient is much more likely to represent a serious infection than in an otherwise healthy patient. Furthermore, patients who are immunosuppressed may be subject to unusual infectious and malignant diseases.

### History

- What is the cause of the immunosuppression: is it congenital (e.g. chronic granulomatous disease, acquired due to HIV infection, chemotherapy, splenectomy or a lymphoproliferative disorder)?
- What is the severity and duration of the immunosuppression (e.g. undetectable T-cell count or small dose of corticosteroid)?
- What is the presentation: fever, cough or other symptoms?
- Have there been previous infections or malignancies?
- Has there been prophylactic treatment or vaccination (e.g. septin for *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia)?

### Past medical history

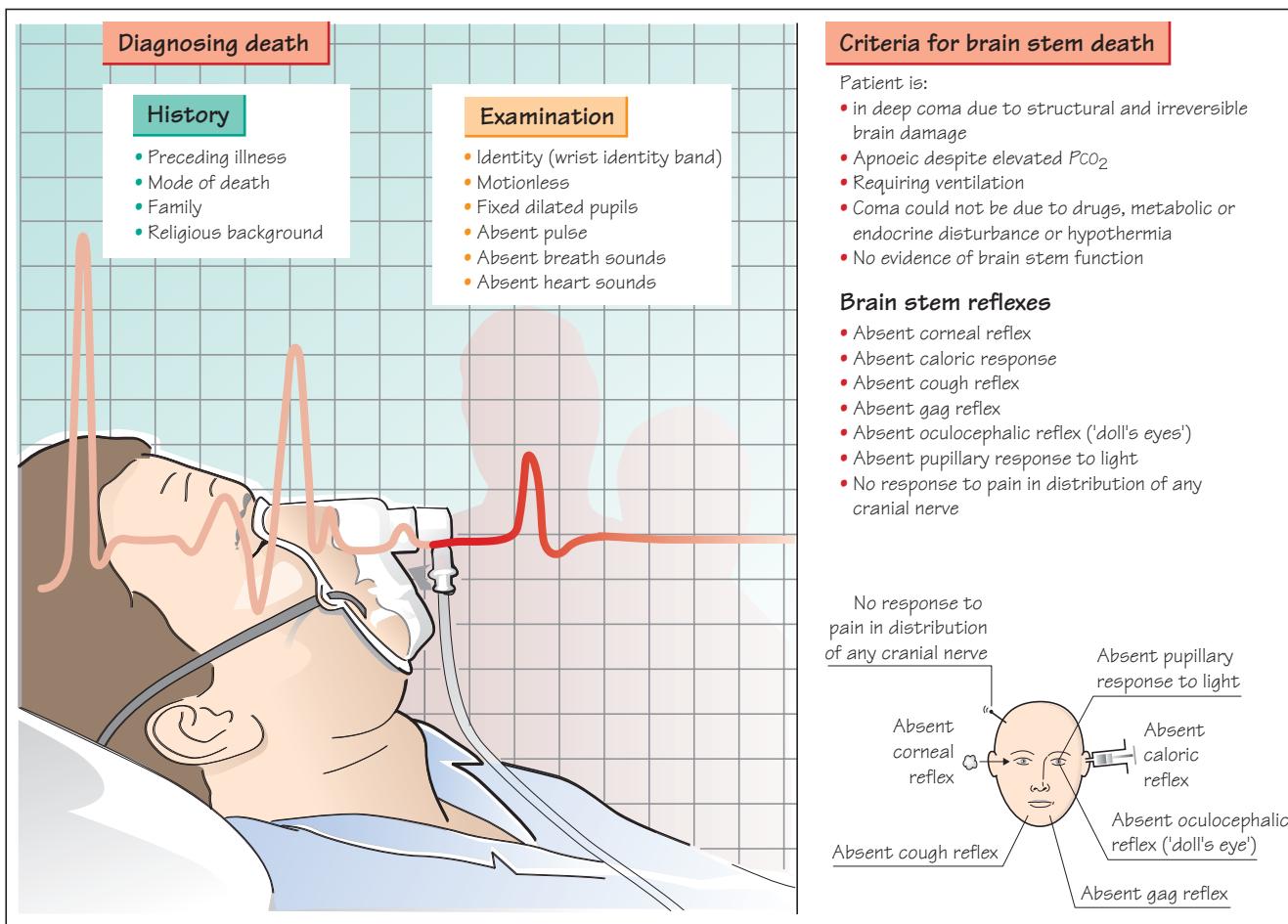
- Any history of previous infections or malignancies?
- Ask about the history and cause of the immunosuppression.

### Social history

Ask about foreign travel, pets and any possible contact with infectious disease.

### Examination

- Is there fever?
- Undertake a full examination but particularly:
  - examine carefully the mouth, tongue, throat, ears, eyes and fundi
  - examine the skin for malignancy (e.g. Kaposi's sarcoma, warts, stigmata of infection)
  - consider that signs such as those of an acute abdomen may be 'masked', or that the fever may not be apparent
  - consider the reactivation of infections such as TB or herpes zoster.



The diagnosis of death is often obvious. The body is cool, motionless and pale.

In establishing the diagnosis of death an understanding of the recent history is important. For example, patients who are profoundly hypothermic may appear dead but in fact may be capable of resuscitation. It is also vital to establish with certainty the identity of the body.

### History

- When did the patient die? When was the patient last seen alive?
- What happened in their final moments (e.g. cardiopulmonary resuscitation, agonal respirations but surrounded by relatives, etc.)?

### Past medical history

What were the events and illnesses preceding death?

### Family and social history

- What was the patient's social, family and religious background?
- What relatives are there? What do they know of the patient's death and any previous condition?

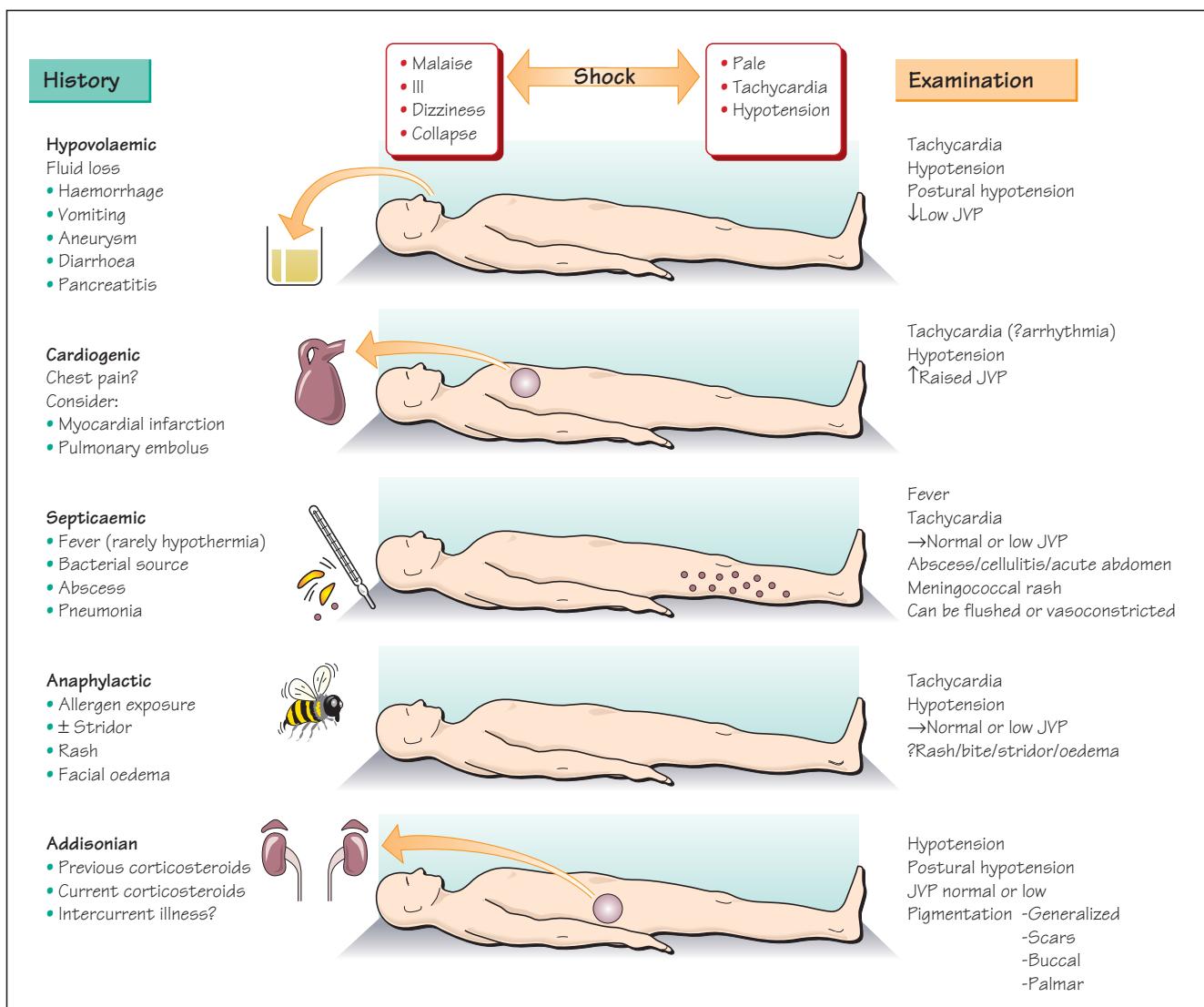
### Examination

- The body is motionless.
- There is no palpable pulse.
- There are no audible heart sounds.
- There are no audible breath sounds.
- The pupils are fixed, dilated and unresponsive to light.

### Brain stem death

Patients who have sustained a critical brain insult may have developed brain stem death, be incapable of recovery, but with artificial ventilation may still have intact peripheral spinal reflexes and cardiac function. In these circumstances brain stem death testing may be undertaken particularly if consideration is being given to organ donation.

The criteria for making the diagnosis of **brain stem death** are shown in the figure above and are usually performed by two senior clinicians at least 12 hours apart.



Shock is an important clinical presentation. It requires prompt recognition and accurate diagnosis of its cause. Shock is defined as insufficient perfusion of vital organs. It may manifest with non-specific malaise, dizziness, faintness or unconsciousness, or with symptoms of the underlying cause. The common aetiologies include hypovolaemia (e.g. due to GI haemorrhage), cardiogenic shock (due to myocardial infarction), pulmonary embolus, anaphylaxis, intra-abdominal catastrophes (e.g. bowel perforation, pancreatitis, ischaemic bowel) and septicaemia.

### History

- When did the illness start? What were the symptoms?
- Has there been any chest pain, haemoptysis or breathlessness?
- Are there any symptoms suggesting volume depletion (e.g. vomiting, haematemesis, diarrhoea, melaena, polyuria)?
- Has there been any exposure to potential allergens (e.g. foods, drugs, venom)?

- Are there any symptoms suggesting septicaemia (e.g. fever, rigors, sweats, local infection [cough, chest pain, breathlessness, abscess, meningism, rash, inflamed joint])?
- Get additional history from relatives, especially if the patient is profoundly unwell and unable to give a clear history.

### Past medical history

- Any previous episodes of shock?
- Any previous serious cardiac disease (e.g. myocardial infarction)?
- Any history of immunosuppression?
- Any known abdominal pathologies (e.g. aneurysm, previous pancreatitis)?

### Drugs

- Is the patient taking or recently taken corticosteroids? (Consider the possibility of Addison's disease.)

- Is the patient taking any medication with anaphylactic potential?
- Is there the possibility of overdose with cardiodepressant drugs?

## Allergies

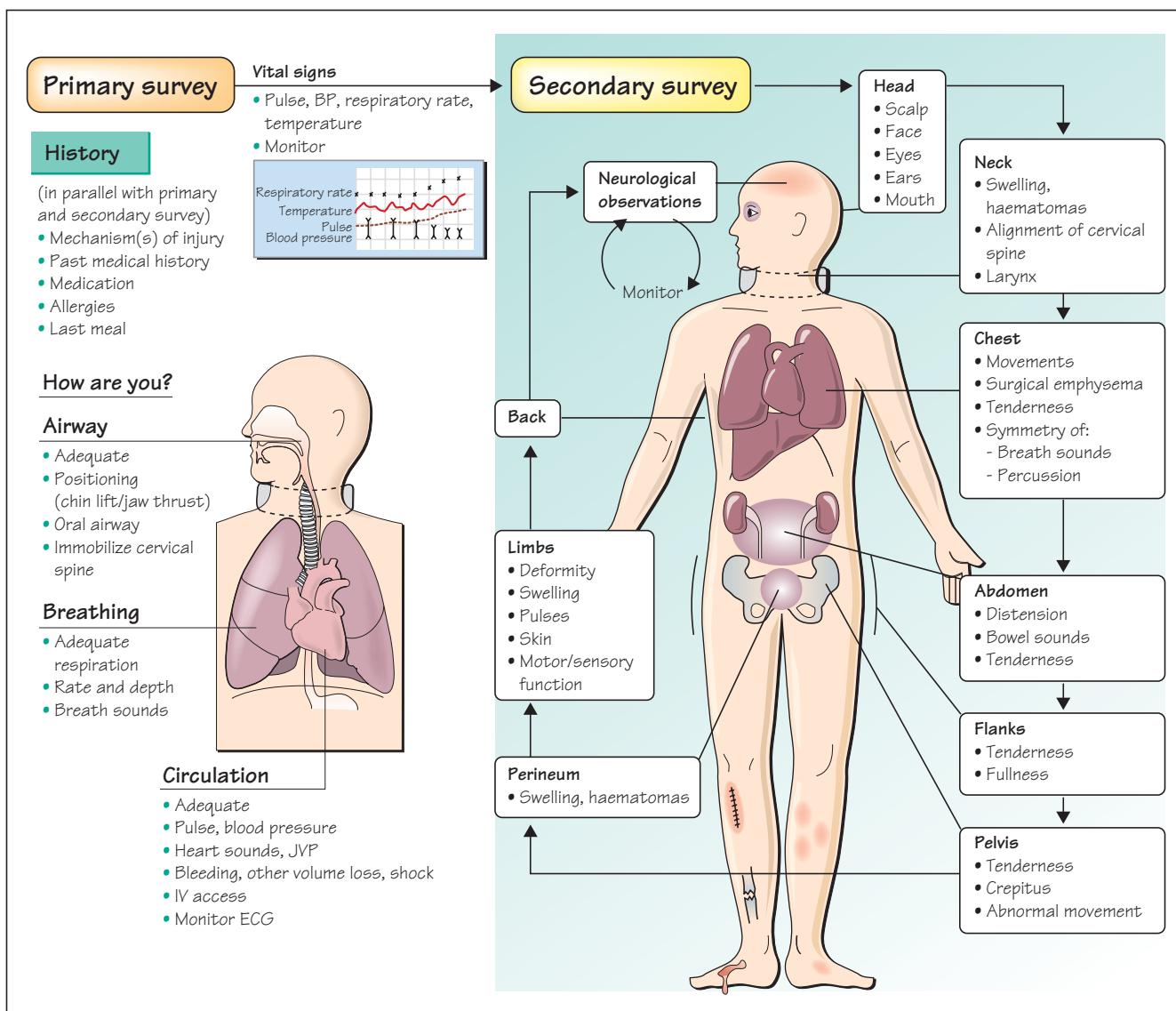
Are there any known allergies?

## Examination

- As for any ill patient, ensure preservation of the airway, adequate breathing and full examination. In particular, assess the *signs of shock*:

- pulse: tachycardia or even bradycardia
- BP: postural drop if not hypotensive
- skin colour (pallor) and temperature
- reduced urine output.
- The presence of shock requires urgent treatment (give oxygen, obtain venous access with large calibre lines, give intravenous fluids promptly whilst monitoring closely and obtain blood for cross-matching) and accurate diagnosis. Examine carefully for *volume status*:
  - check skin turgor
  - check the mucous membranes (dry?)
  - check the JVP: elevated or depressed? (may need measurement of CVP if there is any uncertainty)
  - check the pulse, BP (postural changes) and pulsus paradoxus (decrease in systolic pressure on inspiration).

- Examine for any potential sources of *volume loss* (e.g. ruptured aortic aneurysm, GI haemorrhage) (rectal examination for melaena?).
- Examine for signs of *major cardiac or respiratory disease* (e.g. murmurs [e.g. new VSD]), pleural rub (e.g. PE), Kussmaul's sign (rise in JVP on inspiration suggesting pericardial constriction/tamponade), cyanosis or raised respiratory rate.
- Examine carefully for signs or sources of *sepsis* and for *abdominal pathology* (e.g. pulmonary consolidation, joints, meningism, abscesses, rashes, abdominal tenderness, rebound guarding, ileus).
- Examine for signs consistent with *anaphylactic reaction*: rash, oral, laryngeal oedema and stridor.
- Examine for signs of *Addison's disease*: palmar, buccal pigmentation, signs of previous corticosteroid use.
- The assessment should proceed rapidly in concert with *therapy* that could include:
  - oxygen
  - intravenous access
  - intravenous fluids
  - intravenous antibiotics
- And *investigations* to include:
  - ECG (and ECG monitoring)
  - arterial blood gases (and/or pulse oximetry)
  - chest X-ray
  - blood cultures.



Trauma is a common reason for presentation to a doctor or to a hospital. The severity can obviously range from mild cuts and bruises to multiple life-threatening injuries of major organs. It is vital to undertake a systematic assessment of the patient to establish the nature and severities of the injuries and the threat that they pose. It is vital to obtain a full and accurate history from the patient and any other witnesses in order to indicate the likely severity of injuries and other possible hazards that they may have been exposed to. For example, a victim of a motor vehicle accident may have had a fit or myocardial infarction that caused them to crash or an assault victim may have a serious abdominal injury as well as the obvious facial contusions. It is also essential to obtain a full medical background: a minor head injury may have severe consequences in an anticoagulated patient who already has mild cognitive impairment.

Think carefully if the mechanism of injury and its consequences are compatible. Prolonged unconsciousness after a fall sustaining a small

scalp laceration might be due to a primary subarachnoid haemorrhage, not due to the head injury itself. A simple trip that produces a fractured neck of femur may suggest underlying osteoporosis or other pathological fracture.

## History

In serious injury, history will need to be undertaken at the same time as resuscitation and examination.

- When was the trauma? What happened?
- If in a motor vehicle accident, where was the patient sitting, were they wearing a seatbelt and what was the speed of the vehicles involved? What injuries did any other passengers sustain? What caused the accident? What happened immediately prior to the accident?
- Has there been exposure to other hazards (e.g. smoke, fumes)?
- What does the patient remember? Gather history from other witnesses, paramedics, police, etc.

- Determine the pre-hospital care that has been delivered and the time of the patient's last meal.

## Past medical history

- Any history of any significant medical conditions?
- Any history of cardiorespiratory compromise or any other likely problems if anaesthesia is required?

## Drugs

- Particularly consider anticoagulation and immunosuppression.
- Ask about the patient's recent alcohol and recreational drug intake.
- Has the patient got tetanus immunization?

## Allergies

Does the patient have any allergies?

## Family and social history

You may need to consider possibility of non-accidental injury.

## Examination

If the history suggests the possibility of significant trauma then:

### Primary survey (or ABCD)

Begin the primary survey as soon as you see the patient. A quick look can tell you a lot. Are they breathing? Do they look at you? Is the C-spine immobilized?

#### Airway

- Is the airway preserved? If not, correct with positioning (chin lift and jaw thrust), oral airway, suction and if necessary intubation (with in-line immobilization to protect the cervical spine).
- Ask, 'How are you?' If the patient responds in a clear voice, the airway is patent – at present. A clear voice, quiet respirations and a normal mental state rule out significant obstruction.
- Listen: snoring sounds suggest obstruction, while gurgles suggest secretions, vomit or blood in the airway. These sounds indicate the need to clear the airway, usually followed by intubation. Hoarseness or pain with speaking may indicate laryngeal injury, which can result in airway obstruction. Agitation can be due to hypoxia. Altered conscious level may be due to carbon dioxide retention.
- Assess future risk to the airway by looking for foreign bodies or loose teeth, and test for a gag reflex if unconscious.

#### Breathing

- Is the patient breathing adequately? If not administer 100% oxygen and mouth-to-mouth resuscitation or other ventilation.
- If the patient's respirations are not obvious to you, put your ear to the patient's mouth. While watching the chest for movement, listen and feel for the motion of air on your cheek. Assess the rate of respirations and their depth: listen to the chest for breath sounds.

## Circulation

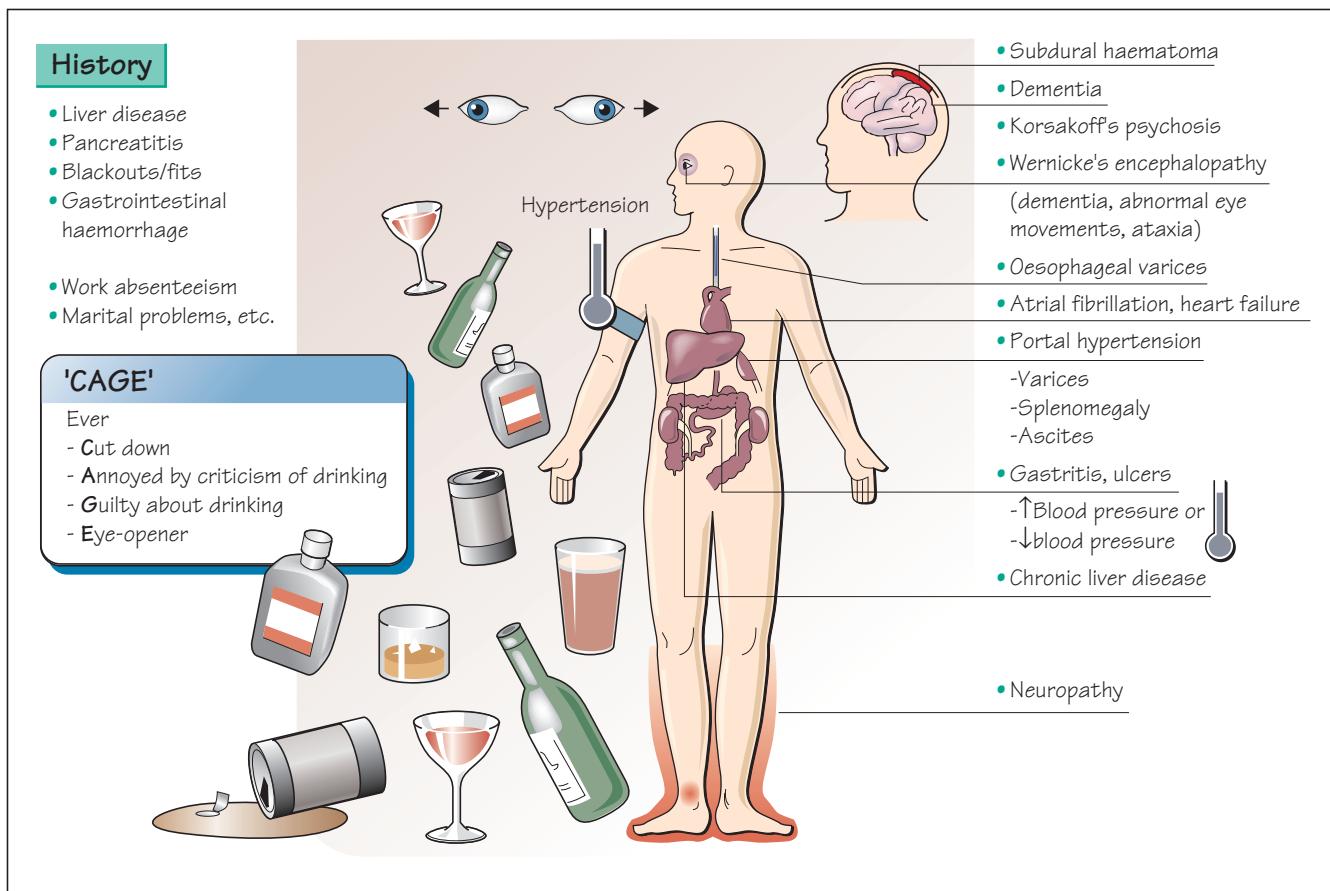
- Is it adequate? What is the pulse and BP? Is there obvious volume loss, active bleeding? Obtain venous access, give fluids, start external cardiac massage if no output. Monitor the patient's circulation with ECG and frequent measurements of pulse and BP. Stop any active, external bleeding by applying pressure directly over the wound.
- If shock is present give fluids and consider underlying causes, such as hypovolaemia, pericardial tamponade or tension pneumothorax.
- Hypovolaemia or shock may produce apprehension, drowsiness and even unresponsiveness. The peripheries may be pale, cold and bluish or mottled.
- Examine for peripheral pulses. If a radial pulse can be felt, the systolic BP is probably above 80mmHg.
- Examine pulse rate and rhythm, BP, heart sounds and JVP.
- Immobilize the head and neck, and maintain the cervical spine in a neutral position. Assume a cervical spine injury is present until proven otherwise.

## Disability (conscious level) (or disorders of the CNS)

- What is the conscious level? Use the Glasgow Coma Score to document (see Chapter 40).
- Examine pupil size, equality and reactivity.

## Secondary survey

- Ensure the patient is fully undressed.
- Obtain complete vital signs. BP, pulse rate, respiratory rate, and temperature. Seek further history.
- Inspect the *head* for lacerations, haematomas, and tenderness. Test the facial bones for crepitus or instability. Check the eyes for foreign bodies and direct injuries. Look at the eardrums for rupture or blood.
- Examine the *neck* for swelling, haematomas, and misalignment of the posterior spinous processes.
- Palpate the larynx for crepitus, tenderness and stability.
- Re-examine the *chest* for chest wall motion, crepitus (surgical emphysema), tenderness, symmetry of breath sounds and percussion.
- Examine the *heart* for position of the apex beat, level of JVP, murmurs and muffled heart tones.
- Examine the *abdomen* for distension, bowel sounds, and tenderness.
- Palpate the *flanks* for tenderness and fullness, and compress the *pelvis* to elicit tenderness or crepitus.
- Examine for integrity of the pubic symphysis and evaluate the scrotum and perineum for haematomas and swelling. Do a rectal exam, and check the urethral meatus for blood.
- Inspect and palpate *arms and legs* for deformity, swelling, and skin injuries. Check all peripheral pulses. Test motor function and skin sensation, if the patient's level of consciousness allows.
- Log-roll the patient so the *back* can be examined.
- Digital rectal examination.



The excess consumption of alcohol can produce many clinical presentations. Acute intoxication or drunkenness is a common finding in some patients with trauma, in road accidents or with head injuries. Chronically, alcohol excess may present with liver failure, neuropathy, cardiac disease, cognitive impairment and the social problems of dependency.

### History

- How much does the patient drink? What do they drink and how often?
- How many units of alcohol does the patient drink in a week?

A number of screening questionnaires and tests have been developed in attempts to identify persons with hazardous and harmful patterns of alcohol consumption. These include the CAGE questionnaire and the AUDIT tool:

### CAGE questionnaire

- Have you ever felt you should Cut down on your drinking?
- Have people Annoyed you by criticising your drinking?
- Have you ever felt bad or Guilty about your drinking?
- Have you ever had a drink first thing in the morning to steady your nerves or get rid of a hangover (Eye-opener)?

**The World Health Organization's Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test (AUDIT)** is a very reliable and simple screening tool which is sensitive to early detection of risky and high risk (or hazardous and harmful) drinking. It has three questions on alcohol consumption (**1 to 3**), three questions on drinking behaviour and dependence (**4 to 6**) and four questions on the consequences or problems related to drinking (**7 to 10**)

- 1 How often do you have a drink containing alcohol?
- 2 How many standard drinks do you have on a typical day when you are drinking?
- 3 How often do you have six or more standard drinks on one occasion?
- 4 How often during the last year have you found that you were not able to stop drinking once you had started?
- 5 How often during the last year have you failed to do what was normally expected of you because of drinking?
- 6 How often during the last year have you needed a first drink in the morning to get yourself going after a heavy drinking session?
- 7 How often during the last year have you had a feeling of guilt or remorse after drinking?
- 8 How often during the last year have you been unable to remember what happened the night before because you had been drinking?

**9** Have you or someone else been injured because of your drinking?

**10** Has a relative, friend, doctor, or other health care worker been concerned about your drinking or suggested you cut down?

### Past medical history and functional enquiry

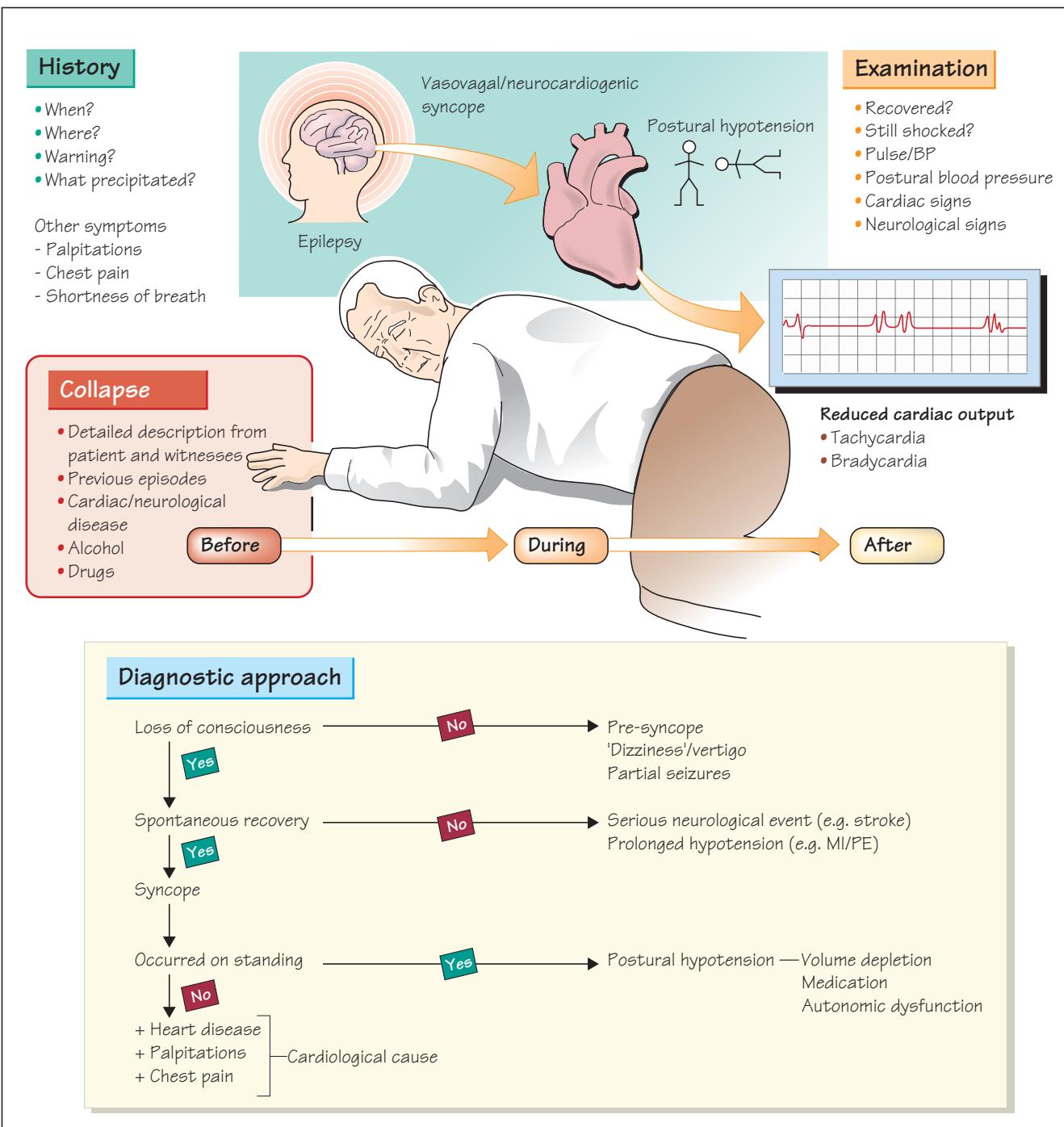
- Establish the history and current situation regarding liver disease, pancreatitis, gastritis, GI haemorrhage, jaundice, abdominal pain or swelling.
- Assess the history and current situation regarding hypertension, arrhythmias or cardiomyopathy.
- Establish the history and current situation regarding neuropathy, memory difficulties, cognitive impairment, psychosis or hallucinations.
- Establish the history and current situation regarding blackouts or fits and anxiety.
- Consider contraception, risk of STDs. If pregnant consider fetal alcohol syndrome
- Establish the history and current situation regarding sexual dysfunction.
- Assess the history and current situation regarding gout.
- Establish the history and current situation regarding cancer of the mouth, oesophagus and liver.
- Establish the history and current situation regarding TB.

### Social history

- Have there been any requests for medical certificates?
- Does the patient have any marital problems, and has there been any domestic violence?
- Has there been any absenteeism at work?
- Does the patient have any financial difficulties?
- Have there been any prosecutions for violent behaviour or driving offences?

### Examination

- Is the patient orientated? Is the patient well or unwell? Is the patient intoxicated?
- Is the patient smelling of alcohol?
- Check for hypertension, atrial fibrillation and other tachycardias.
- Any signs of cardiac failure?
- Any signs of chronic liver disease?
- Is there abdominal pain/tenderness? Consider pancreatitis, acute alcoholic hepatitis, gastritis or peptic ulceration.
- Any peripheral neuropathy?
- Any confusion, confabulation (Korsakoff's psychosis)?
- Any abnormalities of eye movements, dementia, unsteadiness (Wernicke's syndrome)?
- Any focal deficits or reduced conscious level? Consider subdural haematoma.
- Any epileptiform convulsions?



Collapses, falls, funny turns and faints, etc. are very common reasons for presentation to doctors and can be manifestations of serious underlying cardiac or neurological dysfunctions. Common causes include bradycardias, tachycardias, vasovagal attacks, postural hypotension and epilepsy, although often a clear cause is not identified. It is important to differentiate cardiac from non-cardiac causes as the former may have a poor prognosis. Cardiac syncope is more likely if there is

previous heart disease, the syncope is related to exertion, there are palpitations, chest pain, a family history of sudden death, there is an abnormal cardiovascular examination or the ECG or Echocardiogram are abnormal. Non-cardiac syncope is favoured if there is a long history, clear situational component (e.g. always on seeing blood or getting out of bed in the morning), a prodrome, young age, absence of cardiac disease and a normal examination.

## History

In taking a history from a patient who has collapsed, it is vital to determine whether there was loss of consciousness or not. Loss of consciousness does not usually occur with falls, drop attacks and TIAs.

A detailed description of the collapse should be obtained from the patient and any available witnesses.

- When and where did the patient collapse? What was the patient doing? How did he/she feel immediately prior to the episode? Was there any warning or prodrome? Did it follow standing, vigorous coughing, nausea? How long did the patient take to recover? Was the patient unconscious? For how long was he/she unconscious? Are there any symptoms suggesting blood loss? A good memory of events during the episode suggests that consciousness was not lost. Significant injury suggests an absence of warning and often loss of consciousness.
- Were there other symptoms (e.g. nausea, sweating, palpitations, chest pain, breathlessness, etc.)?
- Were there any convulsive movements? Any tongue biting, urinary incontinence?
- The detailed observations of witnesses should be sought of events prior to, during and after the collapse. What colour was the patient before during and after the attack? Was the patient pale, flushed, blue, sweating? Was the patient's pulse palpable during attacks?

Syncope can be defined as a sudden, brief loss of consciousness associated with loss of postural tone and spontaneous recovery. This should be distinguished from episodes without loss of consciousness or postural tone, which are often described as dizziness or pre-syncope, or episodes in which the patient describes a sensation of movement of themselves or their surroundings, which is termed vertigo.

## Past medical history

- Any history of cardiovascular disease, neurological disease, pacemaker or epilepsy?

## Drugs

- Is the patient taking any drugs (particularly those that might produce hypotension)?
- Establish the patient's alcohol history.

## Functional enquiry

It is particularly important to determine the presence of cardiovascular disease and so a full functional enquiry seeking symptoms such as palpitations, chest pain, breathlessness, etc., must be undertaken.

## Family history

A family history of sudden death might suggest the presence of long QT syndrome or an inherited cardiomyopathy.

## Examination

- Does the patient look well or unwell?
- Has the patient made a complete recovery?
- Any continuing shock, hypotension or neurological deficit?
- A full examination should be undertaken with particular attention being paid to the pulse, BP, including postural measurements, presence of cardiac murmurs and any neurological signs. Look for signs of trauma sustained during the collapse including tongue biting.

**Table 66.1** Differential diagnosis of collapse

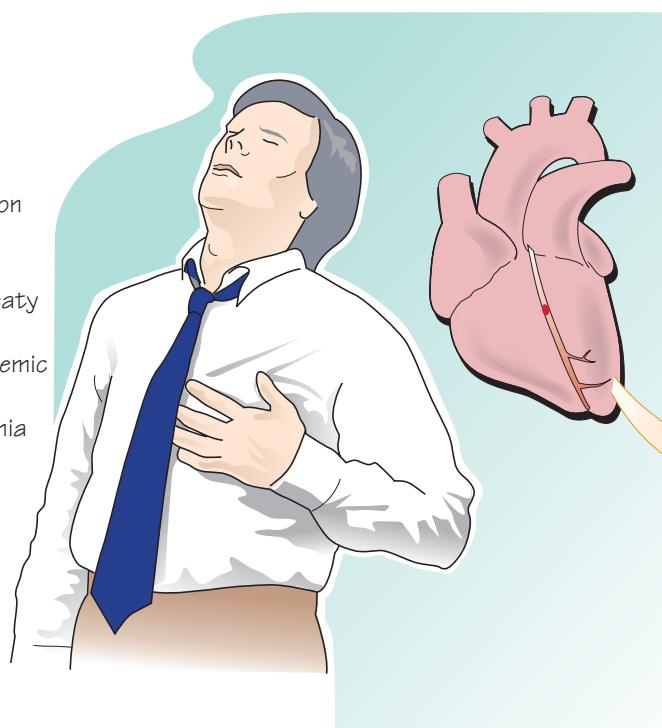
	Seizure	Vasovagal syncope	Cardiac cause
Precipitant	None (stroboscopic lights)	Pain, exercise Micturition, stress Prolonged standing	None?
Premonitory symptoms	Aura? None	Sweating Nausea	None Chest pain Palpitations
During event	Rhythmic movements Urinary incontinence Tongue biting	Rarely movements Pale	Pale Rarely movements
After event	Disorientation Injury? Unconscious > 5 min	Rarely injured	Flushed Injury?

**Table 66.2** Syncope: etiology

Neurally-Mediated	Orthostatic	Cardiac Arrhythmia	Structural Cardio-Pulmonary	Other
• Vasovagal	• Drug Induced	• Brady	• Aortic Stenosis	• Psychogenic
• Carotid Sinus	• ANS Failure	• Sick sinus	• HOCM	• Metabolic e.g. hyper-ventilation
• Situational	• Primary	• AV block	• Pulmonary Hypertension	• Neurological
• Cough	• Secondary	• Tachy		
• Post-micturition		• VT		
		• SVT		
		• Long QT Syndrome		
24%	11%	14%	4%	12%
Unknown Cause = 34%				

**History**

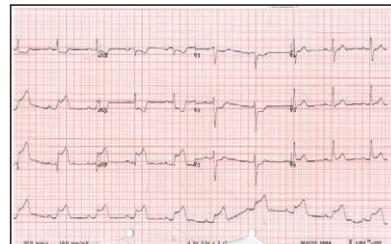
- Chest pain
  - Crushing
  - Heavy
  - Tight
- Relationship to exertion
- Precipitant
- Relief with rest/GTN
- Nausea, vomiting, sweaty
  
- Risk factors for ischaemic heart disease
  - Hypercholesterolaemia
  - Smoking
  - Family history
  - Hypertension

**Complications**

- Death
- Heart failure
- Ventricular septal defect
- Arrhythmias
- Ventricular rupture
- Pericarditis

**Examination**

- Well/unwell
- Pulse: rhythm, rate
- Blood pressure
- Signs of heart failure
- Murmurs

**Chest X-ray****ECG****Important differential diagnoses include:**

- Myocardial infarction
- Unstable angina
- Angina
- Pulmonary embolus
- Aortic dissection
- Pericarditis
- Oesophageal spasm/reflux
- Pancreatitis
- Aortic aneurysm
- Biliary colic

Myocardial infarction and angina are usually due to coronary atherosclerosis. They are very common: myocardial infarction has an incidence of 0.5% per year whilst angina has a prevalence of over 15% in people over 65 years of age. Angina may be described as stable in which attacks of chest pain are usually short-lived (<15 minutes), provoked by exertion and alleviated by rest and/or GTN. Unstable angina is longer lasting chest pain on minimal or no exertion. It may be impossible to distinguish from myocardial infarction on clinical grounds alone and may be termed acute coronary syndrome. Myocardial infarction usually produces severe pain or tightness that lasts >15 minutes and may be accompanied by nausea, sweating and vomiting.

**History**

- **Angina** is classically a central tight, chest pain or discomfort:
  - induced by exertion or more rarely emotion
  - radiates to the jaw and to the arms

- relieved by rest and by GTN tablets or spray
- sometimes experienced as exertional breathlessness.
- **Myocardial infarction** produces a more severe, longer lasting pain or tightness:
  - radiates to the arms or jaw
  - accompanied by nausea, vomiting, sweating and anxiety
  - complicated by heart failure, shock and arrhythmias
  - rarely presents without chest pain (particularly in the elderly or diabetic) as, e.g. new onset arrhythmia or worsening heart failure or even postoperative confusion.
- Ask in detail about the chest pains and other symptoms. Consider the possibility of other causes of chest pain, such as pulmonary emboli, aortic dissection and oesophageal reflux.
- Consider possible contraindications to thrombolysis (e.g. active bleeding, bleeding tendency, known peptic ulcer, recent stroke, recent operation, severe hypertension, previous allergic reaction).

## Past medical history

- Any angina, myocardial infarction or any other cardiac disease?
- Any angioplasties, coronary artery bypass grafts, previous thrombolysis?
- Any diabetes mellitus?

## Drugs

- Is the patient taking nitrates, aspirin, beta-blockers, ACE inhibitors or GTN tablets/spray?
- Is the patient taking any treatments for hypertension or hypercholesterolaemia?

## Allergies

- Any allergies to streptokinase, aspirin or any other medication?

## Family history

- Any family history of IHD or sudden death?
- Any family history of other causes of chest pain (e.g. aortic dissection)?

## Social history

What is the patient's occupation and does angina interfere with their life or work?

## Examination

- Does the patient need immediate resuscitation?
- Ensure airway and breathing. Give oxygen. Obtain intravenous access, ECG monitor and 12-lead ECG.
- Does the patient look unwell?
- Is the patient in pain, distressed, comfortable, vomiting, anxious, sweaty, pale, cyanosed or tachypnoeic?
- Is the patient well perfused or with cool peripheries?
- Any stigmata of hypercholesterolaemia or smoking?
- Is there anaemia or cyanosis or surgical scars (e.g. from CABG)?
- *Pulse:* check the rate, rhythm, volume and character. Are the peripheral pulses present and equal?
- *BP:* are both arms equal?
- *JVP:* is it elevated?
- *Chest movements:* is there symmetrical expansion?
- *Apex beat?*
- Is the pain reproduced/exaggerated by chest wall pressure?
- *Auscultation:* lung fields clear? Any added sounds – crackles, rub or wheeze? Check heart sounds for murmurs, pericardial rub and gallop.
- Examine for peripheral *oedema*, ankles and sacrum.
- *Abdomen:* any tenderness, guarding, rebound, bowel sounds, organomegaly, aneurysm?
- Any *urine output?*

- CNS: any weakness, focal deficits?
- An *ECG* is vital in the diagnosis of myocardial infarction.
- Examine carefully for the possible consequences of myocardial infarction:
  - arrhythmias
  - cardiogenic shock
  - heart failure (especially pulmonary oedema)
  - valvular dysfunction (especially mitral regurgitation) and, rarely, ventriculoseptal defect.
- If the patient has chest pain and shock or is unwell, consider myocardial infarction, unstable angina, pneumothorax (?tension), pulmonary embolus and aortic dissection.

## Evidence

In patients undergoing coronary angiography for chest pain, patients who had normal coronary angiograms were compared with patients with significant stenoses on coronary angiography. The consistent reproduction of pain by exercise and the duration of pain for >5 minutes was much more common in the patients with abnormal coronary angiography (Cooke *et al.* 1997).

### There is an increased probability of myocardial infarction if:

- chest pain is radiating to both arms simultaneously (LR, 7.1)
- there is radiation of pain to the right arm or shoulder (LR, 4.7)
- there is radiation of pain to the left arm (LR, 2.3)
- the patient is sweating (LR, 2.0)
- the patient has nausea or is vomiting (LR, 1.9)
- the patient has a history of myocardial infarction (LR, 1.5–3.0)
- the pain is worse than previous angina or similar to previous myocardial infarction (LR, 1.9).

### There is a decreased probability of myocardial infarction if:

- the patient has pleuritic chest pain (LR, 0.2)
- the chest pain is produced by palpation (LR, 0.3)
- there is sharp or stabbing pain (LR, 0.3)
- there is positional chest pain (LR, 0.3).

Cooke RA, Smeeton N & Chambers JB. Comparative study of chest pain characteristics in patients with normal and abnormal coronary angiograms. *Heart* 1997; **78**: 142–6.

Panju AA, Hemmelgarn BR, Guyatt GH & Simel DL. The rational clinical examination. Is this patient having a myocardial infarction? *JAMA* 1998; **280**: 1256–63.

Swap CJ & Nagurney JT. Value and limitations of chest pain history in the evaluation of patients with suspected acute coronary syndromes. *JAMA* 2005; **294**: 2623–9.

**History**

Fluid intake↑/Output↓

- Fluid balance charts
- Daily weight
- Fluid intake oral/intravenous
- Fluid loss
  - Haemorrhage
  - Diarrhoea
  - Sweating
  - Vomiting
  - Drains
  - Insensible losses
  - '3rd space'

**Symptoms**

- Thirst
- Lethargy/weakness
- Dry mouth
- Reduced urine output
- Confusion
- Postural dizziness

Hypovolaemia ?

Normovolaemic

Hypovolaemic

**Examination**

- Postural
  - BP fall?
  - Pulse increase?
- Hypotension
- Tachycardia
- Postural dizziness

- Dry axilla
- Dry mucous membranes/tongue
- Pallor
- Increased capillary refill time
- Sunken eyes
- Furrowed tongue
- Confusion
- Weakness
- Reduced skin turgor
- Cool extremities

**Investigations**

- Central venous pressure (CVP)
- Urea
- Creatinine
- Urea:creatinine ratio
- Urine sodium
- Urine specific gravity

The determination of fluid status is vital in the management of many patients. Establishing whether there is hypovolaemia is particularly critical in the bleeding patient, in dehydration, during anaesthesia, in shock, in renal failure, following trauma or postoperatively. As ever, the history provides critical information and there are many useful clinical signs, of which BP, pulse rate and postural change in BP are particularly important and informative. A distinction is often made between patients with salt and water deficiency and those in whom there is simply dehydration. In dehydration, hypovolaemia with signs of circulatory instability may not occur until very severe, whilst volume depletion in which there is sodium and water loss can more rapidly produce dangerous hypovolaemia and circulatory instability, requiring prompt treatment with intravenous saline. In practice, the distinction may be difficult and more important is the recognition and treatment of hypovolaemia.

In otherwise healthy individuals, substantial blood loss or degrees of fluid depletion can be tolerated without very marked findings on clinical examination and subsequent losses can lead to catastrophic shock.

### History

- Take a full history of any fluid gains and losses.
- Obtain information from the patient, relatives, nurses, fluid balance charts, prescription charts, anaesthetic records and daily weights.
- The symptoms of hypovolaemia can include:
  - general lethargy and weakness
  - postural dizziness

- thirst
- dry mouth
- reduced urine output
- feeling cold
- shivering
- shortness of breath and altered mental status if profound.

### Examination

- Of central importance are:
  - the level of BP
  - the presence of a fall in BP on standing or sitting upright
  - tachycardia (or more rarely a bradycardia with very severe hypovolaemia)
  - postural changes in pulse rate.
- Careful documentation of weight change can be invaluable in determining fluid gains or losses.
- Other signs that should be sought are:
  - the level of JVP
  - pallor
  - the adequacy of peripheral perfusion
  - the dryness of mucous membranes
  - the presence of pulmonary and peripheral oedema.
- Investigations may be helpful, including: urea, creatinine, urea/creatinine ratio, sodium, haemoglobin, urine sodium, urine osmolarity, chest X-ray, pulse oximetry, CVP and PCWP by Swan-Ganz catheter.
- **If doubt about volume status, consider CVP monitoring.**

- Vital additional information can be gained from the measurement of CVP by insertion of a central venous line, or determination of pulmonary artery capillary wedge pressure (by the insertion of a Swan-Ganz catheter). However, because of the difficulties and risks in those patients with collapsed veins, central venous line insertion should not be attempted in those patients with hypovolaemia until resuscitation with fluid has taken place.
- **If hypovolaemia is present, treat promptly with intravenous fluids.**

## Evidence

Normal response to standing upright:

- increase in heart rate by 10 b.p.m.
- slight fall in systolic BP (3 mmHg)
- slight rise in diastolic BP (5 mmHg).

However, a fall in systolic BP >10 mmHg is found in 10% of normovolaemic individuals. In addition, severe postural dizziness or rise in pulse >30 b.p.m. on standing has specificity of 96% for hypovolaemia.

In elderly patients, signs of confusion, non-fluent speech, weakness, dry mucous membranes, dry tongue, furrowed tongue, sunken eyes, dry axilla and delayed capillary refill are associated with severe dehydration.

McGee S, Abernethy WB IIIrd & Simel DL. Is this patient hypovolemic? *JAMA* 1999; **281**: 1022-9.

**Right ventricular failure (RVF)**

**Symptoms**

- Peripheral oedema
- Ascites → abdominal distension
- Pleural effusions → Breathlessness
- Hepatic pain

**Signs**

- Elevated JVP
- Oedema
- Ascites
- Hepatomegaly
- Pleural effusions

**Left ventricular failure (LVF)**

- Breathlessness
- Orthopnoea
- PND
- Reduced exercise tolerance
- Cough

Does patient need immediate resuscitation?  
What is the underlying cause of the heart failure?

## History

- The symptoms of heart failure are conventionally divided into left ventricular failure (LVF), right ventricular failure (RVF) or both (congestive cardiac or biventricular failure).
- Heart failure is not a diagnosis and the underlying cause(s) should always be sought.** It is a very common reason for hospital admission accounting for 5% of admissions to medical wards.
- Left ventricular failure:**
  - breathlessness
  - orthopnoea
  - paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea ('Do you have problems with your breathing at night?', 'Tell me more, How many pillows do you sleep with? Why?')
  - less commonly wheeze, cough, frothy pink sputum
  - reduced exercise tolerance.
- Right ventricular failure:**
  - peripheral oedema especially ankles, legs, sacrum
  - ascites
  - rarely jaundice, hepatic pain, nausea and reduced appetite (due to bowel oedema)
  - pleural effusions.
- Acute heart failure** may present with sudden and severe shortness of breath, cyanosis and distress.

- *Chronic heart failure* can be associated with reduced exercise tolerance, peripheral oedema, lethargy, malaise and weight loss ('cardiac cachexia').

## Past medical history

- Any chest pain? (Any recent myocardial infarction?)
- Any cardiac disease (especially myocardial infarction, angina, murmurs, arrhythmias or known valvular heart disease)?
- Any risk factors for atherosclerosis?
- Any respiratory or renal disease?
- Any cardiomyopathy?

## Drugs

- What medication is the patient taking? Have there been any recent changes to the patient's medication: loop diuretics, spironolactone, NSAIDs, ACE inhibitors, beta-blockers, negative inotropes, digoxin?
- Is the patient taking any drugs that can produce cardiomyopathy (doxorubicin, cocaine)?
- Does the patient smoke?
- What is the patient's alcohol intake? (Consider the possibility of alcoholic cardiomyopathy.)

## Functional enquiry

- Ask about exercise tolerance (e.g. flights of stairs, distance walking on the flat).
- Assess salt and water intake.
- Consider the possibility of renal failure and/or renal artery stenosis?

## Examination

The examination should aim to establish the presence of heart failure and its likely aetiology.

## Causes

### • Causes of heart failure include:

- IHD (65%)
- hypertensive heart disease (10%)
- valvular heart disease (10%)
- cardiomyopathy (10%)
- myocarditis (2%)
- pericardial effusion/constriction (1%).

### • Exacerbating factors of heart failure include:

- anaemia
- NSAIDs
- renal impairment
- arrhythmias.

### • Also remember non-cardiac causes of pulmonary oedema/heart failure:

- high output states (e.g. thyrotoxicosis)
- fluid overload (e.g. intravenous fluids, renal failure)
- anaemia
- phaeochromocytoma
- allergic reactions (e.g. contrast)
- ARDS
- heroin.

### Could the patient have tamponade due to a pericardial effusion?

- Four clinical features occur in the majority of patients with tamponade: breathlessness, tachycardia, pulsus paradoxus and elevated jugular venous pressure.

## Consequences

- Is the patient unwell, breathless, in pain, anxious, in need of immediate resuscitation?

### • The signs of left ventricular failure are:

- cold and clammy skin
- tachycardia
- gallop rhythm
- tachypnoea, cyanosis, frothy pink sputum, wheeze
- displaced apex beat
- pulsus alternans (very rare)

- hypotension or hypertension

- cardiogenic shock.

### • The signs of right ventricular failure are:

- elevated JVP
- peripheral oedema
- ascites
- hepatomegaly
- pleural effusions.

## Evidence

Jugular venous distension (which = 85–100% probability of increased filling pressure) is very helpful. Dyspnoea, orthopnoea, tachycardia, decreased systolic or pulse pressure, third heart sound, crackles, abdominojugular reflux and oedema are somewhat helpful (Badgett *et al.* 1997). ECG and chest X-rays can add considerably to the specificity of detection of left ventricular dysfunction and should be considered essential in the assessment of any patient with suspected heart failure.

## New York Heart Association grading of chronic heart failure severity

**I** Unlimited exercise tolerance.

**II** Symptoms on extra exertion (e.g. using stairs).

**III** Symptoms on mild exercise (e.g. walking).

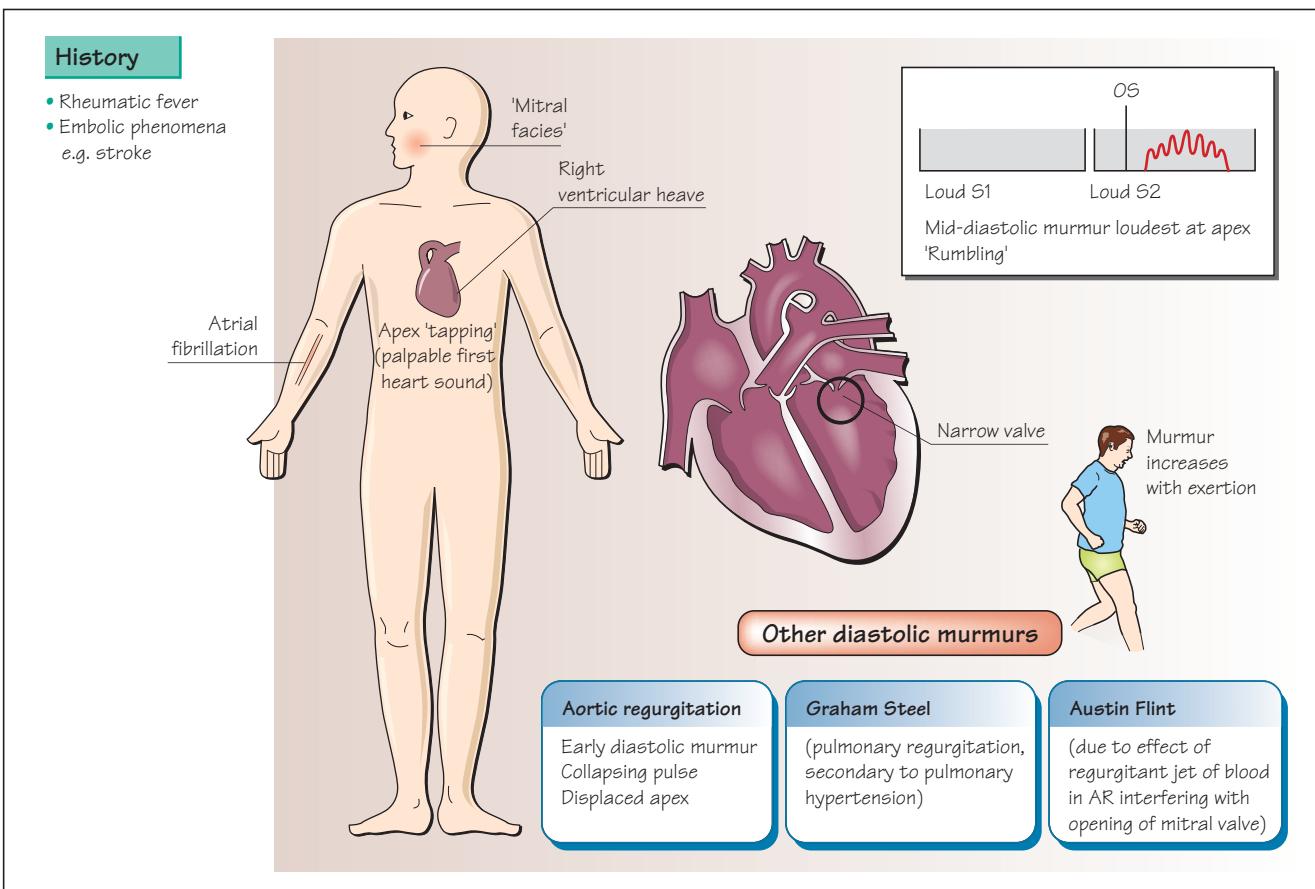
**IV** Symptoms on minimal exertion or at rest.

## Common errors

- Patients with severe LVF may be hypertensive (due to intense vasoconstriction and fluid overload).
- The wheezy, breathless patient may have LVF (not new onset asthma).
- Always define the underlying cause or exacerbation of the heart failure as it may be correctable (e.g. anaemia, valvular heart disease, tachyarrhythmia, etc.).
- The presence of pulsus paradoxus greater than 10 mmHg in a patient with a pericardial effusion increases the likelihood of tamponade (LR: 3.3), while a pulsus paradoxus of 10 mmHg or less greatly lowers the likelihood (LR: 0.03).

Badgett RG, Lucey CR & Mulrow CD. Can the clinical examination diagnose left-sided heart failure in adults? *JAMA* 1997; **277**: 1712–9.

Roy CL *et al.* Does this patient with a pericardial effusion have cardiac tamponade? *JAMA* 2007; **297**: 1810–18.



Mitral stenosis is the narrowing of the mitral valve. It should be particularly looked for in patients with a history of rheumatic fever, new onset atrial fibrillation and unexplained pulmonary hypertension.

### History

- Mitral stenosis may present with slowly progressive breathlessness, reduced exercise tolerance, cough, haemoptysis, recurrent bronchitis, ankle swelling and palpitations.
- There may have been embolic episodes (e.g. stroke/TIA).
- Rarely there are symptoms of endocarditis.

### Past medical history

- Any rheumatic fever?
- Previous medical examinations: any murmurs noted?

### Examination

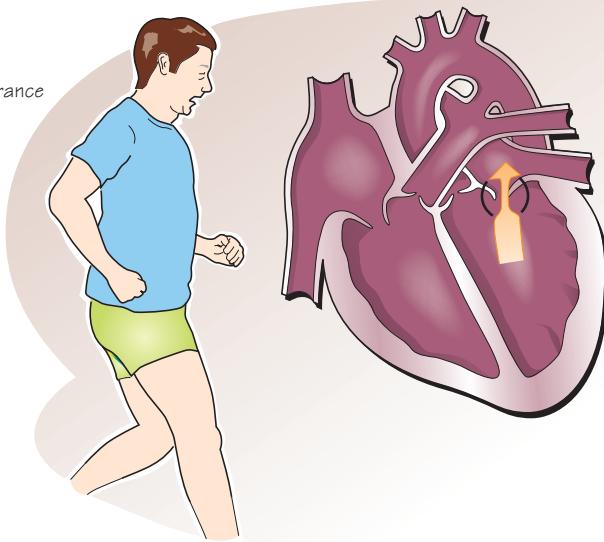
- Examine for mitral facies.
- Examine for atrial fibrillation.

- Is there a tapping apex (palpable first heart sound)?
- Is there a loud first heart sound?
- Is there a loud pulmonary second sound?
- Is there an opening snap?
- Auscultate for a mid-diastolic murmur, low-pitched rumble (best heard at apex and in left lateral position).
- Is murmur more easily audible with exertion?
- The patient may have a parasternal heave from pulmonary hypertension and right ventricular hypertrophy.

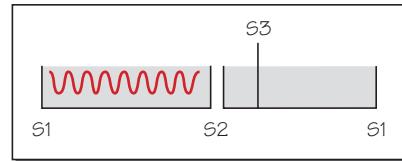
[For those interested in some of the more unusual murmurs and their eponyms such as Austin Flint and Graham Steel, see Ma I and Tireney LM. Name that murmur – eponyms for the astute auscultician. *NEJM* 2010; **363**: 2164–8.]

**History**

- Breathlessness
- Reduced exercise tolerance
- Orthopnoea
- PND
- Angina

**Examination**

- Pulse
  - Good volume
  - ? Atrial fibrillation
- Pansystolic murmur
  - Apex→Axilla
- Apex beat displaced
- Signs of LVF
  - Gallop rhythm
  - Pulmonary crackles
  - Tachycardia



Mitral regurgitation is the abnormal regurgitation of blood through an incompetent mitral valve. It is usually discovered incidentally but it may be found during the examination of a patient with worsening heart failure. It can be due to progressive left ventricular dilatation, rheumatic fever, as a consequence of mitral valve prolapse or it can present acutely following chordal rupture due to ischaemia.

**History**

- Mitral regurgitation may present with increasing breathlessness, reduced exercise tolerance, orthopnoea, PND or angina.
- Any symptoms of infective endocarditis?

**Past medical history**

- Any IHD?
- Any rheumatic fever?
- Any known mitral valve prolapse?

**Examination**

- Any signs of infective endocarditis?

- The pulse usually has good volume; there may be atrial fibrillation.
- Any signs of left ventricular failure (gallop rhythm, pulmonary crackles, tachycardia)?
- Is the apex beat displaced?
- The pansystolic murmur is usually loudest at apex with radiation to axilla.

**Mitral valve prolapse**

- The patient may have a mid-systolic click and/or a systolic murmur:
  - 50% have click
  - 40% have late systolic murmur
  - 15% have pansystolic murmur
  - 20% have neither click nor murmur
  - 7% have severe incompetence.
- It is very common (up to 5% of the population).
- Murmur is increased with exercise or with the Valsalva manoeuvre.

**History**

- Chest pain
- Syncope (especially on exertion)
- Fatigue
- Murmur

**Causes**

- Rheumatic valve disease
- Bicuspid aortic valve
- Degenerative
- Congenital

**Examination**

**Carotid pulse**

- Low volume
- Slow rising
- Plateau character

**Aortic stenosis**

- Murmur
- Radiation to carotids
- Thrill

Diagram illustrating the auscultation findings for a patient with aortic stenosis. It shows a timeline from S1 to S2. At S1, there is a normal first heart sound. Between S1 and S2, there is a harsh ejection systolic murmur. After S2, there is a quiet period. A thrill is indicated by an orange arrow pointing to the area between S1 and S2.

Aortic stenosis is narrowing of the aortic valve. It is most commonly due to progressive calcification of a degenerative or bicuspid valve. Look specifically for aortic stenosis in any patient with angina, shortness of breath or syncope.

### History

Aortic stenosis may present with angina, breathlessness, syncope (including exertional syncope), sudden death or as an incidentally discovered murmur. There may be a gradual worsening of symptoms.

### Past medical history

- Was the murmur previously audible? (Consider bicuspid aortic valve with progressive calcification.)
- Any history of rheumatic fever?

### Functional enquiry

- Does the patient have shortness of breath?
- Does the patient have reduced exercise tolerance?
- Does the patient have chest pain?
- Did the patient have any collapse, especially exercise-induced collapse?
- Does the patient have a fever?

### Family history

Any family history of valvular disease?

### Examination

- **Pulse:** check for low volume, slow rising.
- **BP:** check for narrow pulse pressure.
- **Apex:** check for heaving.
- Check thrill.
- **Auscultation:** check for harsh ejection systolic murmur radiating to carotids and aortic area.
  - Is the aortic second sound soft or absent?
  - Check for fever, stigmata of infective endocarditis.
  - NB. Particularly in the elderly patient, signs may be lacking.
  - Murmur can decrease in intensity as aortic stenosis becomes more severe and left ventricular performance declines.
  - Determine the severity of aortic stenosis.

*In mild aortic stenosis:*

- pulse character normal
- normal BP
- murmur is not loud and radiates minimally to neck
- normal second heart sound
- no thrill.

*Distinguish from mitral regurgitation:*

- apex is thrusting
- first heart sound is soft and there may be a third heart sound
- murmur is pansystolic and radiates to axilla.

*Distinguish from hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy:*

- pulse may be jerky in character
- apex may have double impulse
- loud fourth heart sound
- ejection systolic murmur which does not radiate to neck but increases in intensity with Valsalva manoeuvre and during squatting to standing.

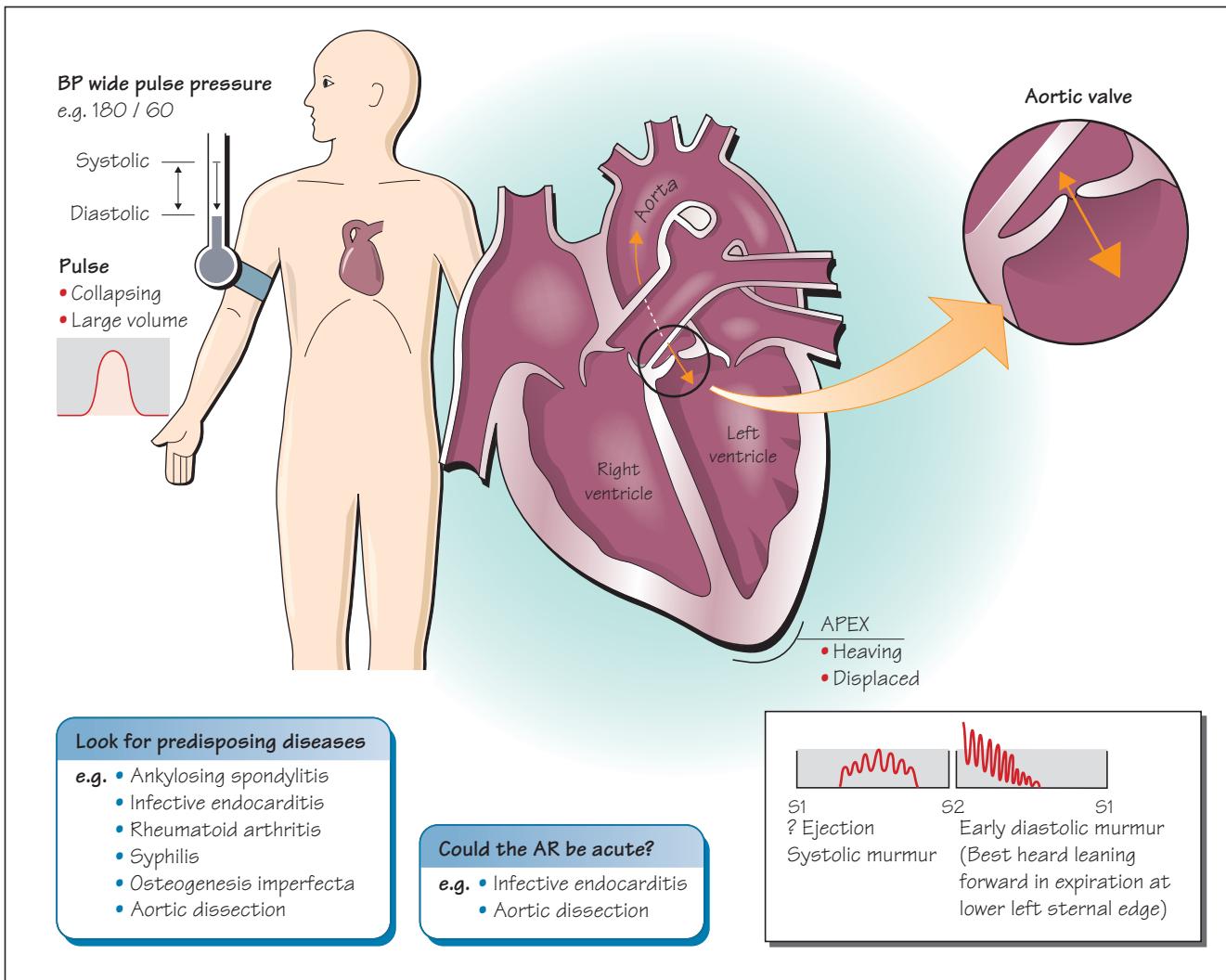
## Evidence

Absence of murmur over right clavicle helps to rule out aortic stenosis (LR, 0.1; 95% CI, 0.01–0.44). If any three of the following four findings are present, then LR of moderate to severe aortic stenosis = 40 (95% CI, 6.6–240]):

- 1 Slow carotid artery upstroke.
- 2 Reduced carotid artery volume.
- 3 Maximal murmur intensity at second right intercostal space.
- 4 Reduced intensity of second heart sound.

Etchells E, Bell C & Robb K. Does this patient have an abnormal systolic murmur? *JAMA* 1997; **277**: 564–71.

Etchells E, Glenns V, Shadowitz S, Bell C & Siu S. A bedside clinical prediction rule for detecting moderate or severe aortic stenosis. *J Gen Intern Med* 1998; **13**: 699–704.



Aortic regurgitation is the disorder of the aortic valve in which an incompetent valve allows the regurgitation of blood back into the left ventricle. This may be due to incompetence of the valve leaflets themselves or dilatation of the aortic root. It should be specifically examined for in any patient with a low diastolic BP, a wide pulse pressure or who has symptoms that could represent endocarditis (e.g. fever, embolic phenomena).

### History

- Aortic regurgitation may produce symptoms of breathlessness, reduced exercise tolerance, palpitations or other symptoms of cardiac failure. There may be a very gradual deterioration in symptoms. Acute aortic regurgitation, caused, for example, by infective endocarditis, may present with acute onset of breathlessness and shock.
- Are there any symptoms of infective endocarditis or aortic dissection?

### Past medical history

- Any history of:
- rheumatic fever?
  - rheumatoid arthritis?
  - ankylosing spondylitis?
  - syphilis?
  - osteogenesis imperfecta?
  - Behçet's syndrome?
  - known heart murmur (perhaps congenital bicuspid valve)?

### Examination

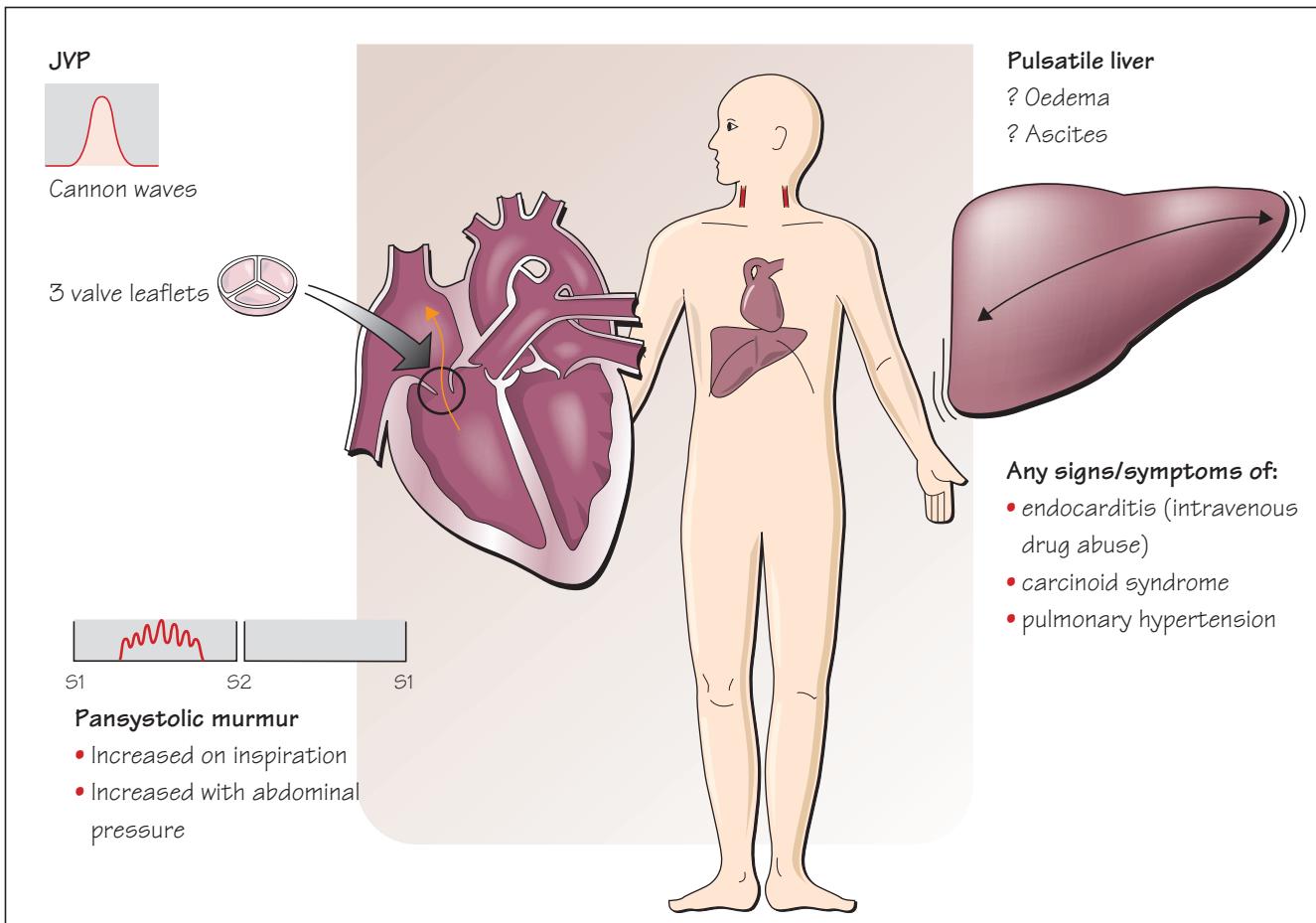
- Are there any signs of endocarditis or aortic dissection? Are there any signs of tertiary syphilis, ankylosing spondylitis, rheumatoid arthritis or Marfan's syndrome?
- Is there a fever?
- Is there a collapsing pulse with large volume?

- Is there wide pulse pressure (>50 mmHg) and low diastolic BP?
- Heaving apex: hyperdynamic and displaced?
- Is there an early diastolic murmur? (This is best heard at left sternal edge with patient leaning forward and with breath held at end of expiration.) (The patient may also have an ejection systolic murmur [without any coexistent aortic stenosis] due to high blood flow across valve.)
- Other eponymous signs (mostly only useful for showing off once the diagnosis has been made):
  - Corrigan's pulse ('water hammer' pulse) and sign (visible, vigorous arterial pulsations in neck).
  - Quincke's sign (visible nail bed pulsation).
  - De Musset's sign (head bobbing in time with the heart beat).
  - Duroziez's sign (compression over the femoral artery with the stethoscope diaphragm produces a diastolic murmur).

- Hill's sign (BP higher [>20 mmHg] in lower than higher extremities when horizontal).
- Austin–Flint murmur (diastolic murmur due to effect of regurgitant jet of blood interfering with opening of mitral valve).

## Evidence

- If no aortic regurgitation murmur is heard (by a cardiologist), LR for moderate to severe aortic regurgitation is 0.1.
  - If a typical aortic regurgitation murmur is heard, LR for moderate or greater aortic regurgitation is 4.0–8.3.
- Choudhry NK & Etchells EE. The rational clinical examination.  
Does this patient have aortic regurgitation? *JAMA* 1999; **281**: 2231–8.



Tricuspid regurgitation is regurgitation of blood through an incompetent tricuspid valve.

### History

The patient may present with symptoms of right-sided heart failure, such as oedema, abdominal swelling due to ascites, uncomfortable hepatic congestion or a pulsatile abdominal mass (liver).

### Past medical history

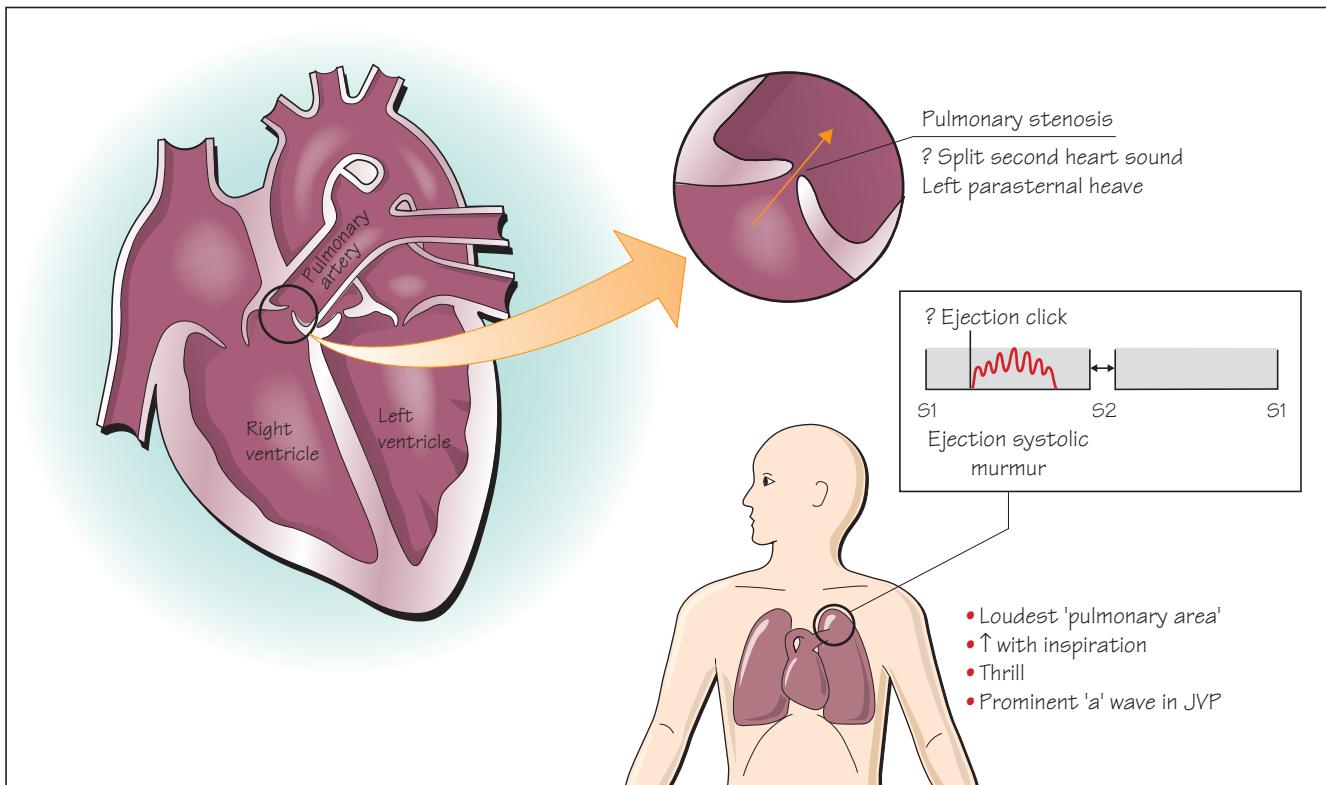
Most commonly tricuspid regurgitation is due to right heart failure and dilatation (itself due to left heart failure). It is rarely caused by:

- endocarditis (intravenous drug abuse?)
- carcinoid syndrome (e.g. flushing)
- pulmonary hypertension

- congenital (Ebstein's anomaly)
- slimming drugs.

### Examination

- Is there a fever?
- Are there splinter haemorrhages and other signs of infective endocarditis?
- Is the JVP elevated with prominent V waves?
- Is there a parasternal right ventricular heave?
- Is there a pansystolic murmur at left sternal edge increased on inspiration or with abdominal pressure (hepatojugular reflux)?
- Is there an enlarged, pulsatile liver?
- Is there oedema or ascites?



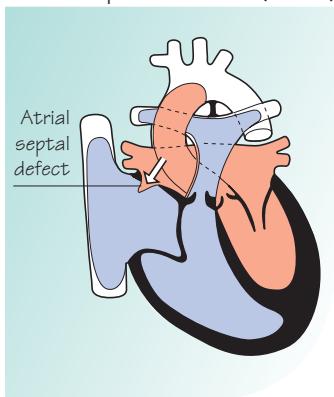
Pulmonary stenosis is a rare condition of the narrowing of the pulmonary valve, which may be congenital (<10% of cases of congenital heart disease) and associated with Turner's syndrome, Noonan's syndrome, Williams' syndrome or tetralogy of Fallot, or acquired due to rheumatic fever. It may present with breathlessness or other symptoms of cardiac failure.

### Examination

- Is there left parasternal heave?
- Is the ejection systolic murmur (+ thrill?) loudest over pulmonary area, and is it louder during inspiration (may be an ejection click)?
- The second sound may be split.

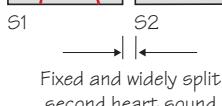
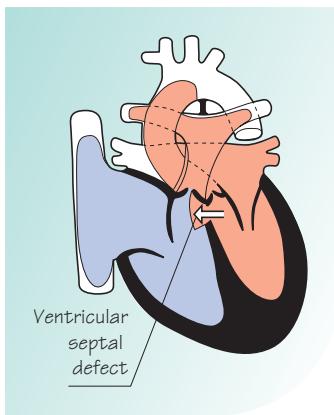
### History

- Any known murmur?
- Any symptoms of cardiac failure?

**Atrioseptal defect (ASD)**

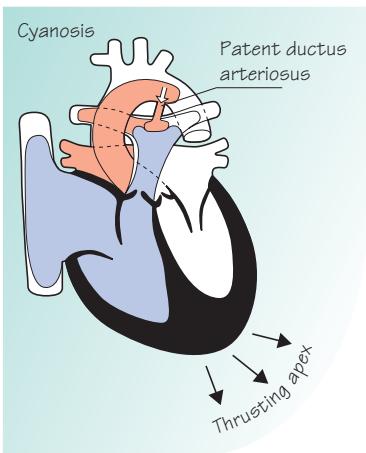
- Atrial fibrillation
- Elevated JVP
- Right ventricular heave
- Signs of endocarditis?

Ejection systolic murmur pulmonary area

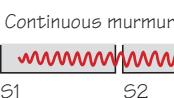
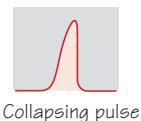
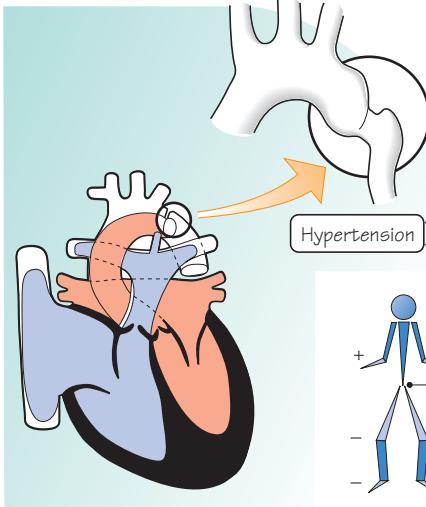
**Ventriculoseptal defect (VSD)**

- Clubbing
- Cyanosis
- Signs of endocarditis?
- Thrill

Pansystolic murmur Loudest at left sternal edge Often widely radiating

**Patent ductus arteriosus**

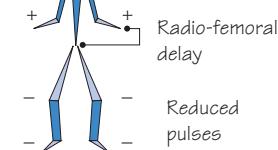
- Left parasternal heave

**Aortic coarctation**

- Bruits
- Left ventricular hypertrophy

Retinopathy

Proteinuria

**Atrioseptal defect****History**

A murmur may be discovered incidentally, or the chronic left-to-right shunt may lead to right ventricular strain with the gradual development of symptoms of predominantly right-sided heart failure with peripheral oedema, breathlessness or palpitations. Atrioseptal defect accounts for one-third of congenital cardiac defects.

Vary rarely, there may be a history of symptoms of endocarditis.

**Past medical history**

Any previously heard murmur?

**Family history**

Any family history of congenital heart defects?

**Examination**

Is there:

- atrial fibrillation?
- an elevated JVP?
- a right ventricular heave?
- a widely split second heart sound?
- an ejection systolic murmur (pulmonary area)?
- peripheral oedema?
- hepatomegaly?
- signs of endocarditis?

**Ventriculoseptal defect****History**

This defect may be congenital or acquired (usually caused by ischaemic septal rupture following myocardial infarction). Again, a murmur

may be heard incidentally or progressive symptoms of heart failure, breathlessness or palpitations may develop. It is the commonest congenital heart defect.

Vary rarely, there may be a history of symptoms of endocarditis.

### Past medical history

Any previously heard murmur?

### Family history

Any family history of congenital heart defects?

### Examination

- Is the systolic murmur loudest at left sternal edge but widely radiating? The murmur is often very loud.
- Any signs of heart failure?
- If this is Eisenmenger's syndrome (reversal of shunt due to pulmonary hypertension), examine for cyanosis and clubbing. The murmur is quieter.
- Are there signs of endocarditis?
- Acute VSD following myocardial infarction may present with shock, hypotension, cyanosis, a loud new murmur and right-sided failure. Differential diagnosis includes acute mitral regurgitation due to chordal rupture in which there is usually pronounced orthopnoea and pulmonary oedema.

### Aortic coarctation

This congenital condition of aortic narrowing may present with hypertension or be recognized due to impaired pulses in the legs.

### History

The young adult might (very rarely) have symptoms of claudication, known hypertension or stroke. There is often associated aortic valve

disease. Look specifically for a coarctation in any young patient with hypertension.

### Examination

- Are there reduced leg pulses or radial femoral delay?
- Is there hypertension in the upper limbs and reduced BP in lower limbs?
- Is there left ventricular hypertrophy?
- Are there any widespread bruits over chest due to collaterals?
- Any evidence of end-organ damage from hypertension (e.g. proteinuria, hypertensive retinopathy)?

### Patent ductus arteriosus

This usually presents during infancy. It does occasionally become noticed during adulthood but the clinical signs may be subtle. It can present with breathlessness or cyanosis. It constitutes 10% of cases of congenital heart disease.

### History

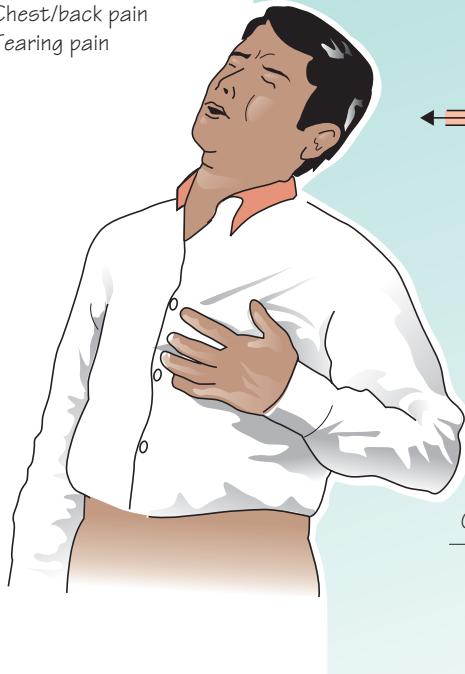
- Is there a known murmur?
- Is there breathlessness?
- Patent ductus arteriosus can develop into Eisenmenger's syndrome or infective endocarditis.

### Examination

- Is there cyanosis?
- Is the pulse collapsing in character?
- Is the apex thrusting in character with left parasternal heave?
- Is there a continuous 'machinery' murmur, widespread but loudest in the pulmonary area?
- Consider the possibility of other cardiac defects.

**Classical history**

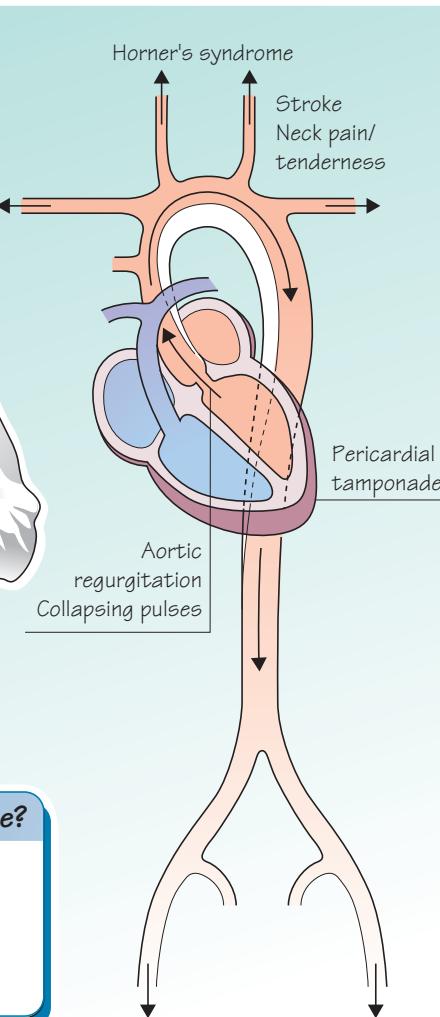
- Sudden onset of pain
- Chest/back pain
- Tearing pain



Horner's syndrome

Stroke  
Neck pain/  
tendernessAortic  
regurgitation  
Collapsing pulsesPericardial  
tamponade**Marfan's syndrome?**

- Tall
- Arm span increased
- High arched palate
- Arachnodactyl
- Lens dislocation

**Other presentations**

- Stroke
- Collapse
- Chest pain
- Abdominal pain
- Limb ischaemia
- BP difference between arms
- Hypertension (or hypotension)
- Sweating
- Nausea
- Vomiting
- Shortness of breath
- Reduced or absent pulses



Aortic dissection is a split in the wall of the aorta. Blood can enter this split and lead to vessel occlusion, aortic regurgitation and blood in the pericardial space. It is relatively rare with an incidence of 3/100 000 per year, but unrecognized or untreated it has a very high mortality rate. Consider the possibility of aortic dissection in any patient with chest pain or collapse.

**History**

The **classical** description of the pain of aortic dissection is of a sudden (instantaneous), severe, tearing pain located in the back (often interscapular region). However, other presentations occur: aortic dissection may present with sudden death, collapse, stroke, central anterior chest pain (mimicking acute myocardial infarction), abdominal or leg pain.

Accompanying symptoms may include nausea, sweating, vomiting and shortness of breath. The dissection can spread to involve other arteries such as the carotids (producing neck pain and tenderness or stroke), radial or femoral arteries (producing acute limb ischaemia),

spinal arteries (producing paraparesis) or can extend proximally producing pericardial tamponade or acute aortic regurgitation.

**Past medical history**

There may be a history of previous aortic dissection, of hypertension or of conditions such as Marfan's syndrome.

**Family history**

Any family history of Marfan's syndrome?

**Examination**

- Is the patient well or unwell? Is the patient in pain or shocked?
- Check the pulse. Is the pulse equal in both arms? Are there absent peripheral pulses? Any collapsing character (actually rare in acute aortic regurgitation)?
- Check the BP, is it elevated? Are there any differences between the arms?

- Is there tenderness of carotids or of other blood vessels?
- Is there an early diastolic murmur of aortic regurgitation?
- Examine for Horner's syndrome (unilateral partial ptosis, miosis (constricted pupil) and reduced hemifacial sweating).
- Are there any neurological signs (e.g. hemiplegia, paraplegia)?
- Are there any signs of Marfan's syndrome (tall, increased arm span, high arched palate, lens dislocation)?

## Evidence

### Frequency of symptoms and signs (Hagan *et al.* 2000)

- Severe pain of abrupt onset (85%)
- Chest pain (73%)
- Back pain (53%)
- Syncope (9%)
- History of hypertension (70%)
- Marfan's syndrome (5%)
- Hypertension (49%)
- Murmur of aortic regurgitation (32%)
- Pulse deficit (15%)
- Stroke (5%)

### The importance of history (Rosman *et al.* 1998)

A high quality history can contribute substantially to the accuracy of diagnosis of aortic dissection with questions addressing quality of pain, its radiation and sudden intensity at onset increasing the accuracy of diagnosis.

### Inter-arm BP difference in normal patients (Singer & Hollander 1996)

Fifty-three per cent of 610 ambulant patients seen at an emergency department had inter-arm BP differences (BP measured by automated BP monitor) of >10mmHg and 19% had difference of >19mmHg.

Hagan PG, Nienaber CA, Isselbacher EM *et al.* The International Registry of Acute Aortic Dissection (IRAD): new insights into an old disease. *JAMA* 2000; **283**: 897–903.

Rosman HS, Patel S, Borzak S, Paone G & Retter K. Quality of history taking in patients with aortic dissection. *Chest* 1998; **114**: 793–5.

Singer AJ & Hollander JE. Blood pressure. Assessment of interarm differences. *Arch Intern Med* 1996; **156**: 2005–8.

The diagram illustrates a woman with a yellow shirt and purple pants, holding her abdomen in pain. A red circle highlights the area of pain, labeled 'Back pain ?'. To the right, a schematic diagram of the human circulatory system shows the aorta with a large, bulging aneurysm. Arrows indicate blood flow through the vessel.

**History**

- Abdominal pain
- Back pain
- Abdominal mass

**Other vascular disease ?**

- CVA
- MI/angina
- Peripheral vascular disease

**Risk factors**

- Hypertension
- Cholesterol

**Consider**

**ruptured aortic aneurysm**

- In shocked patient
- In patient with known AA
- In patients with sudden-onset abdominal or back pain

**Examination**

- Shock?
- Hypotension
- Tachycardia
- Pallor

- Visible or palpable pulsatile/expansile mass

- ? Bruits

**Symptoms of peripheral vascular disease**

- Pain
- Claudication
- Ulcers
- Emboli

An abdominal aortic aneurysm is an abnormal dilatation of the abdominal aorta and may present acutely with sudden onset of abdominal or back pain, with collapse or syncope or with loin pain. It may be found incidentally as a pulsatile abdominal mass, as a more gradual presentation with back pain or during investigation of peripheral vascular disease. It has a prevalence of 1–2% in people over 50 years of age and a 3–4% prevalence in people over 75 years of age. Risk factors other than age include smoking, a family history of abdominal aortic aneurysm and other atherosclerotic disease. It is present in some surveys in up to 9% of patients with known symptomatic peripheral arterial disease or cerebrovascular disease.

A ruptured or leaking aortic aneurysm should be considered in any patient presenting with the sudden onset of back pain, abdominal pain, shock or collapse. Unusually, it can mimic renal colic and other causes of the acute abdomen, such as pancreatitis and perforated peptic ulcer. The incidence of ruptured aortic aneurysm rises with age and is 20/100 000 in people aged 60–64 years, rising to 180/100 000 in people aged 80–84 years. The risk of rupture increases with aneurysm size and over 5 years the risk is: <4.5 cm = 9%; 4.5–7.0 cm = 35%; >7 cm = 75%.

**History****Past medical history****Family history**

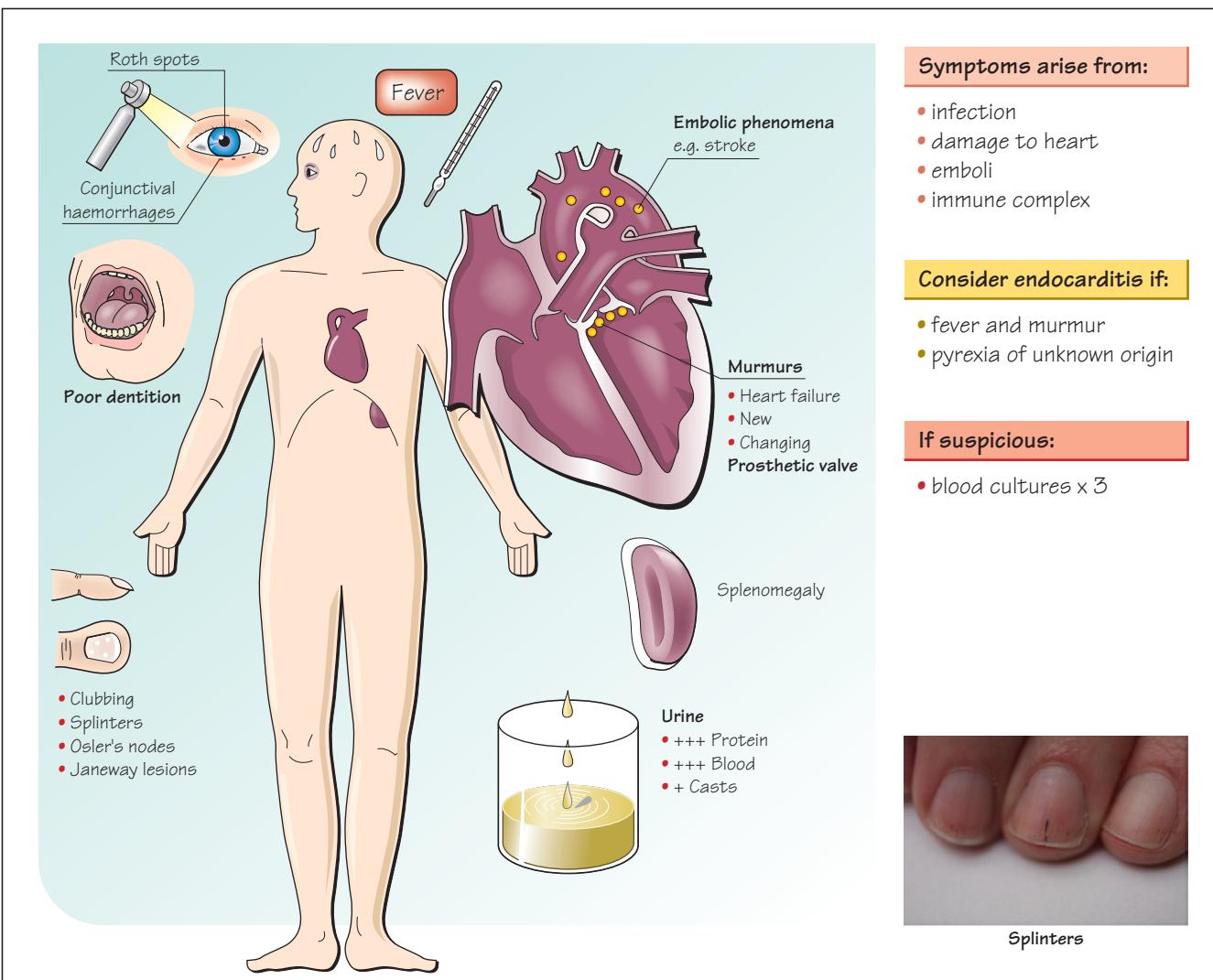
Is there a family history of aneurysms?

## **Examination**

- Is the patient well or unwell? Is the patient shocked, pale and distressed?
- *Examine the pulse:* tachycardia, thready?
- *Measure BP:* hypertension/hypotension?
- *Inspect the abdomen:* distension, pulsatile mass?
- *Palpate the abdomen:* tenderness, palpable, expansile, pulsatile mass?
- *Auscultate the abdomen:* abdominal bruits, femoral bruits? (NB. In ruptured aneurysm or hypotension, pulsatile mass may not be present.)
- Examine the peripheral pulses, especially the femoral pulses.
- **If any patient has abdominal or back pain together with signs of shock, consider a ruptured aortic aneurysm.**

## **Evidence**

- Abdominal palpation for the presence of a widened aorta produced a LR of 15.6 for abdominal aortic aneurysms of >4 cm.
  - Abdominal palpation had a high sensitivity for aneurysms >5 cm in patients without large girth (<100 cm).
- Fink HA, Lederle FA, Roth CS *et al.* The accuracy of physical examination to detect abdominal aortic aneurysm. *Arch Intern Med* 2000; **160**: 833–6.
- Lederle FA & Simel DL. The rational clinical examination. Does this patient have abdominal aortic aneurysm? *JAMA* 1999; **281**: 77–82.



## History

Patients with endocarditis can present with a wide variety of symptoms due to:

- the infection (fever, malaise, night sweats, anorexia, weight loss, rigors, mycotic aneurysms)
- damage to the heart (symptoms of heart failure, palpitations, collapse)
- embolic phenomenon (stroke, arterial embolus)
- immune complex phenomenon (rash, symptoms due to renal failure)
- other symptoms (dyspnoea, cough, myalgia, athralgia, back pain).

The presentation may be chronic with symptoms over weeks, months or acute with rapid deterioration (e.g. with *Staphylococcus aureus* endocarditis affecting the aortic valve). The prevalence of community-acquired endocarditis is 5/100 000 per year but rises to 150–2000/100 000 per year in intravenous drug abusers. The signs of endocarditis should be sought in any patient with unexplained fever,

new murmur, malaise, emboli or renal failure, particularly if there is a known valvular abnormality or prosthetic valve. However, up to a half of patients have no previously known cardiac disorder.

## Past medical history

- Any known cardiac structural abnormality (e.g. known murmur or VSD)?
- Does the patient have a prosthetic valve?
- Any recent procedure that may have allowed bacteraemia (e.g. dental work)?

## Drugs

- Any intravenous drug use?
- Any recent antibiotic treatment?

## Allergies

Does the patient have any allergies to antibiotics?

## Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell?
- Is there dentition or any other sources of infection?
- Is there a tunneled central line for long-term antibiotics?
- Is the patient anaemic?
- Check the patient's temperature, pulse, BP (and pulse pressure).
- Are there splinter haemorrhages?
- Are there petechiae?
- Any murmurs? (If so, new or altered?)

- Any signs of cardiac failure?
- Any neurological signs?
- Any haematuria/proteinuria/casts?
- Very rarely there may be clubbing, Janeway lesions (non-tender erythematous, haemorrhagic or pustular lesions, often on the palms or soles), Osler nodes (tender, subcutaneous nodules, often in the pulp of the digits or the thenar eminence), Roth spots (white-centred retinal haemorrhages) or splenomegaly.

## Evidence

### Frequency of symptoms and signs (Watanakunakorn & Burkert 1993)

In native valve endocarditis (excluding intravenous drug abusers):

#### • Symptoms (frequency):

- fever (66%)
- malaise (40%)
- arthralgia/myalgia (16%)
- confusion (22%)
- severe back pain (9%)

#### • Signs (frequency):

- temperature  $> 37.7^{\circ}$  (86%)
- cardiac murmur (81%)
- petechiae/embolic lesions (45%)
- Osler nodes/Janeway lesions/Roth spots (10%)
- congestive cardiac failure (52%)
- microscopic haematuria (65%)

NB. In intravenous drug abusers with endocarditis, pleuritic chest pain occurs in 30%.

### Modified Duke criteria for the diagnosis of infective endocarditis (Li et al. 2000)

#### Major criteria

- Microbiological isolation of typical organism or persistently positive blood cultures.
- Evidence of endocardial involvement (new valvular regurgitation or positive echocardiogram).

#### Minor criteria

- Predisposition to cardiac abnormalities:
  - (a) *High risk*: previous endocarditis, aortic valve disease, rheumatic heart disease, prosthetic valve, aortic coarctation, complex cyanotic congenital heart disease.
  - (b) *Moderate risk*: mitral valve prolapse with regurgitation, mitral stenosis, tricuspid valve disease, pulmonary stenosis, hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy.
  - (c) *Low risk*: atrioseptal defect, IHD, coronary artery bypass grafts, mitral valve prolapse (no regurgitation or intravenous drug use).
- Immunological: positive rheumatoid factor, glomerulonephritis, Osler nodes or Roth spots.
- Fever: temperature  $> 38^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- Vascular phenomena (major arterial emboli, septic pulmonary infarcts, mycotic aneurysm, intracranial haemorrhage, conjunctival haemorrhages and Janeway lesions).
- Microbiological findings: positive blood cultures or serological evidence of typical infection.

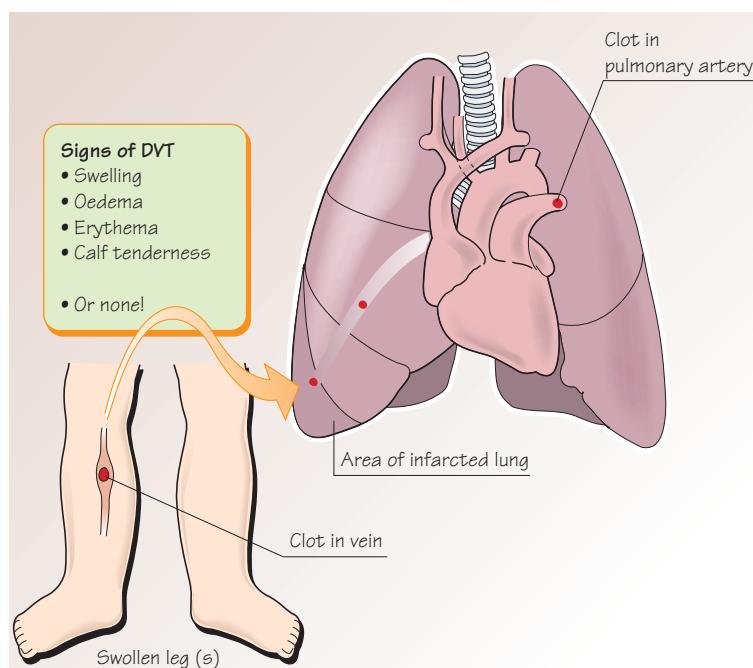
To meet the criteria requires the presence of two major, one major and three minor or five minor criteria. However, the diagnosis is excluded if there is a firm alternative diagnosis explaining evidence of infective endocarditis.

Li JS, Sexton DJ & Mick N. Proposed modifications to the Duke criteria for the diagnosis of infective endocarditis. *Clin Infect Dis* 2000; **30**: 633–8.

Watanakunakorn C & Burkert T. Infective endocarditis at a large community teaching hospital, 1980–90. A review of 210 episodes. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 1993; **72**: 90–102.

**History**

- Sudden death
- Syncope
- Collapse
- Shock
- Haemoptysis
- Fever
- Chest pain
  - pleuritic or central
- Or asymptomatic

**Examination**

- Cyanosis
- Hypotension
- Raised JVP
- Gallop
- Pleural rub
- Tachycardia
- Tachypnoea
- Signs of DVT
- Or none!

**Differential diagnoses**

- Myocardial infarction
- Pneumonia
- Aortic aneurysm rupture
- Septic shock
- Pneumothorax ( $\pm$  tension)

**Pulmonary embolism**

Pulmonary embolism (PE) is an embolus (usually thromboembolic) to the lungs.

**History**

PE may present in a variety of different ways and the presentation depends upon the size of the emboli and the extent of pulmonary vascular obstruction:

- sudden death
- syncope
- shock
- haemoptysis
- breathlessness
- chest pain
- palpitations
- fever (even PUO).

A classical presentation would be with the sudden onset of pleuritic chest pain accompanied by breathlessness and haemoptysis or alternatively a sudden collapse in a postoperative patient shortly after straining at stool. Other patients may present simply with breathlessness, with pleuritic pain or with haemoptysis, but have little abnormality visible on chest X-ray.

PE occurs in over 1% of hospital inpatients and significant pulmonary emboli are found unexpectedly in the postmortems of over 10% of patients who die in hospital. A high index of suspicion is thus required. PE should be considered in any patient with chest pain, collapse, breathlessness, pleuritic pain, haemoptysis or shock.

Particular groups of patients are at greater risk, including immobile patients, postoperative patients, pregnant patients and patients with malignancy.

**Past medical history**

There may be a history of DVT, previous PE, recent surgery, prolonged travel or known malignant disease.

**Family history**

There may be a family history of PE or DVT, perhaps in association with an inherited tendency to increased thrombosis (e.g. factor V Leiden, protein C or protein S deficiency).

**Drugs**

Is the patient taking any anticoagulants, aspirin or using the oral contraceptive pill or oestrogen hormone replacement therapy?

**Functional enquiry**

Ask about any symptoms that might point to underlying malignancy.

**Examination**

- Is the patient well or unwell? Do they need urgent resuscitation including supplemental oxygen?
- Are they in pain, distressed, breathless, cyanosed, shocked?
- Is there:
  - blood stained sputum?
  - tachycardia?

- hypotension?
  - elevated JVP?
  - right ventricular heave?
  - pleural rub?
  - peripheral oedema?
  - signs of DVT?
- (NB. Most patients with a PE will have few or none of these signs.)
- Examine for any features suggesting malignancy (e.g. abdominal mass) and consider the possibility of a pelvic mass obstructing venous return (perform rectal ± vaginal examinations).
  - **The diagnosis of PE should be considered in any patient in whom there is a sudden collapse or cardiorespiratory deterioration.**
  - A significant PE may produce no signs and a high index of suspicion is thus required in patients with sudden breathlessness, collapse, haemoptysis or chest pain.

## Deep vein thrombosis

### History

- DVT may present with leg (or very rarely arm):
  - swelling
  - pain
  - oedema
  - tenderness
  - redness
- or the patient may be asymptomatic.

### Examination

- Is there swelling of calf (measure at fixed distance below tibial tuberosity)?
- Any oedema?
- Any redness?
- Tenderness of the leg?
- Superficial venous dilatation?
- The risk factors are as for PE.
- It often is not possible with the history and examination to conclude whether a red swollen leg is due to DVT or, for example, due to cellulitis. Investigations such as venography or ultrasound are often required.

### Prediction rules

Clinical prediction rules (Tables 80.1 & 80.2) have been developed to predict pre-test probabilities and can be combined with tests such as D-dimers and CT scanning.

**Table 80.1** Clinical prediction rule for deep vein thrombosis (DVT). High probability if score 3 or more, moderate if 1 or 2 and low if score is 0 or less\*

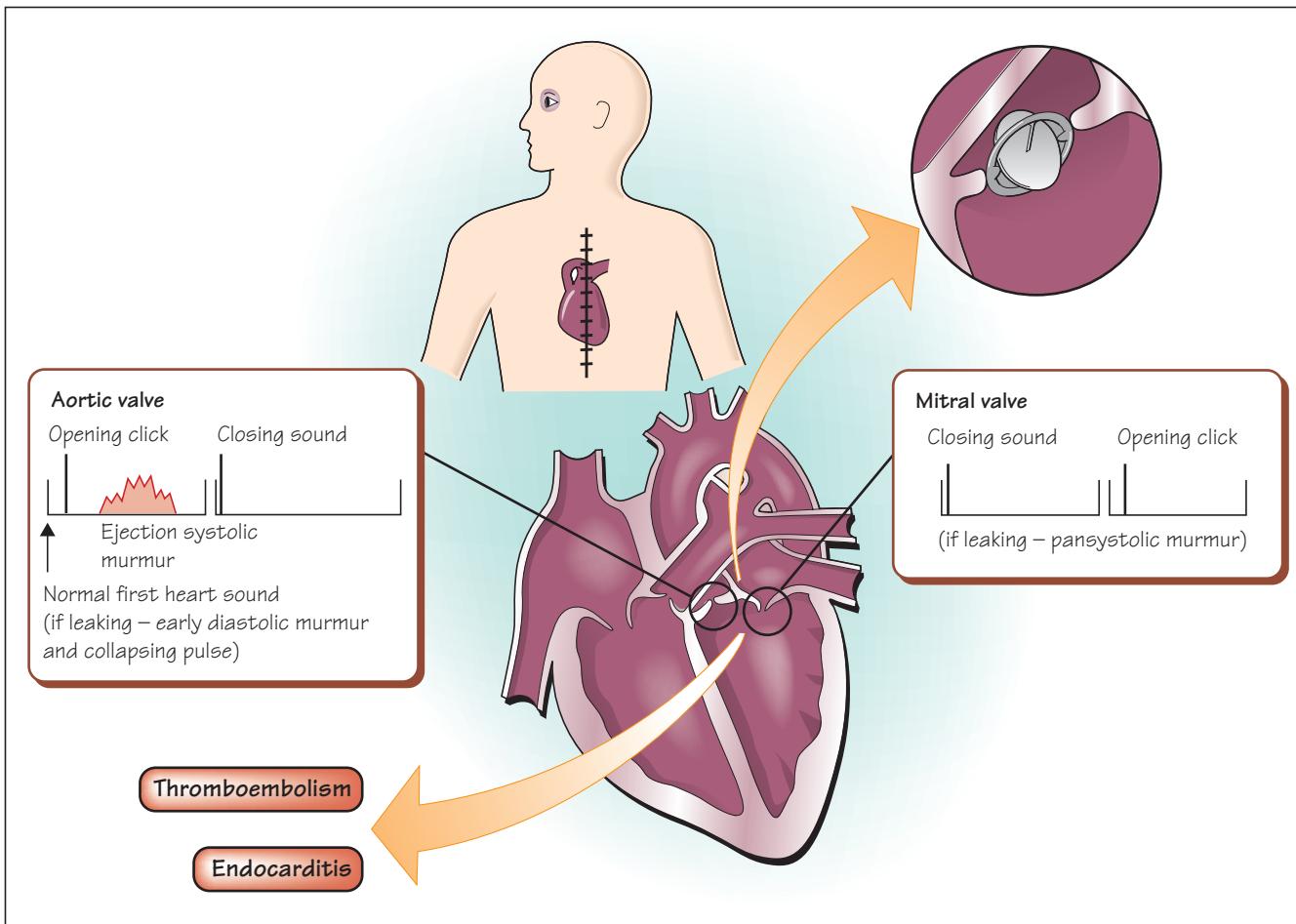
	Score
Active cancer (treatment or within 6 months or palliative)	1
Paralysis, paresis or recent plaster immobilization of legs	1
Major surgery or recently bedridden for >3 days in last 4 weeks	1
Localized tenderness along the distribution of the deep venous system	1
Entire leg swelling	1
Calf swelling by >3 cm when compared with the asymptomatic leg (measured 10 cm below the tibial tuberosity)	1
Pitting oedema (greater in the symptomatic leg)	1
Collateral superficial veins (nonvaricose)	1
Alternative diagnosis as likely or greater than that of DVT	−2

\*From Anand SS, Wells PS, Hunt D *et al.* Does this patient have deep vein thrombosis? *JAMA* 1998; **279**: 1094–9.

**Table 80.2** Clinical prediction rule for pulmonary embolism (PE). Low probability if score <2.0; moderate probability if score 2.0–6.0; high probability if score is >6.0\*

Clinical signs and symptoms of DVT (minimum of leg swelling and pain with palpation of the deep veins)	3.0 points
PE as or more likely than an alternative diagnosis	3.0 points
Heart rate greater than 100	1.5 points
Immobilization or surgery in the previous 4 weeks	1.5 points
Previous DVT/PE	1.5 points
Hemoptysis	1.0 points
Malignancy (on treatment, treated in the last 6 months or palliative)	1.0 points

\*From Wells PS. Advances in the diagnosis of venous thromboembolism. *J Thromb Thrombolysis* 2006; **21**(1): 31–40.



Cardiac valves are most commonly replaced when the native valve is severely stenosed or incompetent. The aortic and mitral valves are the commonest valves requiring replacement. The prosthetic valves may be mechanical (ball-cage [Starr–Edwards], tilting disc [Bjork–Shiley] or double tilting disc [St. Jude]), cadaveric homografts or porcine heterografts. Valve replacement is increasingly undertaken with trans-catheter implantation. Anticoagulation is commonly required to prevent thromboembolism. The prosthetic valves may become infected causing endocarditis.

### History

- Why was the valve replaced?
- What was the initial cause of the valvular pathology?
- What were the symptoms leading to valve replacement?

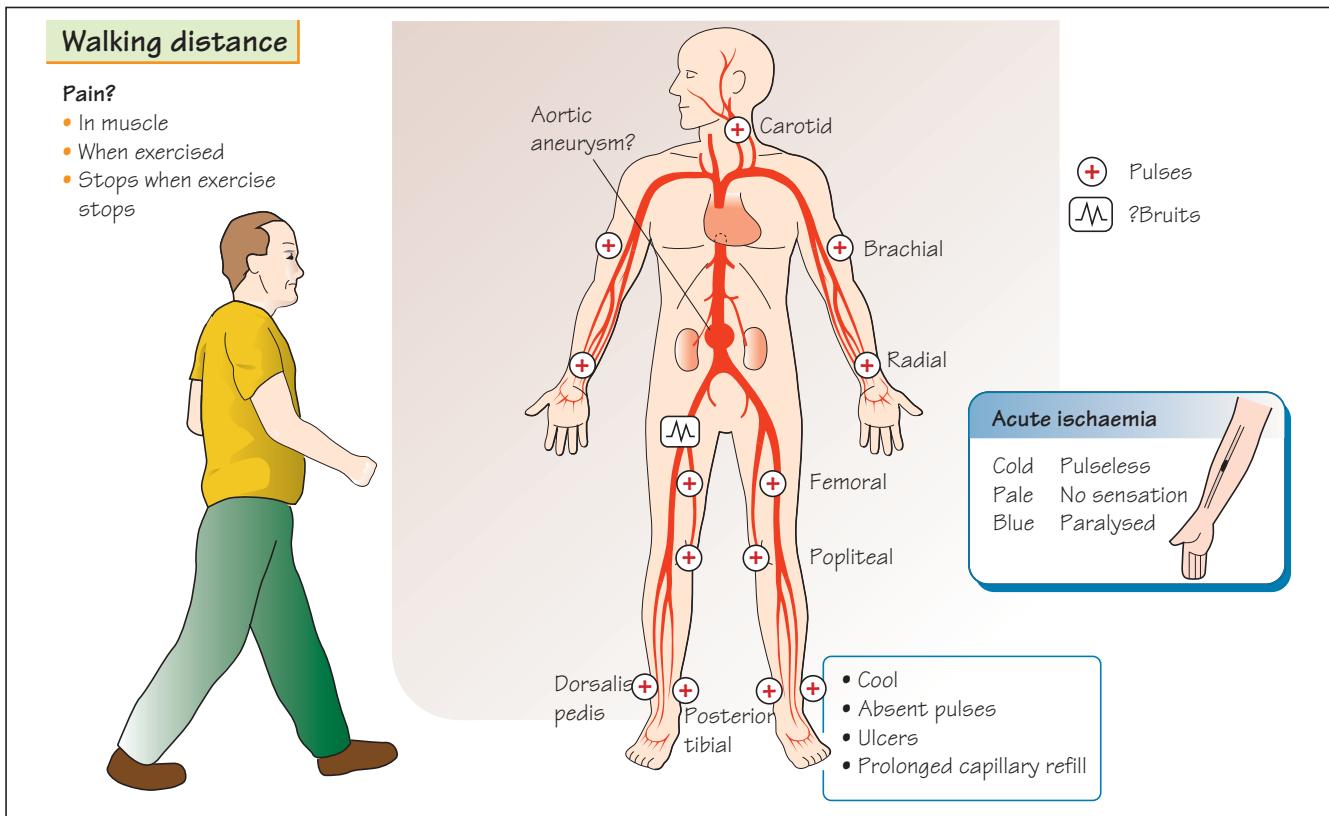
- Any symptoms suggestive of endocarditis or thromboembolism?
- Any symptoms suggestive of valvular leak (e.g. of heart failure)?

### Drugs

Is the patient being treated with anticoagulants?

### Examination

- Is there a thoracotomy scar?
- Any stigmata of endocarditis?
- Any signs of thromboembolism?
- Carry out a full cardiac examination looking for signs of cardiac failure.
- Metallic prosthetic sounds are often very loud and produce a loud closing sound at the same time as the native heart sound and may additionally produce a softer opening snap.



Peripheral vascular disease usually presents with pain in the legs on walking but, if more severe, can cause rest pain and eventually skin ulceration and gangrene.

- Has the patient taken any treatments such as aspirin or anticoagulants?
- Does the patient smoke?

### History

- Peripheral vascular disease classically produces calf pain on walking and is relieved by rest. How far can the patient walk before pain? Does it improve with rest?
- Peripheral vascular disease can also produce buttock claudication, cauda equina claudication (pain on exercise in distribution of sacral nerve roots) and impotence.
- Ask if there is rest pain that may be improved by hanging the leg over the edge of bed. Ask about skin ulcers.
- Consider vascular disease elsewhere (e.g. aortic aneurysm, coronary, carotid and renovascular disease). (Patients with peripheral vascular disease have a threefold increased incidence of stroke and myocardial infarction.)
- In acute ischaemia there is the sudden onset of a painful, cold limb which on examination is pale, pulseless, perishingly cold, painful, paraesthetic and paralysed.
- Consider emboli and examine for embolic source.

### Past medical history

- Any previous symptoms, reconstructive vascular surgery, angioplasties, amputations, hypercholesterolaemia, other vascular disease, diabetes mellitus or hypertension?

### Examination

- Look carefully at the legs and arms. Are there colour changes, ulcers, temperature changes, loss of hair?
- Is there prolonged capillary refill, venous guttering or postural colour change?
- Examine the peripheral vascular tree for pulses, auscultate for bruits (especially carotid and femoral) and examine for aortic and popliteal aneurysms. Consider coronary, carotid and renovascular disease. Consider measurement of the ankle-brachial pressure index.

### Evidence

In patients with leg symptoms, the most useful findings in diagnosing peripheral vascular disease are the presence of cool skin (LR, 5.9), the presence of at least one bruit (LR, 5.6) or any palpable pulse abnormality (LR, 4.7). The absence of any bruits (iliac, femoral, or popliteal) (LR, 0.39) or pulse abnormality (LR, 0.38; 95% CI, 0.23–0.64) reduces the likelihood of peripheral vascular disease.

Khan NA, Rahim SA, Anand SS, Simel DL & Panju A. Does the clinical examination predict lower extremity peripheral arterial disease? *JAMA* 2006; **295**: 536–46.

The diagram illustrates the measurement of blood glucose levels using a glucometer and lists complications of diabetes.

**What is the blood glucose?**

**Diabetic damage**

Background Proliferative Maculopathy → Retinopathy

Hypertension

Insulin • Lipoatrophy • Lipohypertrophy

Stroke

Ischaemic heart disease

Increased infections

Renal failure

Nephrotic syndrome

Proteinuria

Impotence

Peripheral vascular disease

Neuropathy

- Peripheral
- Autonomic

Foot ulcers

Ischaemia

**Diabetic ketoacidosis/ hyperglycaemia**

- Drowsy
- Hypotension
- Tachycardia
- Dehydration
- Kussmaul's respiration
- Abdominal pain

**Hypoglycaemia**

- Hunger
- Jittery
- Faint
- Tachycardia
- Sweaty
- Headache
- Neurological deficits
- Coma

Is there also exocrine pancreatic insufficiency?

Diabetes mellitus is characterized by elevated blood glucose and is due to decreased secretion or effectiveness of insulin. It is common and Type 1 diabetes mellitus (formerly insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, IDDM) has a prevalence of 0.5%, whilst Type 2 diabetes mellitus (formerly non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus, NIDDM) has a prevalence approaching 2%.

### History

Diabetes mellitus may initially present acutely with diabetic ketoacidosis; hypoglycaemic coma; with the osmotic diuretic effects of hyperglycaemia (polyuria, polydipsia, nocturia); the adverse end-organ effects of diabetes (IHD, retinopathy, peripheral vascular disease, peripheral neuropathy); or the complications of increased susceptibility to infection (e.g. UTI, candidal thrush). Alternatively, it may be discovered incidentally during blood or urine testing.

### Diabetic ketoacidosis

This can occur as the first presentation of diabetes mellitus, or it can occur in those patients with known diabetes mellitus. There may be a

gradual onset of symptoms with thirst and polyuria. Other symptoms include breathlessness, abdominal pain, drowsiness, confusion or even coma. On examination there may be evidence of acidosis (rapid, Kussmaul respiration [deep and sighing]), of dehydration (with hypotension, tachycardia and postural fall in BP) or of pre-existing diabetic damage (e.g. retinopathy, neuropathy). There may be symptoms or signs of a precipitating illness, such as bacterial infection with fever, rigors, etc. Similar presentations can occur with non-ketotic hypoglycaemia but without signs of acidosis. Acidosis can also occur in diabetic patients due to lactic acidosis; rarely this is associated with the use of metformin.

### Hypoglycaemia

Hypoglycaemia occurs commonly in diabetics due to insulin or hypoglycaemic administration or during times of inadequate caloric intake. It can also occur in alcoholics, with tumours secreting glucagon, with malnutrition and, rarely, in sepsis.

The symptoms of hypoglycaemia are a feeling of hunger, jitteriness, faint feeling, tachycardia, sweating and a range of neurological

symptoms from headache to neurological deficits to coma. The prompt recognition of hypoglycaemia is essential so that treatment (intravenous glucose) can be administered and irreversible neurological damage avoided. In any diabetic patient who is unwell and in any comatose or drowsy patient prompt bedside determination of blood glucose must be performed. If no facilities for blood glucose measurement exist, glucose should be administered to avoid the neurological damage from potential hypoglycaemia. Some diabetics will be very familiar with the symptoms of hypoglycaemia and be able to correct it by eating. However, hypoglycaemia may occur without premonitory symptoms in some patients, particularly at night or if on beta-blockers.

### Past medical history

- Any history of known diabetes mellitus? If so, what was the mode of presentation and what was the treatment? What was the monitoring of control: frequency of urine testing, blood testing, HbA<sub>1</sub>C, record books, awareness of hypoglycaemia? Ask about previous complications.
- Previous admissions for hypoglycaemia/hyperglycaemia?
- Vascular disease: cardiac ischaemia (myocardial infarction, angina, CCF), peripheral vascular disease (claudication, rest pain, ulcers, foot care, impotence) peripheral neuropathy, autonomic neuropathy (symptoms of gastroparesis – vomiting, bloating, diarrhoea)?
- Retinopathy, visual acuity, laser treatments?
- Hypercholesterolaemia, hypertriglyceridaemia?
- Renal dysfunction (proteinuria, microalbuminuria)?
- Hypertension – treatments?
- Diet/weight/exercise?

### Drugs

- Is the patient taking any treatment for diabetes: diet alone, oral hypoglycaemics or insulin?
- Ask about drugs that can be diabetogenic (e.g. corticosteroids, cyclosporin).
- Ask about the patient's smoking and alcohol use/history.
- Does the patient have any allergies?

### Family and social history

- Any family history of diabetes mellitus?
- Any interference of diabetes with life?

- Who actually draws up the insulin/tests blood sugar, etc. (spouse/patient/nurse)?

### Examination

- Is the patient acutely unwell?
- What is the blood glucose? TEST IT!
- Any smell of ketones? Are there any signs of tachypnoea or Kussmaul's respiration (deep, sighing)?
- Any evidence of dehydration due to hyperglycaemia (tachycardia, hypotension, postural hypotension, dry mucous membranes, reduced skin turgor, etc.)?
- Is the patient drowsy, confused or comatose?
- What is the patient's temperature?
- Check the cardiovascular system: BP? Are there signs of cardiac failure?
- Check peripheral vasculature for: pulses present, bruits?
- Check feet for: ulcers, cellulitis, neuropathy (sensation to light touch), pin prick, monofilament, vibration sense, joint position sense, reflexes and autonomic neuropathy (postural BP, response to Valsalva).
- Check eyes for visual acuity and pupillary responses.
- Perform fundoscopy for: dot + blot haemorrhages, proliferative retinopathy, maculopathy.
- Check for any hypertensive changes.
- Check urine for: proteinuria, glucose, ketones.
- Look for and treat dangerous acute complications of diabetes mellitus (e.g. hypoglycaemia, diabetic ketoacidosis).
- Consider infective or other precipitant to deterioration.
- Examine for end-organ diabetic damage.

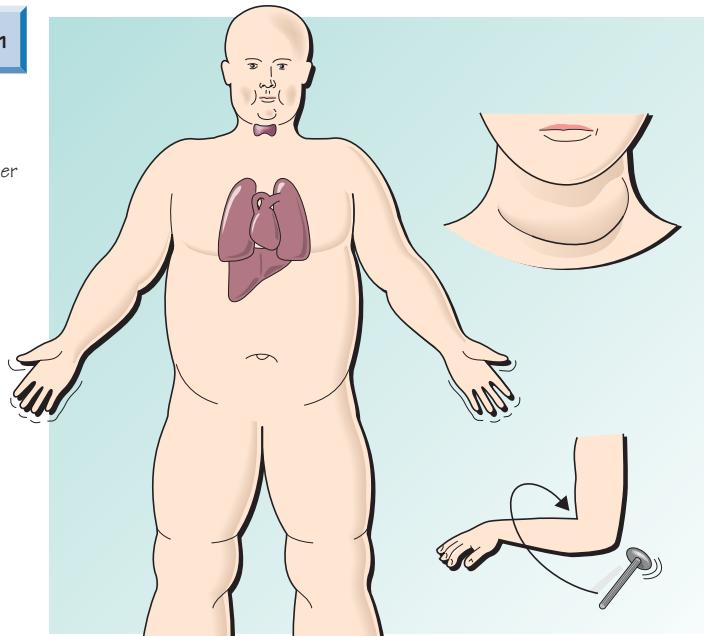
### Evidence

The most useful examination findings for the presence of peripheral neuropathy were impaired vibration perception with a 128-Hz tuning fork (LR range, 16–35) and impaired pressure sensation with a 10g monofilament (LR range, 11–16).

Kanji JM et al. Does this patient with diabetes have large-fiber peripheral neuropathy? *JAMA*. 2010; **303**: 1526–32.

**Hypothyroidism****History**

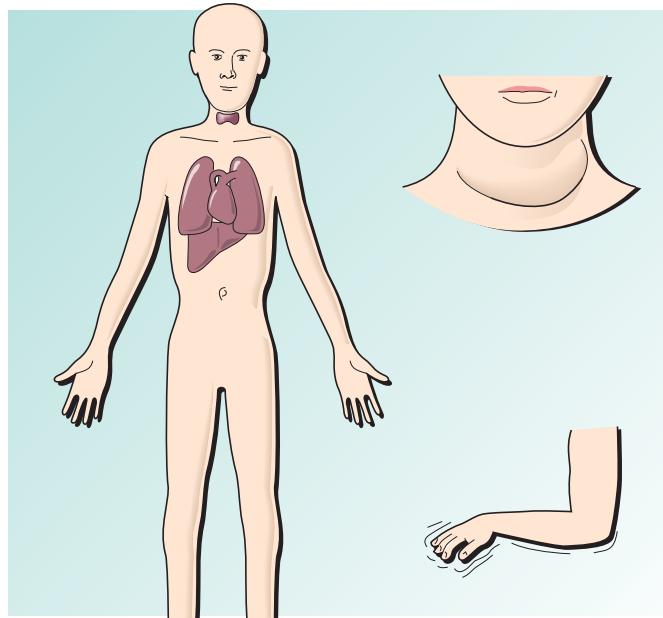
- Prefers hot weather
- Depression
- Slow
- Dementia
- Coma
- Angina
- Menorrhagia
- Constipation

**Examination**

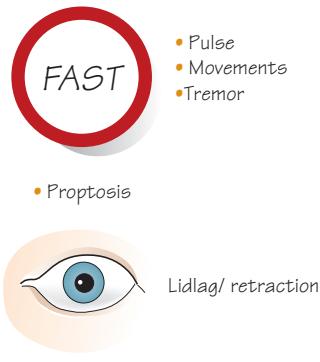
- Hair loss
- Periorbital oedema
- Hoarse voice
- Goitre
- Bradycardia
- Pleural/pericardial effusions

**Hyperthyroidism****History**

- Weight loss
- Fever
- Anxiety
- Palpitations
- Diarrhoea

**Examination**

- Goitre (+ Bruit)
- Sweaty
- Proximal weakness
- Tremor

**Hypothyroidism**

Hypothyroidism, the deficiency of thyroid hormones, is common (1% of hospitalized patients) and can present with a variety of subtle and non-specific symptoms. These include tiredness, mental and physical slowness, cold intolerance, weight gain, constipation, carpal tunnel syndrome, menorrhagia, dementia and hypothermia. Very rarely severe hypothyroidism may present with coma. However, the classical signs described below may not be present, particularly in the elderly.

**Past medical history**

- Any known history of hypothyroidism? If so, ask about thyroxine replacement therapy, dose and duration?
- Any history of IHD?
- Any history of hypercholesterolaemia?
- Any previous radioiodine treatment (for thyrotoxicosis)?
- Any history of other endocrine/autoimmune conditions?

## Drugs

Is the patient receiving thyroxine or amiodarone?

## Family history

Any family history of thyroid disease?

## Examination

- Is there a goitre?
- Does the patient have:
  - slow speech?
  - coarse hair?
  - lethargic movements?
  - facial oedema?
  - bradycardia?
  - hoarse voice?
  - carpal tunnel syndrome?
  - anaemia?
  - hair loss (scalp and eyebrows)?
  - a ‘peaches and cream’ complexion?
  - pericardial/pleural effusions?
  - peripheral oedema?
  - slow relaxing reflexes?

## Hyperthyroidism

Thyrotoxicosis, an excess of thyroid hormones, is common affecting 0.5% of hospital inpatients. It can produce a variety of symptoms including anxiety, tremor, weight loss, palpitations, eye changes and goitre. However, as in hypothyroidism, patients with thyrotoxicosis may not present with clear symptoms or signs and a high index of suspicion is required, particularly in the elderly.

## Past medical history

- Any history of previously known thyrotoxicosis? If so, what treatments were used, including radioactive iodine and drugs such as carbimazole, propylthiouracil and beta-blockers?
- Any history of other autoimmune diseases?

## Family history

Any family history of thyroid disease?

## Examination

- Does the patient have:
  - tachycardia, atrial fibrillation?
  - hyperkinetic movements, agitation?
  - fine tremor?
  - warm sweaty palms?
  - a goitre?
  - proximal weakness?
  - heart failure?
- Check eye signs: proptosis, lid retraction, lid lag?

## Evidence

Clinical symptoms and signs are useful in the diagnosis of hypothyroidism but a high index of suspicion is required because hypothyroidism may exist with minimal symptoms and no classical signs.

**Table 84.1** Symptoms and signs in hypothyroidism

Symptom or sign	Frequency of sign in hypothyroid patient (%)	Frequency of sign in normal controls (%)
Cold intolerance	64	38
Reduced sweating	54	14
Weight gain	54	23
Paraesthesia	52	18
Constipation	48	15
Slow-relaxing ankle reflexes	77	7
Dry skin	76	34
Coarse skin	60	19
Periorbital puffiness	60	4
Cold skin	50	20
Slow movements	36	1
Hoarseness	34	13
Impaired hearing	22	3

Zulewski H, Muller B, Exer P, Miserez AR, Staub JJ. Estimation of tissue hypothyroidism by a new clinical score: evaluation of patients with various grades of hypothyroidism and controls. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 1997; **82**: 771–6.

**Table 84.2** Symptoms and signs in thyrotoxicosis

Symptom or sign	Frequency in patients with thyrotoxicosis (%)	Frequency in controls (%)
Dyspnoea	81	40
Palpitations	75	26
Tiredness	80	31
Preference for cold	73	41
Excess sweating	68	31
Nervousness	59	21
Increased appetite	32	2
Weight loss	52	2
Hot hands	76	44
Diarrhoea	8	0
Finger tremor	66	26
Pulse over 90	68	19
Average pulse	100	78
Atrial fibrillation	19	0
Goitre	87	11
Exophthalmos	34	2
Lid lag	62	16
Hyperkinesis	39	9
Sweating hands	72	22

Wayne EJ. The diagnosis of thyrotoxicosis. *Br Med J* 1954; **1**: 411.

**History**

- Weight loss
- Malaise
- Nausea/vomiting
- Stopped steroid treatment

**Examination**

- Pigmentation
- Hypotension
- Postural hypotension

**! If severe 'Crisis'**

- Shock
- Tachycardia
- Vasoconstriction
- Confusion

Addison's disease

**History**

- Corticosteroid treatment
- Change in appearance
- Obesity
- Diabetes mellitus
- Weight gain

**Examination**

- Acne
- Hypertension
- 'Moon-faced'
- Hirsutism
- Striae
- Obesity
- Bruising
- Thin skin

Cushing's syndrome

## Addison's disease

Addison's disease is the deficiency of mineralocorticoid hormones. It has a prevalence of 10/100 000.

### History

Addison's disease may present with fatigue, faintness, nausea, vomiting, depression, postural dizziness, myalgia, cold intolerance, weight loss or, if severe, with more profound illness with shock (Addisonian crisis).

### Past medical history

- Any history of:
  - corticosteroid therapy? (If so was it suddenly stopped?)
  - malignancy (adrenal metastases)?
  - tuberculosis?
  - other autoimmune conditions (e.g. vitiligo, hypothyroidism)?
- Any evidence of pituitary disease (hypopituitarism)?

### Examination

- Is the patient unwell and pale?
- Does the patient have:
  - hypotension, postural hypotension?
  - pigmentation, especially buccal, skin creases, scars?

## Cushing's syndrome

Cushing's syndrome arises from an excess of glucocorticoids. It is very common due to the therapeutic administration of corticosteroids, and occurs rarely due to ACTH production by pituitary adenomas, ectopic ACTH production, or adrenal adenomas or carcinomas.

### History

Cushing's syndrome may present with hirsutism, weight gain, change in body/face shape, easy bruising or be noticed incidentally.

### Past medical history

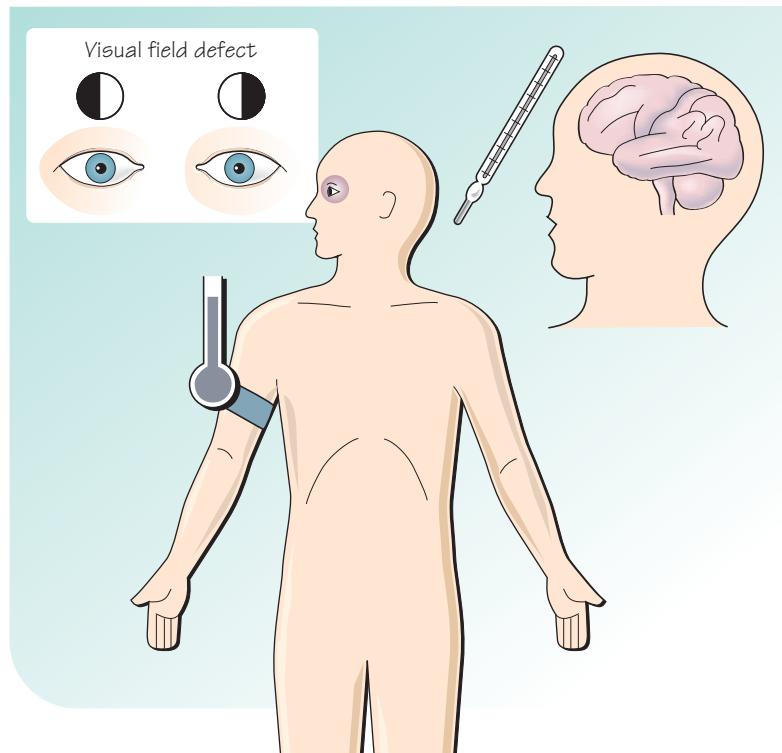
Any history of corticosteroid usage?

### Examination

- Does the patient have:
- thin skin?
  - multiple ecchymoses?
  - a 'buffalo' hump?
  - a 'moon' face?
  - centripetal obesity?
  - hypertension?
  - glycosuria?

**History**

- Fatigue
- Anorexia
- Headache
- Depression
- Weakness
- Oligomenorrhoea/ amenorrhoea
- Erectile dysfunction
- Reduced libido

**Examination**

- Pale
- Hypothermia
- Reduced body hair
- Postural hypotension
- Small testicles

- Pituitary apoplexy
  - Headache: sudden
  - Visual field defect

This is deficiency of thyroid, adrenal, gonadal and growth hormones due to pituitary disease. Thus in any patient with such hormonal deficiency the possibility of other deficiencies should be entertained. Rarely it may develop acutely with pituitary apoplexy in which there is haemorrhagic infarction of a pituitary tumour, usually accompanied by sudden severe headache and often with visual field defects. Hypopituitarism has a prevalence of 30/100 000.

**History**

Does the patient have:

- fatigue?
- anorexia?
- reduced libido?
- menstrual disturbances?
- headache?
- depression?
- weakness?
- symptoms of hypothyroidism?

**Past medical history**

- Any history of a known pituitary adenoma?
- Any irradiation treatment to the pituitary?
- Any severe postpartum haemorrhage (Sheehan's syndrome)?

**Drugs**

Has the patient taken any hormone replacement therapy: thyroxine, hydrocortisone, testosterone, oestrogen or growth hormone?

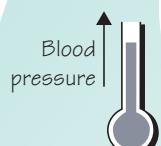
**Examination**

Does the patient have:

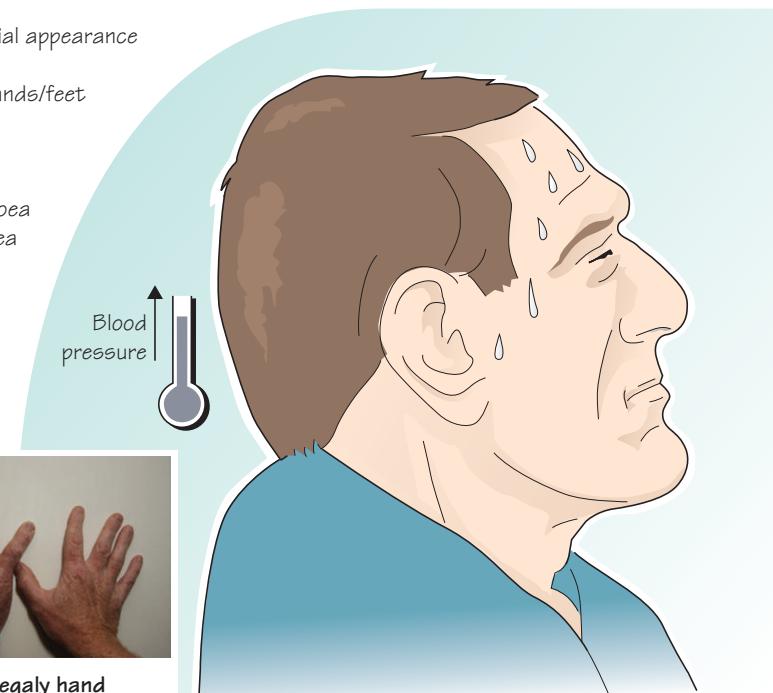
- pale (classically 'alabaster' skin)?
- reduced body hair?
- soft skin with fine wrinkles?
- hypothermia?
- hypotension (postural)?
- visual field defect?
- atrophic breasts?
- small testicles?

**History**

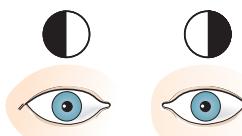
- Altered facial appearance  
?Photos
- Enlarged hands/feet
- Headaches
- Sweating
- Arthralgias
- Galactorrhoea
- Amenorrhoea
- Weight gain
- Voice changes



Acromegaly hand compared with normal

**Examination**

- Prominent brow
- Broad enlarged nose
- Enlarged tongue
- Prominent jaw
- Deep voice
- Large hands
- Carpal tunnel syndrome
- Heart failure

**Visual field defect**

- Bitemporal hemianopia
- Optic atrophy

Acromegaly is the syndrome of excess growth hormone secretion, usually from a pituitary tumour. Acromegaly may present with the effects of excess growth hormone, such as a change in facial appearance or an increase in foot or hand size. The changes occur gradually and may be noticed by friends and family or when seeking medical attention for another complaint, such as hypertension or hyperglycaemia. Acromegaly has a prevalence of 6/100 000.

The pituitary tumour can encroach upon the optic nerves and produce visual symptoms, such as visual blurring or signs such as bitemporal hemianopia. There is also an increased incidence of heart failure, hypertension and hyperglycaemia.

## History

- Does the patient have an altered facial appearance (ask to see previous photographs)?
- Does the patient have enlarged feet (ask about change in shoe size/fitting) and hands (rings no longer fit)?
- Any visual blurring, reduced peripheral vision?
- Are there any symptoms of hyperglycaemia, such as polyuria and polydipsia?
- Does the patient have:
  - headaches?
  - fatigue?
  - weight gain?
  - galactorrhoea?
  - menstrual irregularity?
  - erectile impotence?
  - increased sweating?
  - carpal tunnel syndrome?
  - arthralgias?

## Past medical history

- Any history of known acromegaly?
- Has the patient taken any treatments with radiotherapy, drugs, surgery?
- Any associated hypopituitarism?

## Drugs

- Is the patient taking somatostatin or dopaminergic agonists?
- Is the patient taking endocrine replacement (e.g. thyroxine, corticosteroids)?

## Examination

- Does the patient have:
  - prominent facial features?
  - a broad, enlarged nose, prominent brow (supraorbital ridge), protruding (prognathic) jaw and an enlarged tongue?
  - interdental separation?
  - thick, greasy skin?
  - mild hirsutism?
  - a deep voice?
  - large hands ('spade-like')?
  - large feet?
- Are there signs of carpal tunnel syndrome?
- Are there signs of arthritis?
- Does the patient have hypertension?
- Are there signs of heart failure?
- Does the patient have bitemporal hemianopia (may have upper bitemporal quadrantanopia or it may only affect one eye)?
- Does the patient have optic atrophy?
- Dipstick urine for glycosuria.

**History**

- Fatigue, anorexia, nausea, vomiting
- Breathlessness, haemoptysis
- Ankle swelling
- Dysuria, haematuria, oliguria

**Past medical history**

- Previous renal history
- Enuresis
- Urinary tract infections
- Family history
- Hypertension
- Proteinuria/haematuria

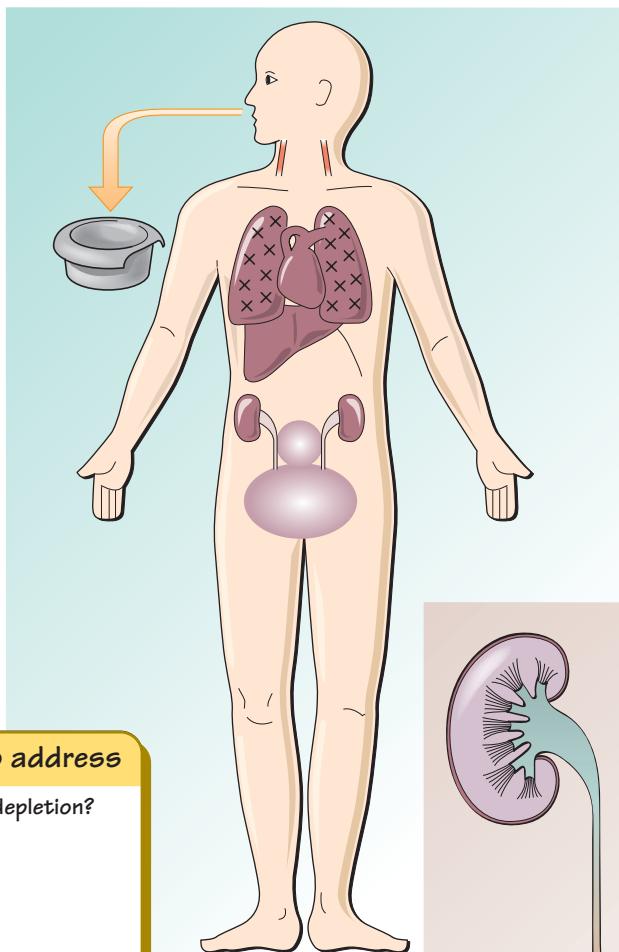
**Important questions to address****Signs of fluid overload or fluid depletion?**

- Pulse
- JVP
- Oedema
- Blood pressure

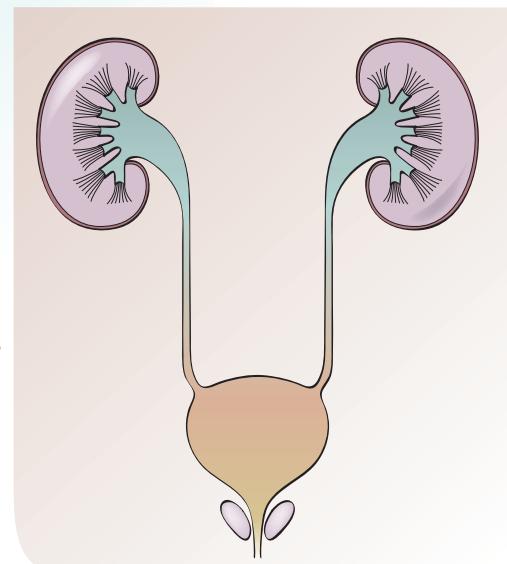
**Any signs of:**

- **diseases causing renal failure?**
- **urinary tract obstruction?**
- Palpable bladder
- Pelvic mass

**Life-threatening hyperkalaemia or acidosis**  
may have no signs or symptoms

**Examination**

- Crackles XX
- Vomiting
- Tachypnoea
  - Pulmonary oedema
  - Acidosis
- Pericardial rub
- Oedema
- Rectal examination



In the assessment of the patient with renal failure it is important to try to establish the likely cause of the renal failure, its duration and whether life-threatening complications have developed, such as pulmonary oedema.

Renal failure may be discovered incidentally when renal function is estimated with measurement of urea or creatinine, with hypertension or with symptoms of renal failure. Dramatic presentations of acute renal failure can occur with profound acidosis, pulmonary oedema or encephalopathy.

**History**

- Does the patient have any symptoms of renal failure (e.g. nausea, vomiting, breathlessness [due to acidosis or pulmonary oedema]) or

peripheral oedema? Any itching, hiccoughs, peripheral neuropathy, fatigue, malaise, reduced urine output, polyuria or nocturia haematuria?

- Any enuresis in childhood or recurrent UTIs?
- Any associated symptoms: haemoptysis, rash, back pain, fever, weight loss, or neuropathy?
- Is the patient undergoing treatment for renal failure (e.g. haemodialysis, peritoneal dialysis, renal transplant)?

**Past medical history**

- Any previously known renal disease?
- Any previous hypertension or proteinuria?

- Any complications of renal disease: hypertension, renal bone disease or cardiac disease?
- Any procedures to enable dialysis (e.g. arteriovenous fistula formation, peritoneal dialysis catheter [Tenckhoff])?

## Drugs

Ask about:

- any drugs that might cause renal disease (e.g. NSAIDs, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors or antibiotics)
- any specific treatments for renal failure (e.g. erythropoietin)
- any drugs that could accumulate and cause toxicity in renal failure (e.g. digoxin).

## Family history

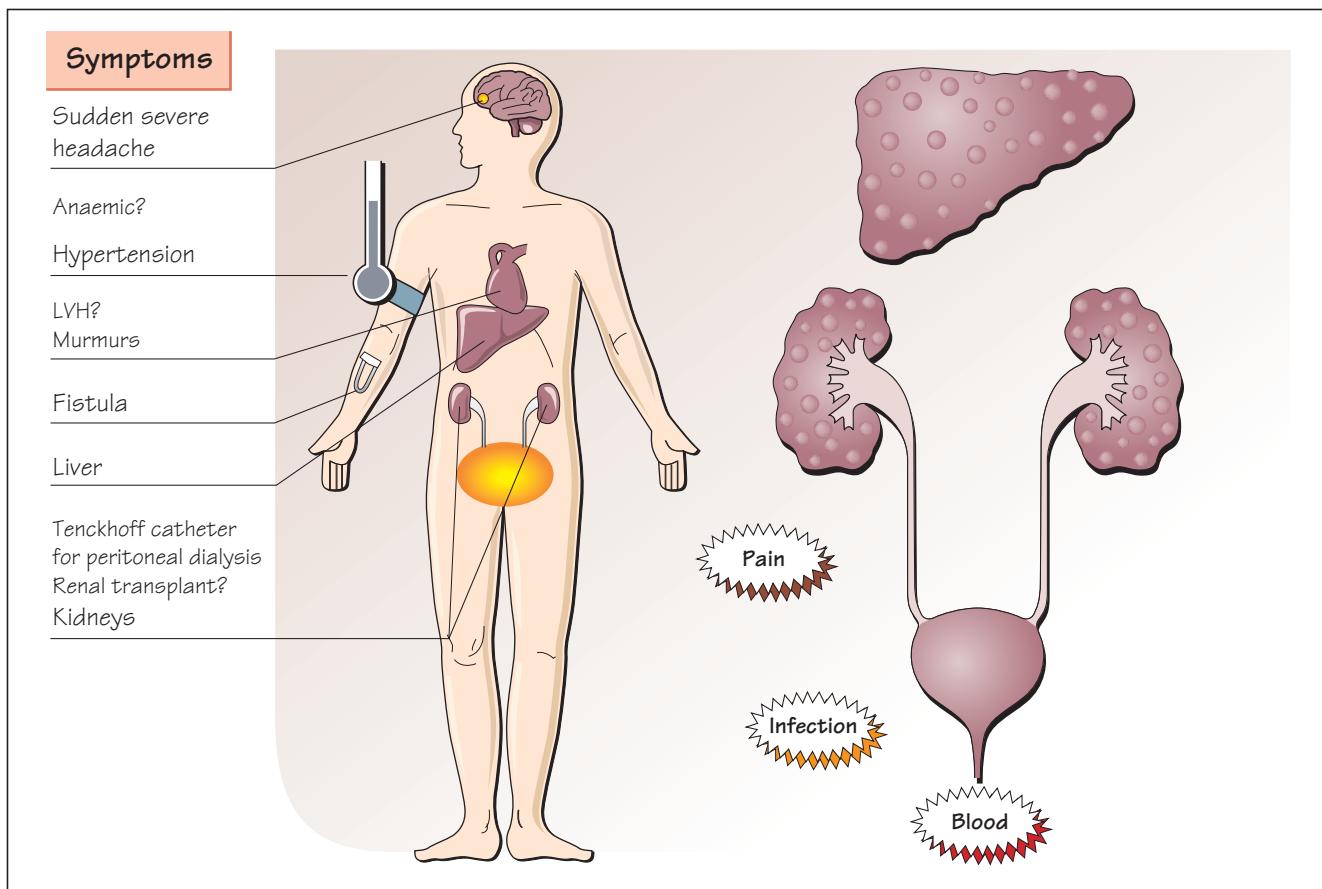
Any family history of renal disease (e.g. polycystic kidney disease, reflux nephropathy)?

## Social history

Any interference with life by symptoms or by treatments such as dialysis?

## Examination

- Is the patient unwell? Life-threatening complications of renal failure include pulmonary oedema, acidosis and hyperkalaemia.
- Are they breathless? Is there a Kussmaul pattern of respiration (deep and sighing due to acidosis)?
- Is there cyanosis?
- Is there evidence of fluid overload? Crackles in the lungs, gallop rhythm, elevated JVP, peripheral oedema, hypertension?
- Is there fluid depletion or shock? Hypotension, postural fall in BP, tachycardia, cool peripheries, peripheral vasoconstriction?
- Any signs of specific diseases causing renal failure (e.g. polycystic kidneys, vasculitic rash, sites of sepsis, pancreatitis, renal arterial bruit)?
- Any evidence of effects of renal dysfunction (e.g. anaemia, metabolic flap, acidosis, drowsy, bleeding tendency)?
- Or any evidence of severe hypertension (e.g. left ventricular hypertrophy, hypertensive retinopathy)?
- Examine carefully for any signs of obstruction. Palpable bladder, enlarged prostate, pelvic mass?
- Examine the urine with dipstick for blood, protein, glucose, leucocytes and microscopy for cells and casts.



Polycystic kidney disease is inherited in an autosomal dominant manner in which gradually enlarging renal cysts are associated with progressive renal impairment. It may present with chronic renal failure or be found during screening of relatives of patients with the disease. More unusually it can present with an abdominal mass, with hypertension or with rupture of an associated intracranial Berry aneurysm causing a subarachnoid haemorrhage. The renal failure most commonly manifests in middle age and might present with vomiting, nausea, anorexia, itching, fatigue, polyuria, etc. The cysts can bleed producing haematuria, become infected or be painful. There is an increased incidence of cardiac disease including valvular abnormalities, herniae and diverticular disease. It has a prevalence of 0.1%.

### History

- Local symptoms: pain (flank, abdominal, back), gross haematuria, UTIs?
- Symptoms of renal failure?
- Requirement for dialysis/transplant?
- Symptoms of subarachnoid haemorrhage (sudden severe headache)?

### Past medical history

Does the patient show signs of hypertension, cardiac disease or subarachnoid haemorrhage?

### Drugs

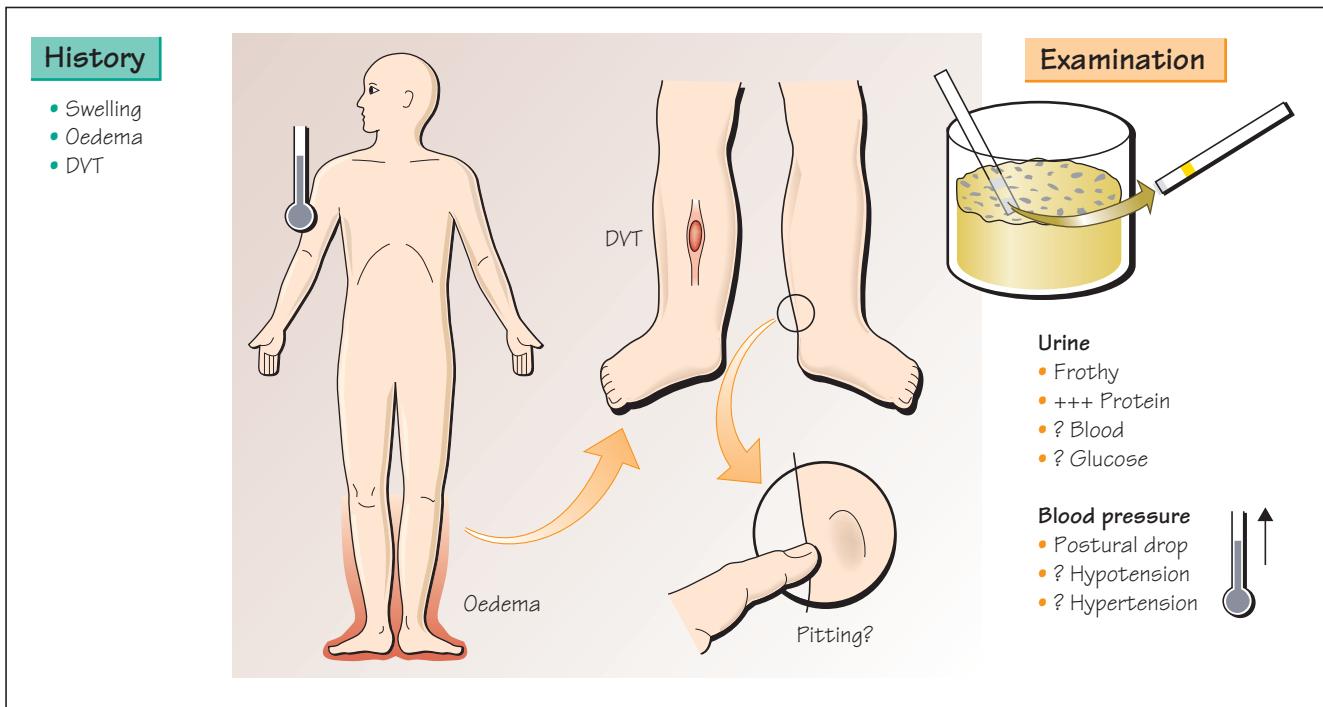
Is the patient taking anti-hypertensives or medication required following the development of renal failure (e.g. erythropoietin, phosphate binders)?

### Family history

An accurate family history is required.

### Examination

- Signs of chronic renal failure (anaemia, fluid overload)?
- Examine for dialysis access: fistula, central line, transplant and Tenckhoff catheter.
- Examine for hypertension and check for end-organ damage (e.g. retinopathy, left ventricular hypertrophy).
- Are there bilateral palpable kidneys? (Classically ballotable, irregular and bilateral [though may be difficult to palpate or only palpable unilaterally].)
- Is there an enlarged cystic liver? (Liver failure is rare.)
- Examine for mitral valve prolapse, aortic regurgitation and mitral regurgitation.



Nephrotic syndrome is defined as proteinuria >4.5 g/day with hypoalbuminaemia and peripheral oedema. It presents with oedema usually of the legs but sometimes progressing to involve the trunk and, rarely, oedema can be noticeable in the face. The proteinuria can cause the urine to be frothy. There is an increased incidence of thromboembolism.

### History

- Is there history of oedema? If so, where?
- Has the patient passed frothy urine?
- Are there any symptoms suggesting PE or DVT?

### Past medical history

Any history of:

- known renal disease (especially glomerulonephritis)?
- previous renal biopsy?
- previous episodes of oedema and response to treatment?

- previous proteinuria?
- other associated diseases such as SLE?

### Drugs

- Is the patient using diuretics?
- Does the patient take any immunosuppressive medication (e.g. corticosteroids, cyclophosphamide, cyclosporin)?
- Is the patient using NSAIDs (can cause nephrotic syndrome)?
- Is the patient anticoagulated?

### Examination

- Does the patient have oedema or pitting?
- Check the patient's BP.
- What is the patient's fluid status? Overloaded/elevated JVP? Hypovolaemic (hypotension and postural drop)?
- Undertake urine dipstick/microscopy.
- Check the patient's weight (most accurate indicator of fluid loss/gain).

**Examination**

- Neurological disease
- Bladder infection, calculi, tumours
- Prostate
  - Benign prostate hypertrophy
  - Carcinoma
  - Prostatitis

**Rectal examination**

- Prostate
  - Enlarged
  - Sulcus preserved
  - Irregular/hard/craggy
  - Tender

**Is bladder enlarged?**

- Inspect
- Palpate
- Percuss

**'Prostatic symptoms'**

- Sensation of incomplete bladder emptying
- Frequent urination
- Weak stream
- Strains to begin urination
- Nocturia
- Hesitancy
- Terminal dribbling

**Urinary incontinence**

- When incontinent?
- Any polyuria?
- Any neurological signs?
- Bladder enlarged
- Prostate
- Vaginal prolapse

## Urinary retention

The commonest cause of urinary retention is benign prostatic hyper trophy in men. Other causes include urinary tract infection (UTI), neurological disease or prostatic malignancy. It is important to establish whether there are other symptoms from the urinary tract, whether there is renal failure and if malignant disease could be responsible.

### History

- When did the patient last pass urine?
- Does the patient feel the desire to pass urine?
- Is there pain or discomfort?
- Any recent haematuria?
- Any recent dysuria?
- Any strangury (painful desire but inability to pass urine)?
- Are there normally any difficulties with urinary stream? Does the patient have any hesitancy? Does the patient have a good urinary stream, is there terminal dribbling?
- Are there any symptoms suggestive of neurological disease (e.g. numbness or weakness of limbs)?
- Any faecal incontinence?

### Past medical history

- Are there any previous episodes of urinary retention?
- Ask about previous operations, especially transurethral resection of prostate (TURP) or open prostatectomy, PSA (prostate specific antigen) screening.

- Any history of UTI?
- Any history of renal calculi?
- Any history of neurological diseases?

### Drugs

- Is the patient taking any drugs that can promote urinary retention (e.g. tricyclic antidepressants)?
- Is the patient taking any treatments for UTI, prostatic hyperplasia/ malignancy?

### Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell? Fluid overloaded/in pain?
- Are there systemic features of infection (fever, tachycardia, loin tenderness)?
- Is the bladder enlarged? (Examine by palpation and percussion.)
- Is the prostate enlarged on rectal examination?
- Is the sulcus preserved? Is it hard and craggy (consider carcinoma of the prostate)? Is it tender (consider prostatitis)?
- If appropriate, are there any abnormalities on vaginal examination?
- Are there any abnormal neurological signs?
- Examine carefully for peripheral sensation including sacral area and the presence of tendon reflexes.

## Urinary incontinence

In women, the symptom of urinary incontinence is common and the commonest cause is pelvic floor weakness following childbirth, followed by detrusor instability. Urinary incontinence in men is usually caused by prostatic enlargement. The symptom of urge incontinence is involuntary leakage accompanied or immediately preceded by urgency (a sudden strong need to void) and results from detrusor overactivity. The symptom of stress incontinence is involuntary leakage on effort or exertion, or on sneezing or coughing, and it is the result of weak pelvic floor muscles, poor intrinsic sphincter function, increased urethral mobility, or all of the above. Overflow incontinence is associated with overdistention of the bladder caused by obstruction (e.g., prostate or prolapse) or a neurological condition (e.g., spinal cord injury). Functional incontinence is incontinence resulting from cognitive, functional, or mobility difficulties in a person who may or may not have lower urinary tract problems.

### History

- When is the patient incontinent?
- Do you leak urine with coughing, straining, sneezing, running, laughing (stress incontinence)? Do you use pads?

- Is there excessive urine production (polyuria)?
- Is there immobility preventing the patient from getting to the toilet or diminished awareness due to sedation or confusion?

### Past medical history

Ask about:

- childbirth, pregnancies and operations (e.g. hysterectomies, TURPs)
- neurological conditions (e.g. dementia, stroke, spinal cord injury)
- specific surgical procedures for incontinence.

### Drugs

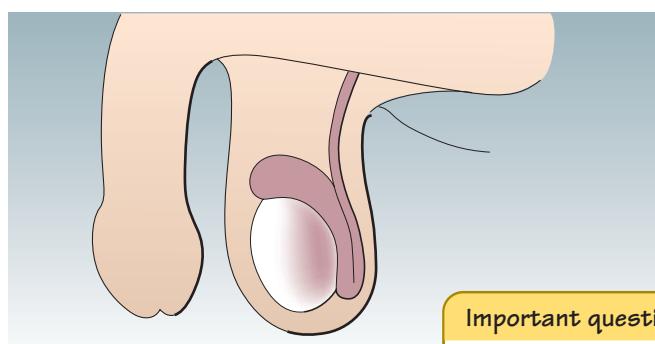
- Is the patient taking diuretics, treatments for detrusor instability or desmopressin?
- Is the patient taking hypnotics or anti-cholinergics?

### Examination

- Look carefully for any signs of neurological disease.
- Is the bladder enlarged? Could this be retention with 'overflow'?
- Examine for vaginal prolapse, urethrocoele.
- Examine prostate with rectal examination.
- Is the patient constipated?

**History**

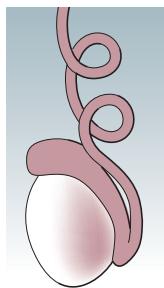
- Pain
- Systemic symptoms

**Examination**

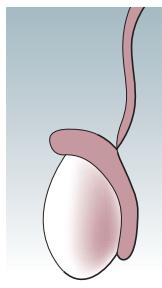
- Tender?
- Signs of systemic disease
- Lump
- Examine
  - Scrotum
  - Testes
  - Epididymis
  - Spermatic cords

**Important questions to address**

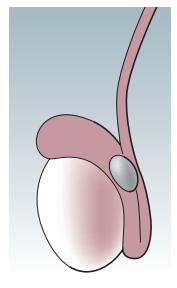
- Could there be testicular torsion? →Surgical emergency
- Could there be testicular tumour?

**Torsion of testis**

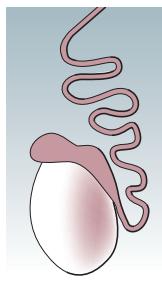
- Rapid onset of pain in young men

**Torsion of hydatid of Morgagni**

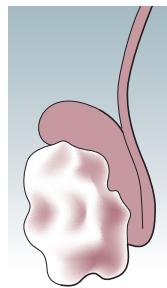
- Can mimic torsion
- Lump at upper testicular pole
- Blue spot on transillumination

**Epididymal cyst**

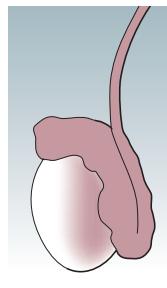
- Transilluminates
- Separate and behind testis

**Varicocele**

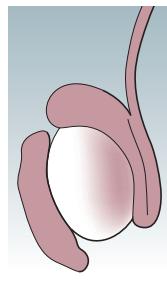
- Dilated veins
- Irregular

**Testicular tumour**

- Painless swelling
- ± Hydrocoele
- ?Abdominal lymphadenopathy
- ?Metastases

**Epididymitis**  
(Epididymo-orchitis)

- Pain, swelling
- ± erythema, fever, pyuria

**Hydrocoele**

- Soft, fluctuant swelling
- Unable to feel testis
- Transilluminates

Testicular lumps may present with discomfort, pain or the lump may be noticed by the patient. Testicular lumps commonly represent benign pathology, such as a hydrocoele, but may be due to a highly malignant but treatable teratoma or seminoma.

## History

- How was the lump first noticed? Is it enlarging? Has there been pain or discomfort?
- Are there any other genitourinary symptoms (e.g. dysuria)?
- Are there any systemic symptoms (e.g. fever, weight loss, rigors) or symptoms of metastatic disease (e.g. back pain, haemoptysis)?
- Has there been bowel disturbance (e.g. with strangulated hernia)?

## Past medical history

Any history of previous testicular lumps, herniae?

## Examination

- Is the patient uncomfortable and in pain?
- Are there features of infection or metastatic disease?
- Examine for fever, anaemia, lymphadenopathy, hepatomegaly and jaundice.
- Examine the scrotum: any obvious swelling, change in skin colour?
- Palpate the testes: are they symmetrical, is there a lump, is there generalized or local swelling, are they of similar consistency? Is there localized tenderness, warmth? Identify the epididymis and spermatic cord. Any cough impulse?
- Is there transillumination of any swelling?
- Also examine the penis, the urine for pyuria, and consider digital rectal examination of the prostate.

### History

- Jaundice
- Anorexia
- Pruritus
- Bruising
- Confusion
- Tremor

Variceal haemorrhage

Hepatomegaly  
Splenomegaly

### Examination

#### Signs of chronic liver disease

- Encephalopathy –Flap –Confusion/coma
- Parotid hypertrophy
- Spider naevi
- Gynaecomastia
- Bruising
- Excoriations
- Jaundice
- Palmar erythema
- Dupuytren's contracture
- Clubbing
- Leuconychia
- Reduced body hair
- Testicular atrophy
- Abdominal distension
- Peripheral oedema

#### Signs of portal hypertension

- Superficial venous dilatation
- Caput medusae
- Splenomegaly
- Ascites
- Varices

Spider naevi

### Hepatic encephalopathy

Grade	
0	Normal
I	Mild confusion
II	Drowsy, lethargic
III	Sleepy but rousable, marked confusion
IV	Coma

### History

- Is there jaundice, bruising, abdominal distension, anorexia, pruritus, peripheral oedema, confusion or tremor?
- When were symptoms first noted? Has there been any deterioration and, if so, why? Has there been any change in medication or evidence of infection?
- Have friends or relatives noticed any changes?
- Is the patient's urine dark? Are the patient's stools pale?

### Past medical history

- Has the patient ever been jaundiced?

Chronic liver disease may present with features of impaired synthetic function such as oedema, bruising or jaundice; with features of portal hypertension such as ascites, abdominal pain or variceal haemorrhage; or with general malaise, pruritus, fatigue and anorexia. Alternatively the underlying aetiology, such as excess alcohol consumption, may bring the problem to light or it may be discovered incidentally during routine blood testing.

Important causes include alcohol-induced liver disease, viral hepatitis, autoimmune liver disease, primary biliary cirrhosis, haemochromatosis, primary sclerosing cholangitis and Wilson's disease. Chronic liver disease has a prevalence of 100/100 000.

- Any history of haematemesis or melaena?
- Any history of previous hepatitis? If so, how acquired (e.g. blood transfusion, intravenous drug use)?
- Has the patient had any previous blood transfusions?

## Family history

- Any family history of liver disease (e.g. Wilson's disease,  $\alpha_1$ -antitrypsin deficiency, hepatitis B infection)?
- Any family history of neurological symptoms (e.g. Parkinsonian or dystonic symptoms in Wilson's disease)?
- Any family history of diabetes mellitus (consider haemochromatosis)?

## Drugs

- What medication is the patient taking? Any recent medication changes? Is the patient taking any herbal remedies?
- Is the patient taking any illegal, especially intravenous, drugs?

## Alcohol

- What is the patient's daily/weekly consumption? Does the patient ever drink beer, wine, spirits, etc.?
- Use the CAGE questions:
  - Ever tried to Cut down?
  - Have people Annoyed you by criticizing your drinking?
  - Ever felt Guilty about alcohol consumption?
  - Ever drink early in morning (Eye-opener)?

## Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell?
- Are there any signs of encephalopathy (e.g. confusion, coma, liver flap [asterixis])?
- Check hepatic foetor/smell of alcohol
- Any fever?
- Any melaena?
- Any signs of chronic liver disease:
  - spider naevi

- palmar erythema
- Dupuytren's contracture
- clubbing
- leuconychia
- bruising
- wasting
- excoriations (suggesting obstructive jaundice)
- gynaecomastia
- jaundice
- parotid enlargement
- testicular atrophy
- reduced body hair
- abdominal distension.
- Is the liver palpable? Check size (percussion), border (regular/irregular) and if tender.
- Any peripheral oedema?
- Any signs of portal hypertension?
- Any superficial venous dilatation or caput medusa?
- Is there splenomegaly or ascites (shifting dullness to percussion)?

## Specific clinical findings

### Wilson's disease

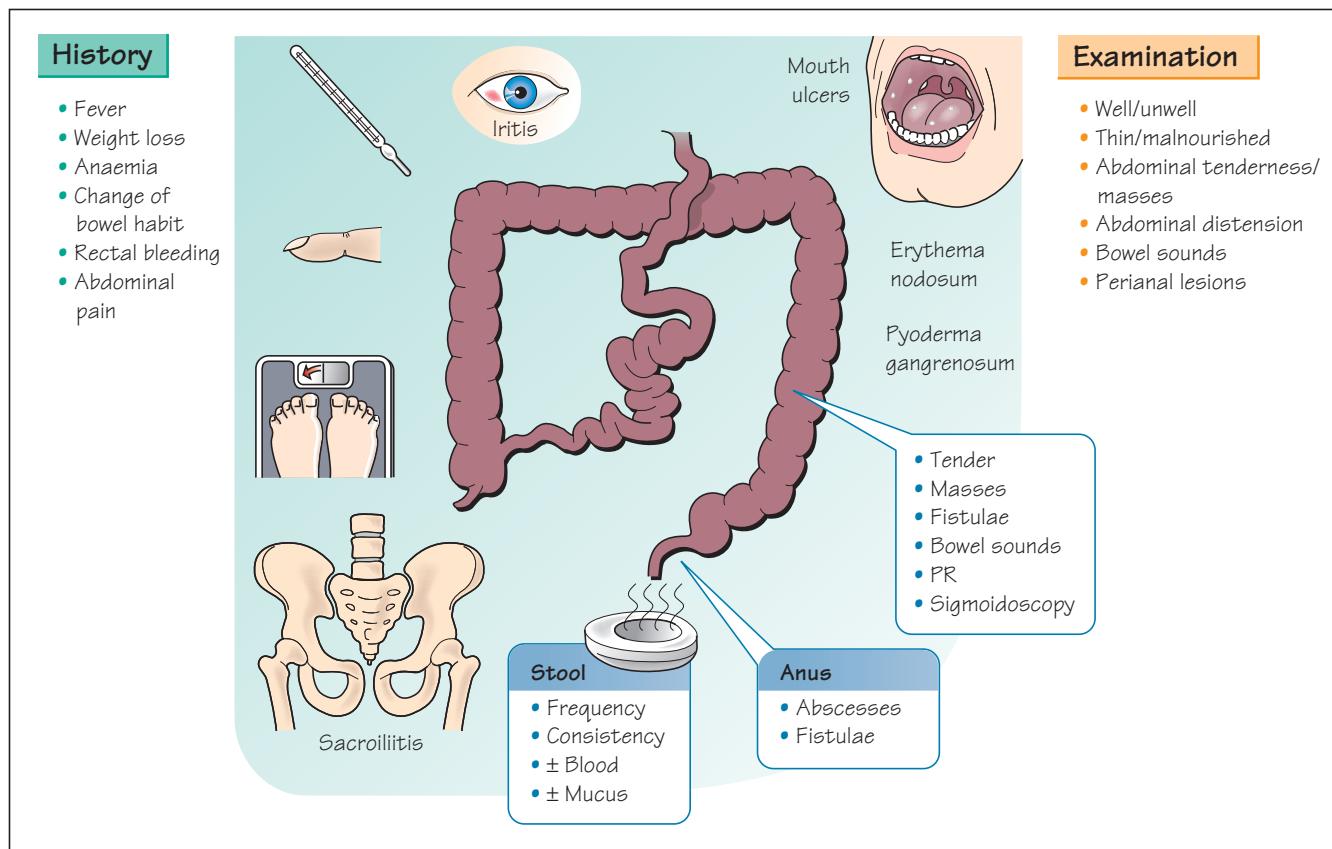
- Kayser–Fleischer rings
- Neurological features: Parkinsonism, dystonia
- Sunflower cataracts.

### Haemochromatosis

- 'Bronze' pigmentation
- Diabetes mellitus
- Arthritis
- Cardiac failure.

## Important clinical questions

- Are there signs of **chronic** liver disease?
- Are there pointers to the aetiology of the liver failure?
- How severe is the liver failure?



Ulcerative colitis is a recurrent inflammatory disease of the large bowel that includes involvement of the rectum. Crohn's disease is a similar chronic inflammatory disease of any part of the gut but with preferential involvement of the terminal ileum and ileocaecal region. Ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease can present with local manifestations such as diarrhoea, abdominal pain, blood per rectum; with systemic symptoms such as weight loss or anaemia; or with associated symptoms such as iritis, pyoderma gangrenosum or sacroiliitis. Inflammatory bowel disease has a prevalence of 200/100 000; the incidence of new cases is 15/100 000 per year.

### History

- When did the patient's bowel habit change? What is the frequency of stools? What is the consistency: any blood or mucus?
- Does the patient have abdominal pain? If so, where? What is its relationship to defaecation?
- Does the patient have mouth ulcers or perianal disease?
- Does the patient have a fever, weight loss, anorexia or symptoms of anaemia?
- Does the patient have iritis or sacroiliitis?
- Does the patient have any food allergies/intolerances?
- During severe attacks are symptoms suggestive of hypovolaemia/acute abdomen?
- Has there been any alteration in symptoms? Beware of an increased incidence in carcinoma after 5–10 years of active disease.

### Past medical history

- What was the patient's previous response to treatments/operations/bowel resection, colostomies/ileostomies?
- Has the patient had any endoscopies/biopsies?
- Has the patient had any associated diseases (e.g. ulcerative colitis and sclerosing cholangitis)?

### Drugs

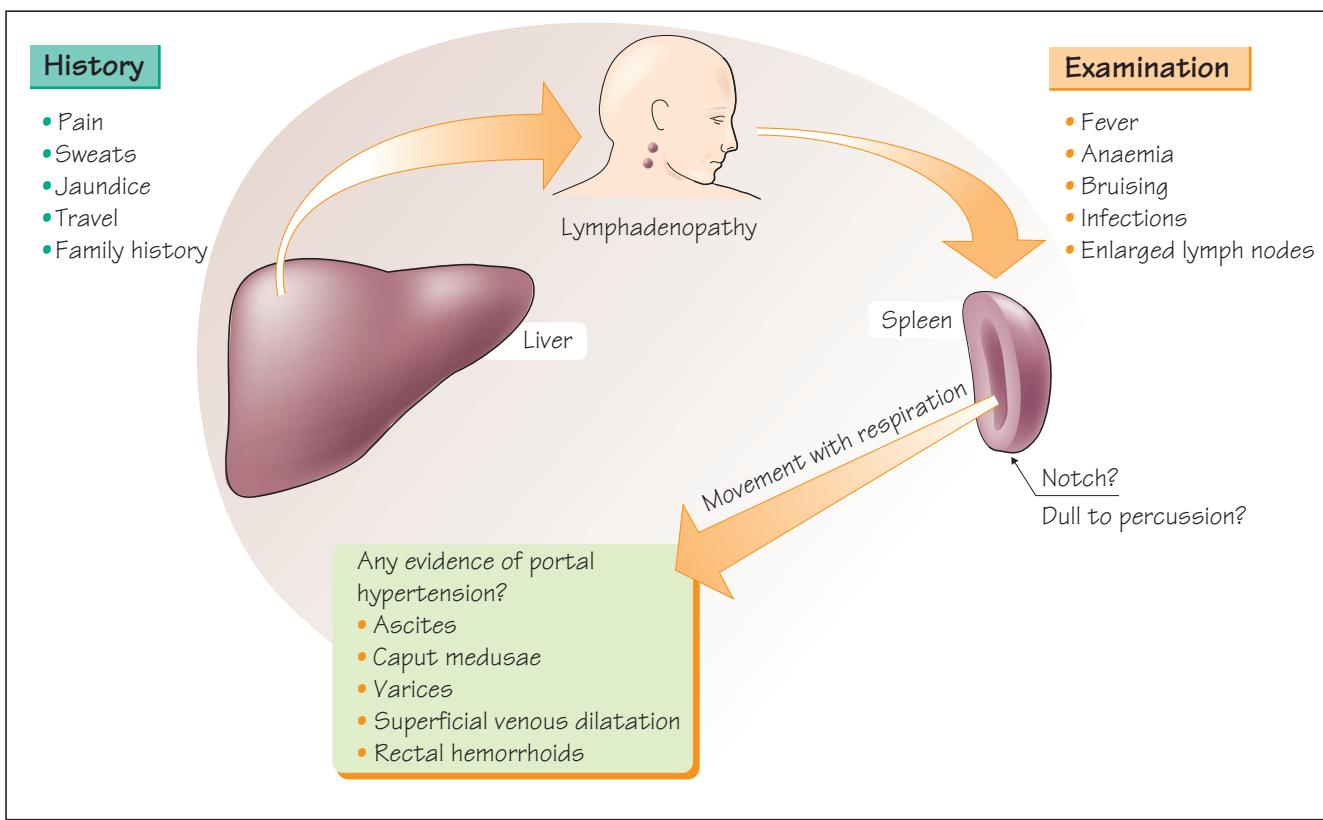
- Is the patient taking any corticosteroids, local or systemic?
- Is the patient taking immunosuppressants: azathioprine, cyclosporin, anti-TNF antibodies?
- Does the patient smoke or drink alcohol?

### Family and social history

- Any family history of inflammatory bowel disease?
- Does the disease interfere with life (ability to work, etc.)?

### Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell?
- Is the patient thin and/or poorly nourished?
- Are there any signs of pyoderma gangrenosum?
- Does the patient have: iritis, anaemia, clubbing, arthropathy, abdominal distension or abdominal tenderness or fistulae?
- Check bowel sounds.
- Perform a rectal examination, consider sigmoidoscopy.



Enlargement of the spleen and/or liver is usually detected by clinical examination. Symptoms of pain, discomfort or abdominal distension may occur but are unusual.

It is a very important finding in any patient with fever, anaemia or other unexplained illness.

### History

- Any local abdominal pain, discomfort or distension?
- Are there any features suggesting haematological disease (e.g. easy bruising or bleeding symptoms of anaemia, infections, sweats or fevers)?
- Are there any features suggesting liver disease and, in particular, portal hypertension (e.g. jaundice, abdominal distension, etc.)?
- Are there any features of current infection (e.g. fever, rigors or jaundice suggesting infections such as malaria or glandular fever)?

### Past medical history

- Any history of haematological disorders (e.g. lymphoma, leukaemia)?
- Any history of liver disease?
- Has the patient had any infective conditions (e.g. malaria)?

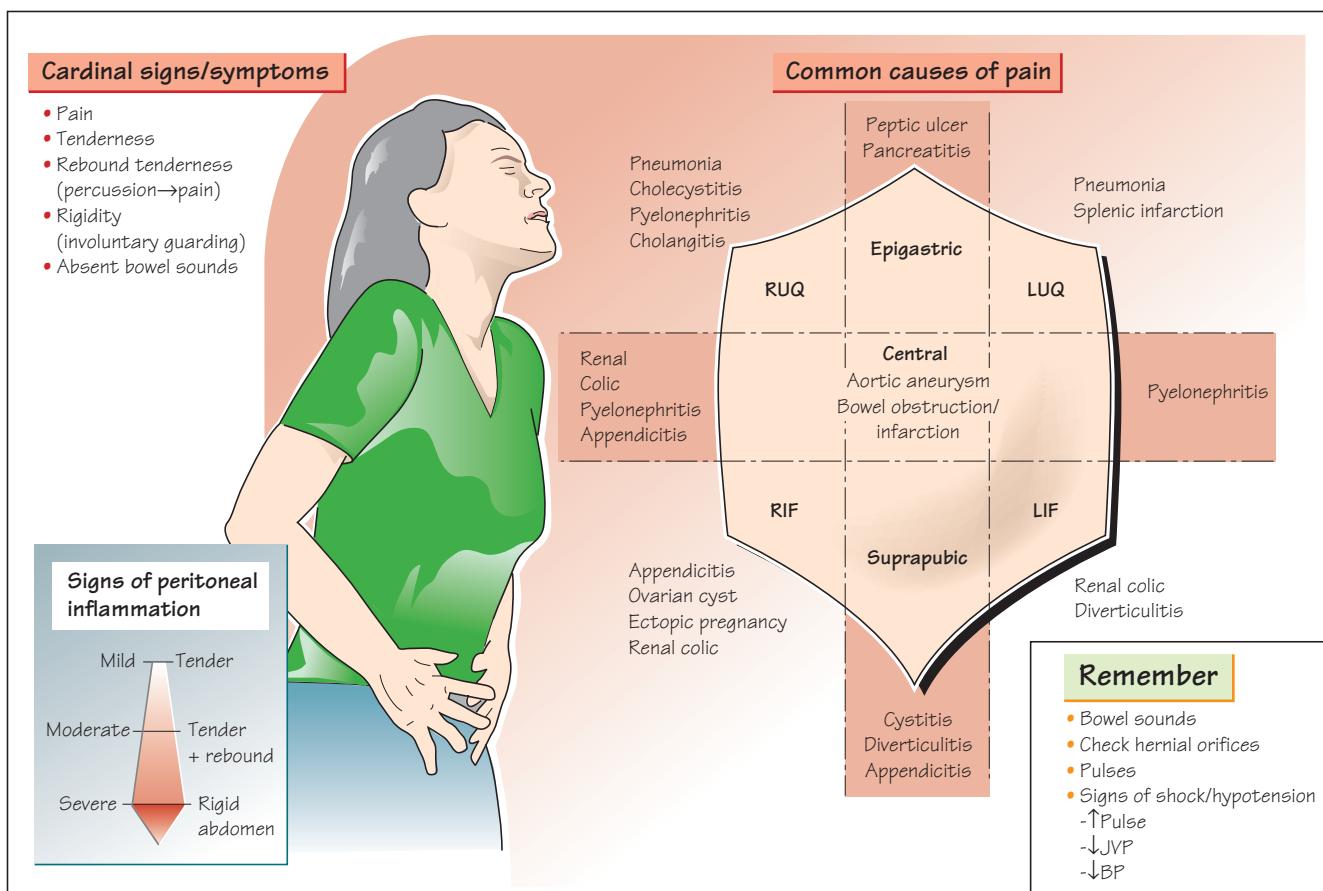
- Any personal history of inherited metabolic conditions (e.g. Gaucher's disease)?

### Family history

Ask about any family history of inherited metabolic conditions (e.g. Gaucher's disease)?

### Examination

- Is there anaemia, bruising, petechiae, polycythaemia, jaundice or lymphadenopathy?
- Does the patient have a fever?
- Are there signs of chronic liver disease and portal hypertension?
- Are there signs of infective endocarditis?
- Examine the patient for splenomegaly. Start from the right iliac fossa. Is there an edge? If so, does it move diagonally with respiration? Any overlying resonance to percussion? Is it tender? You need to distinguish from other masses that may be palpable in the left upper quadrant, such as an enlarged kidney (e.g. polycystic kidney), enlarged left lobe of liver or gastric and colonic malignancy.
- If either the spleen or liver is enlarged it is crucial to examine for enlargement of the other organ (i.e. is there hepatosplenomegaly)?



The term acute abdomen implies a presentation with the sudden onset of abdominal pain with features on examination of tenderness, guarding and rebound tenderness. It most commonly arises from intra-abdominal pathologies, such as perforated peptic ulcer, pancreatitis, perforated diverticulum, perforated appendix, ruptured aneurysm, ischaemic bowel or trauma. However, rarely, extra-abdominal disease, such as pneumonia, myocardial infarction or acidosis, can mimic the acute abdomen.

## History

- When did pain start? Where did it start and has it moved? Does it radiate (e.g. to back, loin or chest)?
- Did the pain start suddenly or gradually?
- Have there been any accompanying symptoms: nausea, vomiting, constipation, back pain, haematemesis or melaena?
- What exacerbates the pain: movement, travel to hospital in the ambulance, breathing, coughing?
- When were the bowels last open? When was flatus last passed?

## Past medical history

- Any history of indigestion, abdominal pain or abdominal operations?
- Any known aortic aneurysm, peptic ulcers, diverticular disease or pancreatitis?
- Consider the patient's fitness for general anaesthesia.

## Drugs

- Is the patient using NSAIDs?
- Does the patient have any known allergies?

## Family history

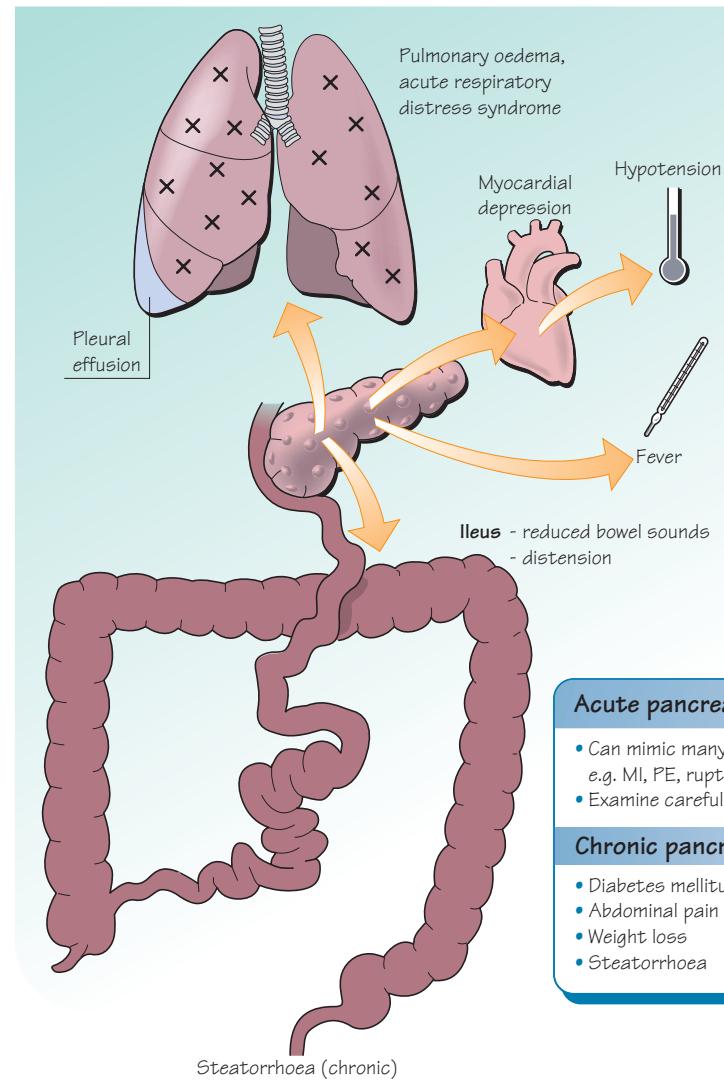
Any family history of very rare metabolic causes of abdominal pain (e.g. porphyria, familial Mediterranean fever)?

## Examination

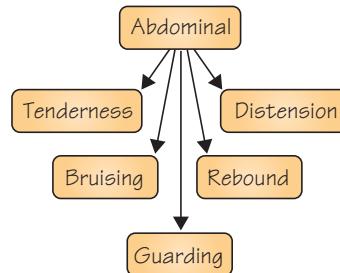
- Is the patient well or unwell? If unwell, give oxygen and resuscitate with intravenous fluids.
- Is the patient shocked or confused?
- Does the patient look pale/anaemic?
- Is the patient in pain? Is the patient keeping very still?
- Check pulse, BP and postural hypotension.
- Check respiratory rate: any tachypnoea?
- Check JVP.
- Perform a chest examination and consider pneumonia (especially basal).
- Inspect the abdomen for distension or masses.
- Any skin discolouration, bruising (Grey-Turner's sign [flanks], Cullen's sign [perumbilical])?
- Gently palpate. Is there rigidity/tenderness? Is there an area of maximal tenderness? Any guarding? Any rebound tenderness?
- Is the aorta palpable? Are peripheral pulses present?
- Check the patient for herniae.
- Check the liver/spleen/kidneys are palpable.
- Auscultate: are bowel sounds absent or high pitched? Are there signs of bruits?
- Examine external genitalia, perform a rectal examination, consider vaginal examination
- Urine: check for haematuria. Use dipstick test for haematuria and leucocytes.

**Symptoms**

- Central abdominal pain
- Nausea
- Vomiting
- Breathlessness

**Signs**

- Fever
- Tachypnoea
- Cyanosis
- Tachycardia



- Reduced bowel sounds
- Shock
- Hypotension
- Pleural effusions
- Pulmonary oedema

**Acute pancreatitis can be life-threatening**

- Can mimic many vascular and abdominal catastrophes, e.g. MI, PE, ruptured aneurysm
- Examine carefully for shock and respiratory compromise

**Chronic pancreatitis**

- Diabetes mellitus
- Abdominal pain (? post eating)
- Weight loss
- Steatorrhoea

Pancreatitis is an inflammatory condition of the pancreas that is provoked most commonly by gallstones or alcohol. If severe there can be massive inflammation, necrosis and sequestration of fluid with resultant shock and respiratory distress. Acute pancreatitis most commonly presents with severe abdominal pain. It can mimic many other important conditions, such as myocardial infarction, ruptured aortic aneurysm or any cause of an acute abdomen, such as perforated peptic ulcer. Chronic pancreatitis may produce malabsorption with weight loss and steatorrhoea.

### History

- When did the pain start? Where did it start and is there any radiation? If so does it radiate to the back? Is it accompanied by vomiting? Are there any other symptoms? Is the pain precipitated by food?
- Are there any respiratory symptoms (especially shortness of breath)?
- Are there any other GI symptoms: nausea, vomiting, constipation?

### Past medical history

- Are there any previous episodes of pancreatitis?
- Any history of known alcohol abuse?
- Is there a history of gallstones?
- Are there any signs of hyperlipidaemia?

### Drugs

- Ask about drugs that can precipitate pancreatitis (e.g. azathioprine).
- Obtain a careful history of alcohol consumption.

### Examination

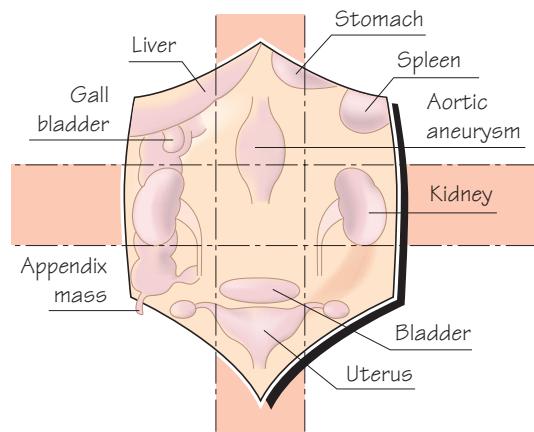
- The examination should focus particularly on the presence of respiratory difficulties, shock and hypovolaemia.
- Is the patient well or unwell? Patients with severe pancreatitis can be very severely ill with shock, sepsis syndrome and respiratory failure.
- Are there any signs of diabetes mellitus?
- Does the patient have a fever?
- Is the patient pale, shocked? Check for tachycardia and hypotension. Is there a postural fall in BP?
- Check the respiratory rate. Are there any signs of respiratory distress? Check for pulmonary oedema: any crackles, pleural effusions?
- Is the patient jaundiced? Any other evidence of alcohol excess or chronic liver disease?
- Check the abdomen. Is it tender or rigid? Is the patient guarding? Is there rebound tenderness? Are there absent bowel sounds?
- Is there bluish discolouration of flanks (Grey–Turner's sign) or periumbilical area (Cullen's sign)?



Generalized abdominal swelling

### Consider

- Fat
  - Fluid
    - Ascites
    - Intestinal obstruction
  - Flatus
    - Intestinal obstruction
  - Faeces
    - Constipation
  - Fetus
    - Arises from pelvis
- or
- Very large mass, e.g.
  - Hepatomegaly ++
  - Splenomegaly ++
  - Ovarian cyst ++



### Mass

- |                 |                                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| • Position      | • Tender                         |
| • Cough impulse | • Fluctuant                      |
| • Size          | • Bruit                          |
| • Shape         | • Pulsatile/expansile            |
| • Border        | • Dull or resonant to percussion |

Abdominal masses may be noticed by the patient or be discovered incidentally during clinical examination or during investigation of symptoms, such as weight loss, change in bowel habit, anaemia or rectal bleeding.

### History

- When was the mass first noticed and by whom?
- Any pain, discomfort?
- Any systemic features: weight loss, anorexia, fever?
- Any features of bowel obstruction (abdominal pain, distension, vomiting, constipation? Any changes in bowel habit?)
- Any haematemesis, melaena or rectal bleeding?

### Past medical history

- Ask about previous illnesses, especially abdominal disorders/operations.
- Is there any history of herniae or abdominal aortic aneurysm?

### Family history

Any family history of bowel cancer or polycystic kidney disease?

### Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell?
- Is the patient comfortable or in pain?
- Any evidence of weight loss, jaundice, anaemia, lymphadenopathy (especially Virchow's node)?
- Inspect the abdomen: is there an obvious mass? If so, is it increased on coughing?

- Palpation: check size, shape, position, border, tender, fluctuant, consistency and pulsatile/expansile.
- Auscultate: check bruit and succussion splash.
- Ascites present?
- Examine for liver, spleen, kidneys, aorta and herniae.
- Perform rectal, genitalia and vaginal examinations.

### Herniae

A hernia is the protrusion of an organ or other structure through the wall that normally contains it. Abdominal herniae present as a lump which may be reduced with direct pressure and have an expansile cough impulse or as localized discomfort. They may be irreducible or may become obstructed and strangulated.

• Abdominal herniae may be:

- inguinal (Either direct, pushing through the posterior wall of the inguinal canal and rarely strangulate or indirect, passing through the internal inguinal ring. They appear from above and medial to the pubic tubercle, can descend into the scrotum and are more common in men than women.)
- femoral (Appear through the femoral canal below and lateral to the pubic tubercle, frequently strangulate and are more common in women than men.)
- or more rarely umbilical, epigastric, spigelian, obturator or incisional.
- In examining a patient with a suspected hernia it is often helpful to get the patient to stand and to cough. Is the swelling reducible? Is it tender? Any features of bowel obstruction?

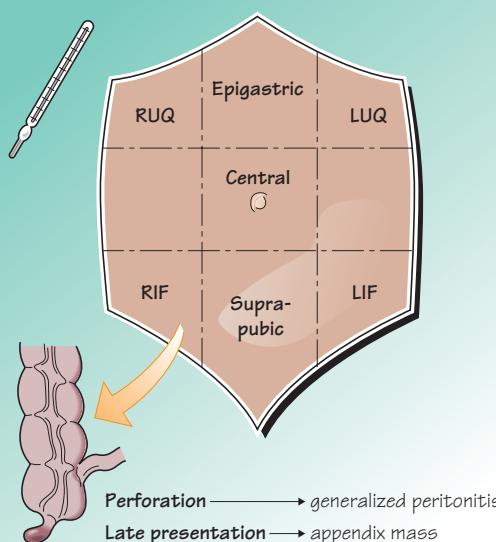
**History**

- Periumbilical pain, then localizing to the right iliac fossa
- Nausea
- Vomiting



**Examination**

- Fever
- Tachycardia
- Pain, tenderness, rebound, guarding, McBurney's point
- Right-sided pelvic tenderness on PR examination



**Differential diagnoses include:**

- ectopic pregnancy
- pyelonephritis
- diverticulitis
- pelvic inflammatory disease and many others!

**Appendicitis more likely**

- Right iliac fossa: pain, tenderness, guarding

**Appendicitis less likely**

- Generalized pain
- Pain localized elsewhere in the abdomen
- Profuse diarrhoea
- Previous appendicectomy!

Appendicitis is an acute inflammatory condition of the appendix in association with luminal obstruction and bacterial infection. It usually presents with abdominal pain. Classically the pain is initially diffuse and perumbilical, subsequently localizing to the right iliac fossa and usually precedes vomiting. However, other presentations with generalized pain, diarrhoea, vomiting or fever can occur. It can be very difficult to distinguish from other causes of abdominal pain. It is the commonest surgical emergency and can occur at any age. It has an incidence of 120/100 000 per year (although this may be falling).

### History

- Where is the pain? What is the pain like? When did it start? Where?
- Has the pain moved? Where is the worst pain?
- Are there any other symptoms: vomiting, fever, anorexia, diarrhoea, dysuria or vaginal discharge?
- Could the patient be pregnant? Is the patient sexually active? At what stage is her menstrual cycle and are there any problems with menstruation?
- Are there any urinary symptoms?
- Have there been previous episodes?
- Any previous appendicectomy (!)?

### Examination

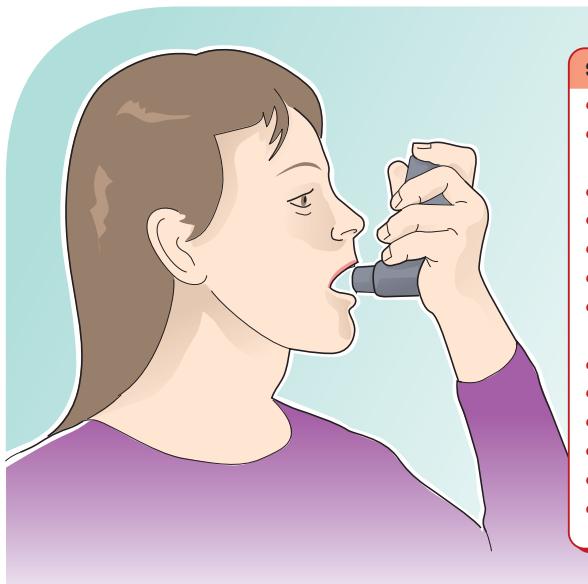
- Is the patient well or unwell? Is the patient in pain or comfortable? Is the patient lying still or moving uneasily?

- Is the patient febrile?
- Is the patient flushed?
- Check for tachycardia and hypotension.
- Check the abdomen: is there tenderness? If so, where is the area of maximal tenderness: McBurney's point? Is there rigidity, guarding, rebound, a mass, bowel sounds, percussion tenderness? Is there a positive psoas sign? (hip extension produces abdominal pain) A positive Rovsing's sign? (palpation of the left iliac fossa causes pain in the right iliac fossa).
- Perform a rectal examination. Is there pain in right iliac fossa or locally?
- Perform a vaginal examination.

### Evidence

In children with abdominal pain, fever was the most useful sign associated with appendicitis, increasing the likelihood of appendicitis (LR, 3.4). Rebound tenderness triples the odds of appendicitis (LR, 3.0). Midabdominal pain migrating to the right lower quadrant increases the chance of appendicitis (LR, 2.5).

Bundy DG, Byerley JS, Liles EA, Perrin EM, Katzenbach J, Rice HE. Does this child have appendicitis? *JAMA* 2007; **298**: 438–51.



**History**

- Wheeze
- Breathlessness
- Chest tightness
- Cough

**Examination**

- Well/unwell?
- Tired
- Able to talk in complete sentences?
- Respiratory rate
- Pulse rate
- Use of accessory muscles
- Intercostal recession
- Wheeze

**Signs of severe asthmatic attack**

- Cyanosis
- Tachypnoea >25 (but beware: if tiring respiratory rate may fall)
- Tachycardia >120
- Drowsy
- Unable to speak
- 'Silent' chest
- Failure to improve with nebulized  $\beta_2$ -agonists
- Confusion
- Bradycardia
- Feeble respiratory effort
- Exhaustion
- Coma
- Hypotension

<b>Severe</b>	<b>Mild</b>	<b>Causes of deterioration</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cyanosed</li> <li>• Drowsy</li> <li>• Pulse 130</li> <li>• RR 35</li> <li>• Can't speak</li> <li>• Peak expiratory flow (PEF) &lt;50% of best or predicted</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pink</li> <li>• Alert</li> <li>• Pulse 80</li> <li>• RR 15</li> <li>• Speaking in sentences</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Infection</li> <li>• Allergy</li> <li>• NSAIDs</li> <li>• Beta-blockers</li> <li>• Pneumothorax</li> </ul>

Asthma is a very common condition characterized by episodic breathlessness and wheeze. Other symptoms such as cough also occur. The patient often describes their chest as feeling tight. It has a prevalence of at least 5%. The symptoms of asthma tend to be variable, intermittent, worse at night and provoked by triggers including exercise. Consider the diagnosis of asthma in any patient with episodic or variable wheeze, shortness of breath, chest tightness, or cough.

- Has the patient had an attack or recurrent attacks of wheezing?
- Does the patient have a troublesome night-time cough?
- Does the patient wheeze or cough after exercise?
- Do the patients colds 'go to the chest' or take more than 10 days to clear up?
- Are symptoms improved by asthma treatment?

Other conditions that should be considered in the differential diagnosis of asthma are:

upper airway obstruction, inhaled foreign body, COPD, diffuse parenchymal lung disease, pulmonary oedema.

## History

- What precipitated the attack: respiratory tract infection, exercise, allergen, aspirin/NSAIDs or cold air?
- What are the symptoms: wheeze (usually diffuse, polyphonic, bilateral and particularly expiratory), cough and breathlessness?

- Any unusual features present (severe chest pains, haemoptysis)?
- What has been the response to therapy (inhalers, nebulizers, corticosteroids)? Do they monitor their peak expiratory flow rate?
- When assessing the patient with severe asthma a calm and reassuring approach can be very therapeutic.

## Past medical history

- Any previous admissions for asthma?
- Has the patient ever been artificially ventilated for asthmatic attack?
- Is the patient's sleep disturbed by asthma?
- What is the patient's usual exercise tolerance?
- Has the patient taken any days off work/school due to asthma?
- Does the patient have any other features of atopy (e.g. eczema/rhinitis)?
- Any diurnal variation in symptoms? (NB. Early morning deterioration is common.)
- Are there any associated diseases (e.g. bronchopulmonary aspergillosis, Churg–Strauss syndrome)?

## Family and social history

- Assess the impact of the disease on the patient's life.
- Is there a family history of asthma/atopy?

- What is the patient's occupation? Any deterioration of asthma at work/relief at weekends? (There are specific occupational causes of asthma.)

## Drugs

- What is usual treatment: inhalers, nebulizers, corticosteroids (inhaled or oral) or aminophylline?
- Do drugs show any precipitation of asthma (e.g. betablockers, aspirin)?
- Does the patient smoke?
- Does the patient have any allergies (e.g. to antibiotics, animals, pets or house dust mite)?

## Examination

- If the patient is unwell administer oxygen by mask.
- Is the patient cyanosed?
- Is the patient distressed, frightened, able/unable to talk (complete sentences), tired or exhausted?
- Is there wheezing? (Distinguish from inspiratory stridor.) (NB. In severe asthma the chest may be 'silent' with little ventilation.)
- Any sputum? If so, what colour? Is it in plugs?
- What is the patient's respiratory rate?
- Check the patient's pulse rate.
- Check the patient's peak expiratory flow.
- In the well patient, examine his/her inhaler technique.
- Is there use of accessory muscles, intercostal recession?
- Consider pneumonia or pneumothorax as a cause of deterioration.
- Is there pulsus paradoxus? (NB. May be absent in severe attack.)
- Pulsus paradoxus (exaggerated decrease in BP on inspiration) can occur in severe asthma but may be absent in a severe attack and can

also occur in pericardial tamponade, hypovolaemic shock, right ventricular failure and pulmonary embolism.

## Other causes of breathlessness and wheeze

- Pulmonary oedema
- COPD
- Stridor
- Anaphylaxis.

## Patients at risk of developing fatal asthma

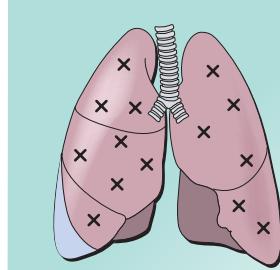
- Previous near fatal asthma, e.g. previous ventilation or respiratory acidosis.
- Previous admission for asthma especially in the last year.
- Requiring three or more classes of asthma medication.
- Heavy use of  $\beta_2$ -agonist.
- Repeated attendances at A&E for asthma care.
- Particularly if combined with adverse behavioural or psychosocial features.
- **NB. In an acute attack measure peak expiratory flow, pulse oximetry and perform arterial blood gases to determine  $Pao_2$  and  $Paco_2$ .  $Sao_2 <92\%$ ,  $Pao_2 <8\text{ kPa}$  and normal  $Paco_2$  (4.6–6.0 kPa) or elevated  $Paco_2$  are signs of a life-threatening attack.**

## Evidence

The British Thoracic Society Guidelines. British guidelines on the management of asthma. *Thorax* 2003; **58** (Suppl. I): 1–94.

**History**

- Cough - sputum
- Pleuritic pain
- Breathlessness
- Fever
- Rigors
- Shock

**Signs of severe pneumonia**

- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| • Cyanosis             | • Shock                    |
| • Respiratory distress | • Respiratory rate >30/min |
| • Confusion            | • Pulse >100/min           |
| • Coma                 | • Diastolic BP <60mmHg     |

**Examination**

- Crackles
- Dull to percussion
- Bronchial breathing
- Fever
- Tachypnoea
- Tachycardia
- Cyanosis

**Complications of pneumonia**

- Respiratory failure
- Septicaemia ± shock
- Empyema

Pneumonia is a common illness of pulmonary infection acquired in the community or in hospital.

**History**

The symptoms of pneumonia may be local with a productive cough, breathlessness or pleuritic pain. The cough may be productive of sputum (often green) or contain blood (classically the rusty coloured sputum of pneumococcal pneumonia). There may be systemic symptoms, such as fatigue, anorexia, myalgias, fever and rigors. If severe, pneumonia may present with respiratory failure, shock or confusion.

The patient may have an underlying respiratory disease such as COPD or asthma, or be immunosuppressed due to drugs, HIV, neutropenia or recent influenza. Other important aetiologies include aspiration, reduced coughing due to chest wall pain (e.g. rib fracture, postoperation) and bronchial obstruction due to tumour.

It is important to bear in mind that several serious illnesses may be difficult to distinguish from pneumonia including pulmonary embolus and pulmonary oedema.

Although the majority of pneumonias are caused by bacteria, such as *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, it is important to also consider more atypical pathogens, such as *Legionella*, *Mycoplasma* or *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.

**Examination**

- As in any ill patient, it is vital to maintain the airway, ensure that breathing is adequate, provide supplemental oxygen and ensure circulatory adequacy.
- Is there respiratory distress (rapid shallow breathing, intercostal recession, fatigue)? Signs of cyanosis, respiratory distress, confusion, coma or shock imply a severe pneumonia requiring urgent treatment and resuscitation.
- A respiratory rate greater than 30 breaths/minute, a tachycardia >100b.p.m. and a temperature >37.8°C increase the likelihood of pneumonia.

- In the chest focal consolidation may produce dullness to percussion, reduced breath sounds, bronchial breathing, and coarse crackles. It is important to recognize that severe pneumonia may be present and seen on a chest X-ray without such clinical findings. The sputum should be examined, and a chest X-ray and arterial blood gases are essential investigations.

**Evidence**

The CURB-65 score can assess severity of pneumonia with a point each for:

- Confusion
- Urea >7 mmol/L
- Respiratory rate >30/minute
- Blood pressure, low systolic (<90 mmHg) or diastolic (<60 mmHg)
- Age >65 years at initial hospital assessment.

This enabled patients to be stratified according to increasing risk of mortality:

Score	Mortality (%)
0	0.7
1	3.2
2	3.0
3	17.0
4	41.5
5	57.0

Lim WS, van der Eerden MM, Laing R et al. Defining community acquired pneumonia severity on presentation to hospital: an international derivation and validation study. *Thorax* 2003; **58**: 377–82.

**Symptoms**

- Shortness of breath
- Chest pain
- ?Pleuritic

Consider underlying diagnoses which could include:

	Symptoms	Signs
Congestive cardiac failure	Leg swelling Orthopnoea PND	Raised JVP Ascites Oedema Gallop rhythm
Pneumonia	Cough Fever	Fever Consolidation
Carcinoma of lung	Weight loss Haemoptysis	Clubbing Lymphadenopathy
Nephrotic syndrome	Frothy urine Leg swelling	Peripheral oedema Proteinuria

**Signs**

- Tracheal deviation

- Reduced chest movements
- Dull to percussion
- Reduced/absent breath sounds
- Reduced vocal fremitus/resonance
- Pleural rub ?

Pleural effusion is the abnormal accumulation of fluid in the pleural space. Pleural effusion may present with shortness of breath, chest pains or due to symptoms of the underlying condition. The commoner causes include: congestive cardiac failure, pneumonia (?empyema), carcinoma of lung, lung metastases, mesothelioma, pulmonary embolus or nephrotic syndrome.

### History

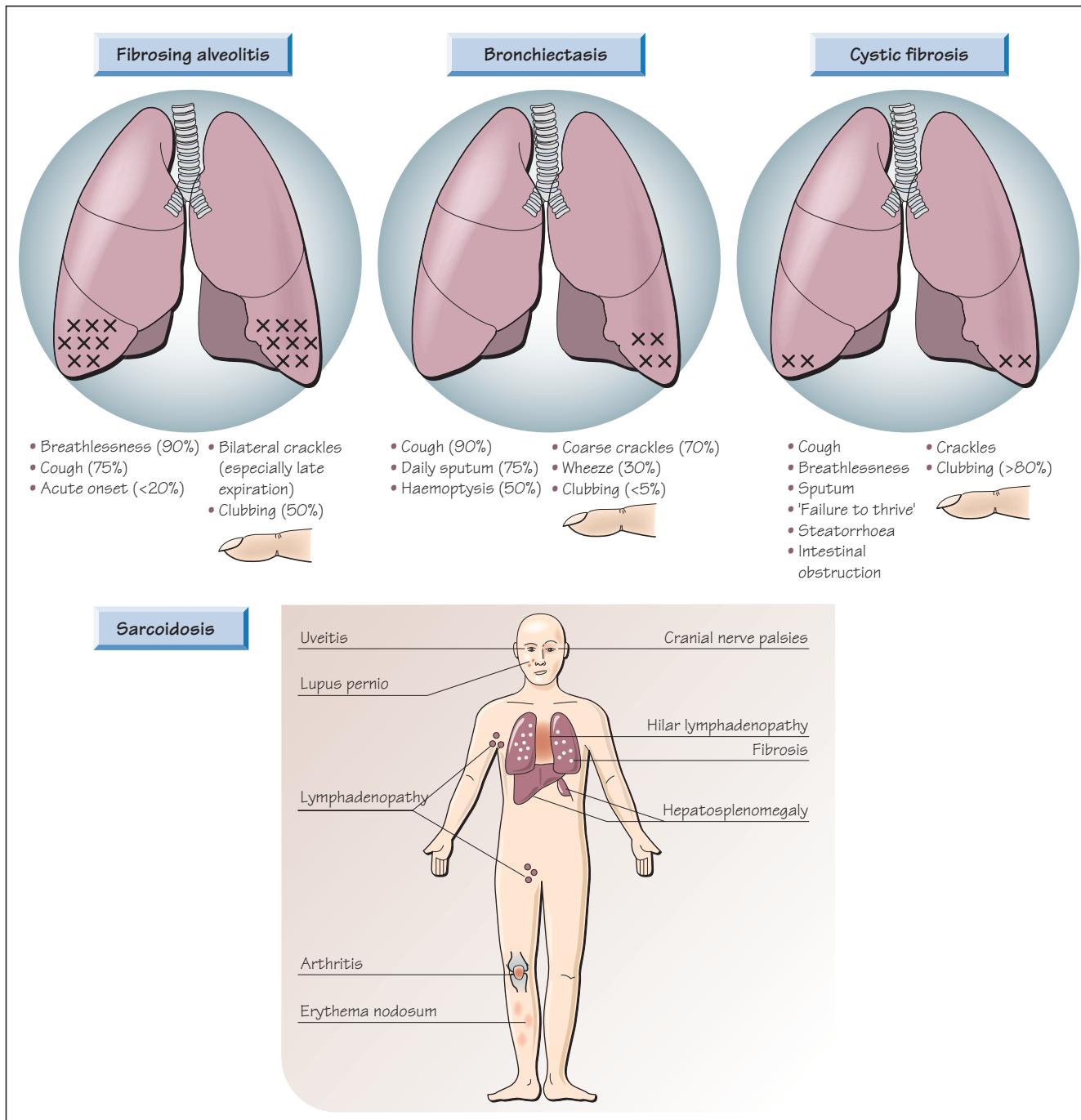
- When were the breathlessness, chest pains first noticed?
- What is the patient's exercise tolerance (breathless at rest, mild exertion, etc)?
- Are there any other symptoms suggesting one of the above aetiologies?
- Is there cough, haemoptysis, orthopnoea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea or peripheral oedema? Are there symptoms suggestive of malignancy elsewhere?
- Take a full smoking history (previous, current or passive) and gather a full occupational history (any asbestos exposure)?

### Examination

- Does the patient look well or unwell?

- Is the patient in respiratory distress? Is the patient breathless at rest? (Treat with oxygen and consider drainage of the pleural effusion if unwell.)
- Is there clubbing? Is the patient thin, cyanosed, anaemic or jaundiced?
- Are chest movements symmetrical? Is the trachea central? Is percussion equal and resonant? Does the patient's breath sound present and symmetrical? Is there a pleural rub?
- Classically, a large unilateral pleural effusion produces reduced chest movements on the affected side, causes deviation of the trachea away from the affected side, with dullness (stony) to percussion and reduced (or absent) breath sounds on the affected side.
- Are there any signs of congestive cardiac failure (e.g. raised JVP, peripheral oedema or ascites)?
- Are there any signs of pneumonia (e.g. fever, productive cough or consolidation)?
- Are there any features suggestive of malignant disease (e.g. recent weight loss, haemoptysis or clubbing)?

# Fibrosing alveolitis, bronchiectasis, cystic fibrosis and sarcoidosis



## Fibrosing alveolitis

### History

Fibrosing alveolitis is characterized by inflammatory cells in the alveolar and interstitium together with pulmonary fibrosis. Patients with fibrosing alveolitis present with a gradually progressive shortness of breath, although more acute presentations can occur. There may be exertional dyspnoea and cough. There may be a history of exposure

to allergens (e.g. extrinsic allergic alveolitis and bird fancier's lung) or of an associated disease, such as rheumatoid arthritis. Other classifications of interstitial lung disease have emerged recently based upon histological and radiographic findings. These include usual interstitial pneumonitis (UIP), non-specific interstitial pneumonitis (NSIP), bronchiolitis obliterans-organizing pneumonia (BOOP), respiratory bronchiolitis associated interstitial lung disease (RB-ILD),

desquamative interstitial pneumonitis (DIP) and lymphocytic interstitial pneumonitis (LIP). However, the features on history and examination tend to be similar. Patients classically present with exercise-limiting breathlessness as their primary complaint. Many also have a troublesome non-productive cough. Bilateral basal crackles are prominent in all types of idiopathic interstitial pneumonia. Clubbing can be seen in all patients. A prolonged expiratory phase or wheezing is suggestive of RB-ILD or concomitant chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Some respond well to treatment with steroids (e.g. NSIP, BOOP, RB-ILD and DIP) whilst others do not (e.g. UIP).

### Past medical history

- Ask about other associated diseases (e.g. rheumatoid arthritis, scleroderma).
- A full drug history is vital and may reveal agents that can cause pulmonary fibrosis (e.g. amiodarone) and should detail treatments received, such as corticosteroids and other immunosuppressants.

### Family and social history

The occupational history may reveal dust or allergen exposure (e.g. farmer's lung). The extent of disability should be sought, as should any hobbies or pets that might lead to allergen exposure.

### Examination

- The classical features are clubbing and 'showers' of bilateral crackles.
- Is the patient breathless at rest or on exertion?
- Are there any signs of cyanosis?

### Bronchiectasis

Bronchiectasis is a lung disease characterized by dilatation of bronchi that often become chronically infected. The classic symptom is of cough productive of purulent sputum. Many patients will have daily sputum production. There may also be haemoptysis and progressive deterioration in respiratory function. There may be winter exacerbations.

### Past medical history

There may have been an underlying respiratory illness in childhood, such as pneumonia, whooping cough or TB. There are also rare inherited disorders with immotile cilia (Kartagener's = bronchiectasis and

dextrocardia, defective cilia) or  $\alpha_1$ -antitrypsin deficiency, and patients with immunodeficiency may present with bronchiectasis.

### Examination

The commonest clinical finding is the presence of crackles on auscultation. In some patients wheeze may be audible. Clubbing may occur but is rare.

### Cystic fibrosis

Cystic fibrosis is an inherited disorder usually presenting in childhood or adolescence with bronchiectasis. Other presentations include malabsorption due to pancreatic insufficiency with steatorrhoea, intestinal obstruction, rectal prolapse and failure to thrive.

### Past medical history

- Any relevant previous hospital admissions?
- Any antibiotic treatments and any known colonization with antibiotic resistant organisms?
- Any treatments including postural drainage and chest physiotherapy and lung/heart-lung transplants?

### Family history

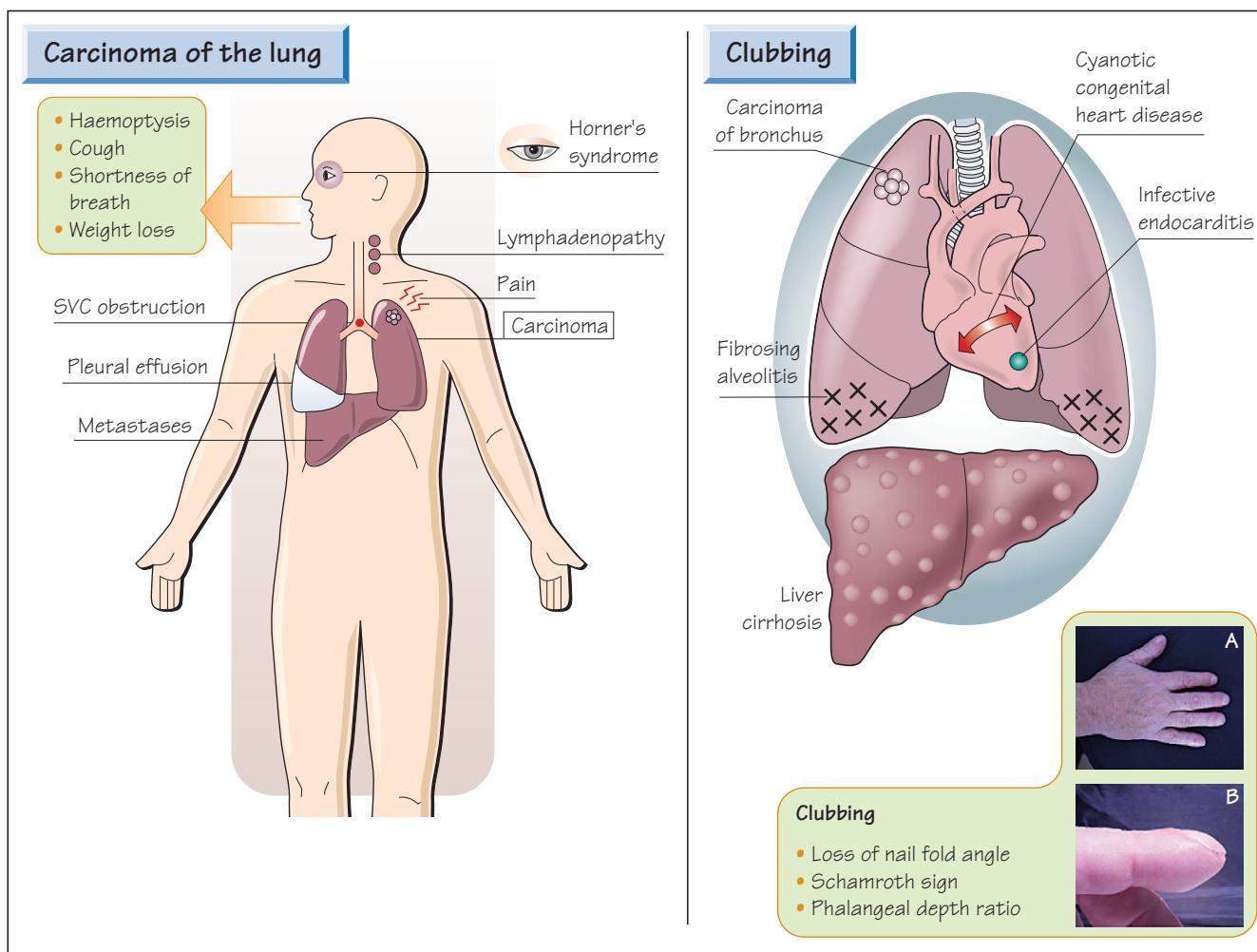
Cystic fibrosis is autosomal recessive and so one in four siblings would be affected on average.

### Examination

- Is the patient well or poorly nourished?
- Any indwelling line for antibiotic treatment?
- Any clubbing?
- Are there signs of respiratory distress?
- Does the patient have a productive cough?
- Rarely there may be signs of chronic liver disease.

### Sarcoidosis

Sarcoidosis is a multisystem granulomatous condition that can affect many areas of the body but most commonly involves the lung. Presentations can be with breathlessness or incidentally noted hilar lymphadenopathy or fibrosis on chest X-ray. Other organs affected can include the skin (lupus pernio and erythema nodosum), joints (polyarthralgia), the eyes (uveitis) the CNS (neurosarcoid), or enhanced vitamin D hydroxylation can lead to hypercalcaemia.



Carcinoma of the lung is the commonest fatal malignancy. It may present with symptoms due to local disease, due to metastases or due to the systemic effects of malignancy or be found incidentally during chest X-ray examination.

### History

- Symptoms of local disease:

- haemoptysis
- cough
- chest pain
- wheeze
- shortness of breath
- Horner's syndrome (ptosis, miosis, reduced sweating)
- pleural effusion
- superior vena caval obstruction (headache, dilated veins, facial oedema?)
- clubbing
- lymphadenopathy
- voice change (recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy)
- chest X-ray abnormality.

- Systemic symptoms of malignancy:

- weight loss
- anorexia
- fever
- endocrine manifestations (e.g. Cushing's syndrome, SIADH)
- hypercalcaemia.
- Symptoms of metastases:
  - jaundice
  - hepatic pain
  - skin lesions.
- Are there any symptoms suggesting secondary spread or other primary tumour?

### Past medical history

- Enquire about the patient's smoking history.
- Ask about exposure to asbestos.
- Has the patient undergone any radiotherapy and/or chemotherapy?
- Ask about occupational history/exposure.
- Ask about respiratory function and other cardiorespiratory disease (if pneumonectomy/lobectomy contemplated).
- Enquire about any other primary malignancies.

## Examination

- What is the general condition of the patient: thin/well nourished, anaemic, jaundiced? Consider their possible fitness for operative resection (e.g. test ability to climb stairs).
- Check the patient's voice (is it hoarse)? Check the patient's cough (is it 'bovine')?
- Is there clubbing? (One-third of patients with lung carcinoma are clubbed.)
- Do the patient's nails show nicotine stains?
- Does the patient have any radiotherapy tattoos?
- Check for respiratory signs (respiratory distress, cyanosis and tachypnoea).
- Perform a chest examination. Any pleural effusion, crackles, unequal air entry or lobectomy scar?
- Check for lymphadenopathy.

## Rare complications

- Pericardial effusion.
- Horner's syndrome (ipsilateral ptosis, miosis, anhydrosis).
- Wasting of small muscles of the hand (invasion of brachial plexus).
- Pancoast tumour (apical tumour producing upper limb pain due to brachial plexus invasion and commonly Horner's syndrome).
- SVC obstruction (venous dilatation, facial swelling/oedema, fixed engorgement of neck veins, suffusion of eyes).

- Peripheral neuropathy, myopathy, dermatomyositis.
- Metastatic spread (e.g. hepatomegaly, skin nodules).

## Clubbing

- Clubbing is the loss of the nail-fold angle due to thickening of the nail bed and is associated with a variety of important medical conditions. There may be increased sponginess of the nail bed and increased curvature of the nail. (It coincides rarely with hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy, which produces a painful swelling of the wrists.)
- Common causes:
  - carcinoma of bronchus
  - fibrosing alveolitis
  - cyanotic congenital heart disease
  - infective endocarditis
  - cirrhosis of the liver
  - congenital.
- Look especially for any respiratory signs or symptoms. The main concern is underlying carcinoma of the lung.

## Evidence

Myers KA & Farquhar DR. Does this patient have clubbing? *JAMA* 2001; **286**: 341–7.

**Symptoms**

- Dyspnoea
- Cough
- Wheeze

**Signs**

- Cyanosed
- Pursed lips
- Hyperexpanded
- Tachypnoea
- Tachycardia
- Plethoric

**Signs of cor pulmonale**

- Raised JVP
- Peripheral oedema
- Hepatomegaly

**Causes for deterioration**

- Infection: bronchitis, pneumonia
- Pulmonary oedema
- Pulmonary embolus
- Pneumothorax

**Wheeze Quiet breath sounds**

**Signs of carbon dioxide retention**

- Flushed
- Bounding pulse
- Drowsy
- Confused
- Comatose
- Papilloedema
- Metabolic flap

COPD is a disease characterized by a progressive airflow limitation caused by an abnormal inflammatory reaction. It encompasses diseases such as chronic bronchitis and emphysema and is most commonly due to smoking. The dominant symptom in COPD is feeling breathless, often noticed initially on exertion. There is often cough, which may be productive of sputum and wheeze. The symptoms commonly progress with increasing breathlessness and reduced exercise tolerance. There are exacerbations, commonly attributed to infection, during which there is increased breathlessness, cough, wheeze and sputum production. It usually occurs in those patients over 45 years of age. (Chronic bronchitis = sputum production on most days for 3 months of 2 successive years.) COPD has a prevalence of over 2%.

In some patients with COPD there may be loss of hypercapnic respiratory drive and thus reliance upon hypoxic stimulation of ventilation. Uncontrolled administration of oxygen can lead to the loss of stimulation of ventilation by hypoxia and to increased and dangerous hypercapnia (carbon dioxide retention).

There is usually a history of smoking (if not the diagnosis should be questioned and/or other aetiologies sought).

### History

- How long has the patient felt breathless? When does the patient feel breathless: at rest or on exertion?
- What can the patient do before feeling short of breath? How far can the patient walk?

- Does the patient cough? If so, is there any sputum, how much and what colour?
- Is the patient wheezy? If so, when?
- How long has the patient been as bad as this?
- What seemed to trigger it?
- Does the patient get chest pain or breathless when lying down?
- Has the patient ever been ventilated? Has the patient ever been hospitalized? (If so, what were the baseline spirometry and blood gases?)

### Past medical history

- Ask about any previous respiratory conditions (e.g. asthma, TB, carcinoma of the bronchus, bronchiectasis or emphysema).
- Enquire about any other cardiac or respiratory conditions.
- Has there been any episodes of pneumonia?
- Ask about any symptoms of sleep apnoea (daytime sleepiness, snoring). Is there winter deterioration?

### Drugs

- Ask about the patient's response to treatments: corticosteroids, nebulizers, home oxygen? Does the patient use home oxygen? If so, for how many hours a day does he/she use it?
- Establish the patient's smoking history (previous [packs a day/years], current and passive).

## Family and social history

- What is the patient's occupational history (pneumoconiosis)?
- Any family history of chronic breathing problems (consider  $\alpha_1$ -antitrypsin deficiency)?
- What is the extent of the patient's disability? What is the patient's exercise tolerance? How far can the patient walk? Is the patient able to get out of the house? Can the patient climb the stairs? Where is the patient's bed/bathroom, etc.? Who does the patient's shopping, washing, cooking, etc.?

## Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell? Is the patient distressed, anxious, able to speak (able to complete sentences)?
- Patients often sit upright and may brace themselves with their arms.
- Is the patient breathless at rest or on minimal exertion (e.g. getting onto couch)?
- Is the patient cyanosed (plethora [polycythaemia])?
- Is the patient using oxygen, nebulizers or inhalers?
- Check the patient's respiratory rate and pulse rate.
- Any sputum? If so, what colour? Any blood (haemoptysis)?
- Any audible wheeze or stridor?
- Any purse-lipped breathing? Prolonged expiratory phase?
- Any use of accessory muscles (intercostal recession or tracheal tug)?
- What is the maximum laryngeal height? (Distance between the top of the thyroid cartilage and the suprasternal notch at end expiration <4 cm is a sign of COPD.)
- Any hyperexpansion?
- Are the respiratory movements symmetrical?
- Are there any scars?
- Is the trachea central?
- Is the JVP elevated?
- Check heart sounds. Are there any signs of cor pulmonale?
- If the JVP is elevated check right ventricular heave. Any signs of hepatomegaly or peripheral oedema?
- Check breath sounds (commonly quiet, distant). Any added crackles, wheeze or rub?

- Check percussion: Any dullness?
- Are there any signs of carbon dioxide retention (bounding pulse, flushed, drowsy, confused, coma)?

**Table 98.1** Differential diagnosis of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)

*COPD*

Mid-life onset  
Slowly progressing symptoms  
Long history of smoking

*Asthma*

Early onset  
Varying symptoms  
Symptoms during the night/early morning  
Presence of allergy, rhinitis and/or eczema  
A family history  
Airflow limitation that is largely reversible

*Congestive heart failure*

Fine basal crackles on auscultation  
Dilated heart on chest radiography  
Pulmonary oedema  
Volume restriction not airflow limitation on pulmonary function tests

*Bronchiectasis*

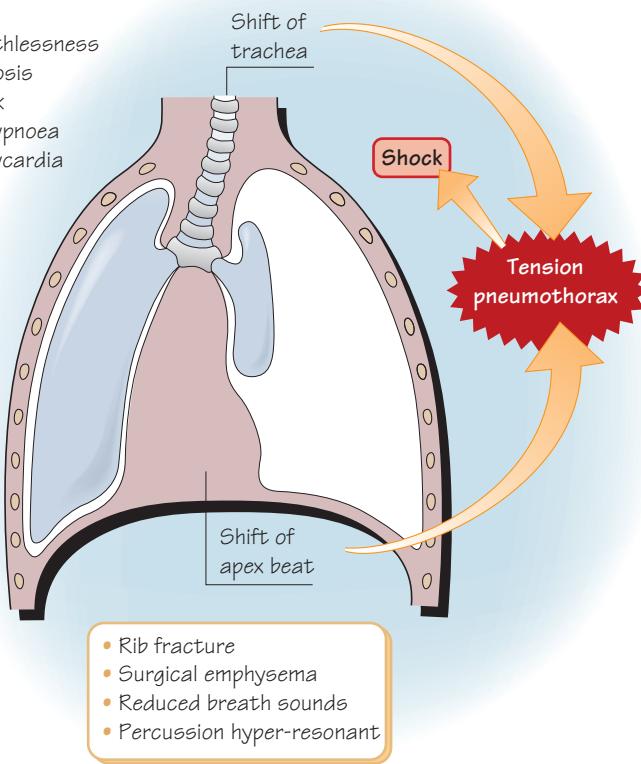
Large volume of purulent sputum  
Coarse crackles/clubbing

*Tuberculosis*

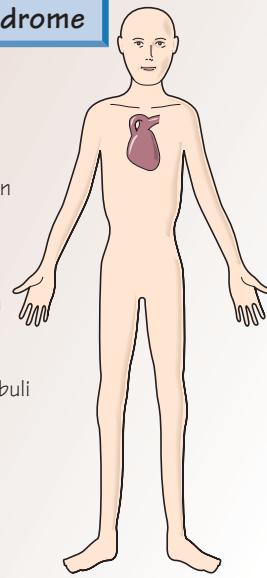
Onset at all ages  
Lung infiltrate on chest radiography  
Microbiological confirmation  
High local prevalence of TB

**History**

- Pain
- Breathlessness
- Cyanosis
- Shock
- Tachypnoea
- Tachycardia

**Marfan's syndrome**

- Tall
- Span > height
- Arachnodactyly
- Lens dislocation
- Aortic dissection
- Mitral valve prolapse
- Dilation of ascending aorta
- Herniae
- Dural ectasia
- Protrusio acetabuli



Pneumothorax is air in the pleural space. It can occur in the context of chronic respiratory disease, such as asthma or COPD, with pleural disease (such as mesothelioma), when a patient is being ventilated, following trauma, with connective tissue disease (such as Marfan's syndrome) or be idiopathic (classically occurring in tall, young men). It can complicate any invasive procedure of the chest, such as central venous cannulation. It should be considered in any patient with a sudden onset of breathlessness.

**History**

Pneumothorax commonly presents with a sudden onset of sharp chest pain. It may be accompanied by breathlessness.

A tension pneumothorax may arise in which there is increasing accumulation of air in the pleural space that cannot escape, producing mediastinal shift and in which shock and cyanosis may develop rapidly. It is a reversible cause of cardiac arrest.

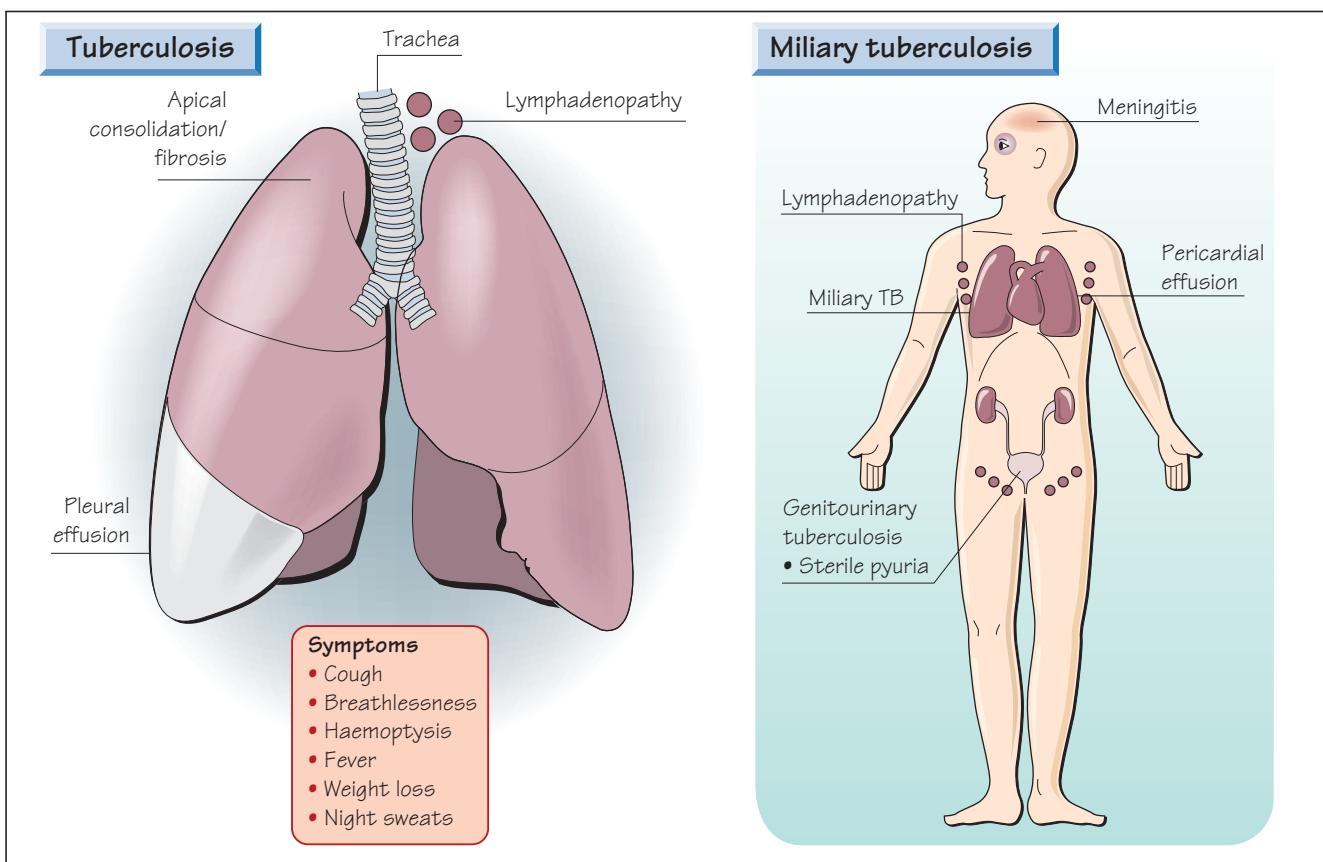
**Past medical history**

- Any previous pneumothorax?
- Any known respiratory disease?

- Does the patient have diagnosed Marfan's syndrome?
- Smoking considerably increases the incidence of idiopathic pneumothoraces.

**Examination**

- Is the patient unwell, in need of supplemental oxygen and urgent/immediate aspiration of the pneumothorax?
- Are there any signs of shock, especially hypotension?
- Is the patient in pain?
- Is the patient distressed?
- Is the patient tachypnoeic?
- Are there signs of cyanosis?
- Classically, the affected side is hyperresonant to percussion with reduced breath sounds. (However, such clinical signs may be absent even with significant pneumothorax.)
- Could there be a tension pneumothorax? Consider this possibility in any unwell patient with chest pain and breathlessness.
- In the unwell, breathless patient, chest X-rays may be necessary to exclude a pneumothorax.



Infection with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* can present with local effects anywhere in the body or with systemic effects of chronic infection.

### History

- A high index of suspicion is required especially in the immunosuppressed or those from endemic areas.
- Local symptoms:* cough, breathlessness, haemoptysis, lymphadenopathy, rash (e.g. lupus vulgaris), chest X-ray abnormality or GI disturbance.
- Systemic effects:* fever, night sweats, anorexia or weight loss.
- Tuberculous meningitis tends to have a greater duration of illness, headache, fever and greater incidence of cranial nerve palsies than bacterial meningitis.

### Past medical history

- Any exposure to patients with TB?
- Is the patient immunosuppressed (corticosteroids/HIV)?
- Has the patient had previous chest X-rays showing abnormalities?
- Any history of BCG vaccination or Mantoux tests?
- Any history of diagnosed TB?

### Drugs

Has the patient had any treatment for TB? If so, what agents were used, what was the duration of the treatment, what was the

patient's compliance with the treatment and was there any observed therapy?

### Family and social history

- Any family or social history of TB?
- Ask about alcohol consumption, intravenous drug use and foreign travel.

### Examination

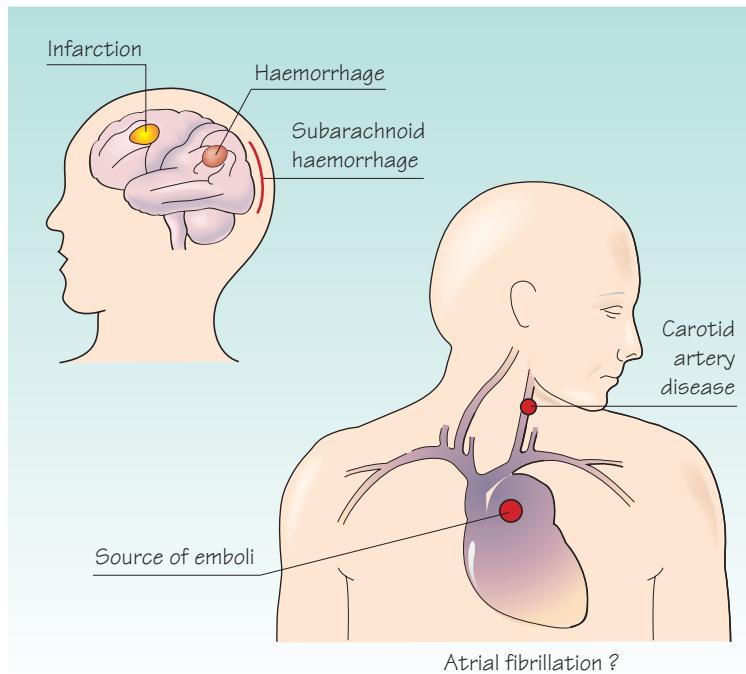
• TB may produce local chest signs, systemic signs, or if miliary TB has developed many parts of the body may be affected producing, e.g., meningitis, skin lesions, retinal lesions, spinal osteomyelitis (Pott's disease) or genitourinary TB.

- Is there pyrexia, anaemia or jaundice?
- Any lymphadenopathy?
- Does the patient appear thin or malnourished?
- Any tracheal deviation?
- Look for any apical lung signs (any fibrosis)?
- Any pleural effusion?
- Any pyuria (sterile)?

**Suspect TB in any patient with chronic fever, weight loss, unexplained respiratory symptoms or lymphadenopathy.**

**History**

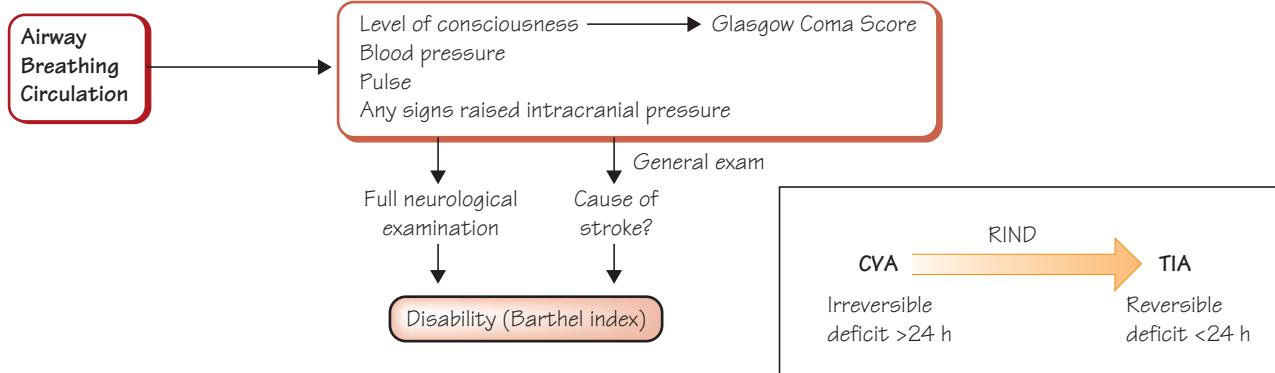
- Onset
  - Sudden
  - Stuttering/gradual
- Headache
- Motor deficit
- Sensory deficit
- Higher function deficit

**Examination****Any features of:**

- Subarachnoid haemorrhage
- Cerebellar haematoma

**Could this be:**

- Meningitis
- Encephalitis
- Toxic confusional state
- Encephalopathy
- Space-occupying lesion, e.g. tumour



Stroke represents a sudden neurological deficit due to a disturbance of the CNS blood supply. The underlying pathologies are usually haemorrhage or thromboembolism. The incidence is 0.2% of the population per year rising to 1% in people over 75 years of age.

The onset of the deficit is usually sudden and often corresponds to the area of brain supplied by a specific blood vessel. If the deficit resolves completely within 24 hours it is termed a TIA. The deficits can range from trivial to deep unresponsive coma depending upon the area of the CNS involved.

**History**

- The cardinal feature is sudden onset (usually over seconds) of neurological deficit (e.g. weakness, numbness, dysphasia, etc.).
- When was the deficit first noticed? Did it develop suddenly or gradually?

- What symptoms were noticed: weakness, numbness, diplopia, dysphasia or falls?
- Any sensory neglect?
- Any accompanying symptoms: headache, nausea, vomiting or fitting?
- Any other recent neurological defects (e.g. TIAs or amaurosis fugax)?
- Any witnesses to the event?
- Any subsequent problems (e.g. aspiration, damage from fall)?
- Has the patient had any recent falls or head trauma (consider subdural/extradural haematoma)?
- What is the extent of disability and are there any functional consequences?

## Past medical history

- Any previous stroke, TIA, amaurosis fugax, collapses, fits or subarachnoid haemorrhage?
- Any known vascular disease (e.g. carotid stenoses, coronary atherosclerosis, peripheral vascular disease)?
- Any known bleeding or clotting tendency?
- Any possible embolic source (e.g. atrial fibrillation, prosthetic valve, carotid stenosis, carotid or vertebral dissection)?
- Any history of hypertension, hypercholesterolaemia or smoking?

## Drugs

- Is the patient receiving anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin), antiplatelet agents (e.g. aspirin) or thrombolytics?

## Family and social history

- Any family history of stroke?
- Establish the patient's smoking and alcohol history.

## Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell?
- Ensure the airway is preserved and protected. This may require positioning in the recovery position or even intubation. Give oxygen and ensure that breathing and circulation are maintained.
- Check the conscious level: use the Glasgow Coma Score (see Chapter 40).
- Assess speech: check the patient's comprehension of commands and listen to the patient speaking. If there seem to be difficulties, ask the patient to name specific objects. Ask the patient to repeat a phrase after you.
- Is there dysarthria or dysphasia (receptive or expressive)?
- Assess the patient's posture.
- Is the patient normal/hemiplegic/decerebrate/decorticate?
- Undertake a full neurological examination. In particular are there any focal neurological deficits (e.g. weakness of one side).
- Check tone. This may be normal or reduced early on following a stroke producing an upper motor neurone lesion, but usually tone subsequently increases abnormally.
- Is power reduced? If so, is this in 'pyramidal distribution' (i.e. flexors stronger in arms, extensors in legs)?
- Is co-ordination impaired? Are there any features of cerebellar lesion?
- Are reflexes reduced or increased? As for tone, this may be normal or reduced early on following an upper motor neurone lesion, but usually reflexes subsequently increase abnormally.

- Are there any cranial nerve deficits?

- Do the neurological signs point towards a lesion in a particular part of the CNS or the interruption of a particular arterial supply?
- Assess the degree of disability with Barthel's Index of Daily Living (Table 22.1).

## Stroke classification

Strokes may be described by the vascular territory involved or with the following classification.

### Total anterior circulation stroke (TACS)

Hemiplegia involving > two-thirds of face, arm and leg +/- hemisensory loss contralaterally; homonymous hemianopia contralaterally; cortical signs (dysphasia, neglect etc). This type of stroke is caused by an embolic lesion in a middle cerebral artery in 70–80% of cases. It is the most severe type of stroke with only 5% of patients being alive and independent at 1 year.

### Partial anterior circulation stroke (PACS)

Two out of three features present in a TACS or isolated cortical dysfunction such as dysphasia or pure motor/sensory signs less severe than in lacunar syndromes (e.g. monoparesis). The underlying cause and vascular territories are similar to TACS. About 55% of patients alive and independent at 1 year.

### Lacunar stroke (LAC)

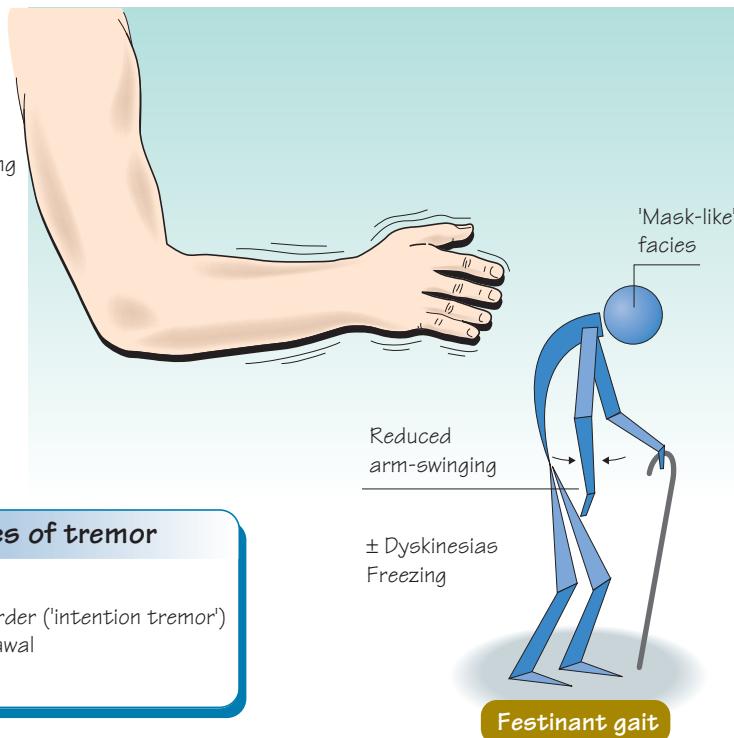
Features include motor +/- sensory deficits affecting at least two thirds of face, arm, leg and ataxic hemiparesis in the absence of visual field deficits and cortical signs. These strokes are caused by small vessel disease and have the best prognosis of strokes with 60% of patients alive and independent at 1 year.

### Posterior circulation (POC)

Due to the multiple structures reliant on the posterior circulation, including the brainstem, many syndromes are produced by ischaemia in this area. These include the 'locked in syndrome' and 'lateral/medial medullary syndrome'. The following may be found: cranial nerve palsies with contralateral motor and/or sensory deficits, bilateral motor and/or sensory deficits, conjugate eye movement disorders, isolated homonymous hemianopia, cortical blindness and cerebellar deficits. This heterogeneous group of strokes can be caused by both large and small artery disease with in situ thrombosis accounting for the majority. If patients survive the acute event, the one-year survival to independence is good (about 60%).

**History**

- Tremor
- Slowing down
- Stiffness
- Problems walking
- Recurrent falls

**Other causes of tremor**

- 'Benign'
- Cerebellar disorder ('intention tremor')
- Alcohol withdrawal
- Thyrotoxicosis

**Examination**

- Tremor 'pill-rolling'
- Bradykinesia
- Increased tone 'rigidity'

**Rare differential diagnoses**

- Postural hypotension (multi-system atrophy, Shy–Drager syndrome)
- Impaired vertical gaze (progressive supranuclear palsy)
- Dystonia/Kayser–Fleischer rings (Wilson's disease)

Parkinsonism is a clinical syndrome characterized by tremor, slow movements and increased tone. This may be seen in idiopathic Parkinson's disease or with other aetiologies, such as anti-dopaminergic drugs and Wilson's disease. It may present with difficulties with walking, tremor, recurrent falls or general deterioration. The classical features are a 'pill-rolling' tremor (4–8 Hz), increased tone ('lead-pipe') (which together with tremor may produce 'cog-wheel' rigidity) and bradykinesia (slowness of movements).

The tremor is usually most obvious at rest, improving with movement and sleep. The patient may appear slow to initiate movement and speech, find difficulty in performing rapidly alternating movements and the increased tone may become more prominent with movements of the opposite limb. There may be a 'mask-like' expression with reduction in facial expression and blinking. It has a prevalence of 0.5% of the population in people over 65 years of age.

**History**

- When were difficulties with walking/tremor, etc., first noticed? Were they noticed by the patient or by other people?
- Have there been falls? Has the patient had difficulty turning in bed? Do they have difficulties getting out of a chair, writing (e.g. micrographia), opening jars?

- What is the patient unable to do that they would like to?
- What are the functional consequences of the patient's impairment?

**Past medical history**

Check the history of any associated conditions (e.g. Wilson's disease or other neurological diseases, carbon monoxide poisoning).

**Drugs**

- Has there been administration of anti-dopaminergic drugs, such as neuroleptics?
- Has the patient received treatment with, e.g. levodopa? What was the response? Does improvement vary with time after the dose? Are there manifestations of drug side-effects (e.g. dyskinesias, or confusion)?

**Examination**

- Examine the patient's face, posture and gait.
- How far can the patient walk? Can he/she walk heel-toe? Can he/she turn? Can he/she get up from a chair? Can he/she climb stairs?
- Any tremor? If so, where? Is it increased or decreased with motion?
- Any rigidity (of limbs, of trunk)?
- Is there bradykinesia? Can the patient perform rapidly alternating movements?

# 110 Motor neurone disease

**History**

- Weakness
- Difficulty swallowing
- Problems breathing
- Aspiration
- Family history (Rare)

**NB.**

No sensory symptoms  
No bladder disturbance

May involve respiratory muscles  
 ↓  
 Respiratory failure

**Examination**

- Wasted, fasciculating tongue
- Fasciculation
- Weakness
- Swallow

**Combination of upper and lower motor neurone signs**

- Fasciculation
- Wasting
- Increased tone
- Brisk reflexes +++
- Upgoing plantars

Motor neurone disease is an illness characterized by progressive degeneration of upper and lower motor neurones; it usually presents with gradual development of weakness affecting the tongue, bulbar muscles and limbs. This can produce difficulty in swallowing, slurring of speech, walking difficulties and, eventually, respiratory weakness and aspiration pneumonia. In contrast to other neurological disorders, e.g. multiple sclerosis, there are no sensory symptoms or signs. Incidence (and death rate) is 2/100 000 per year.

## History

- When were the symptoms first noticed? What were they? Have they fluctuated or worsened?
- What treatments have been tried? Any need for ventilatory support? Has the patient had a tracheostomy? Are there any symptoms of aspiration pneumonia?
- What are the functional consequences? What is the patient's mobility? Does the patient utilize mobility aids (e.g. wheelchair)? Can the patient feed or wash him/herself?
- If there is significant dysarthria, written communication may be required. However, when obtaining a history, above all, patience is required.

## Family history

Very rarely there is a family history of motor neurone disorder.

## Social history

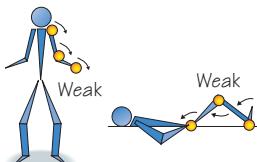
- What is the patient's occupation? Can the patient still work? How is he/she supported practically?
- How have the patient and relatives adjusted to the diagnosis?

## Examination

- The cardinal features are combined upper and lower motor neurone signs without any sensory findings.
- Any dysarthria?
- Examine the tongue: is it wasted, fasciculating or spastic?
- Are there difficulties with swallowing/aspiration?
- Is there increased tone or limb weakness?
- Are the reflexes brisk and plantars upgoing?
- Ensure there are no significant sensory abnormalities.

**History**

- Visual blurring
- Eye discomfort
- Diplopia
- Unsteadiness
- Falls
- Clumsiness
- Weakness/numbness

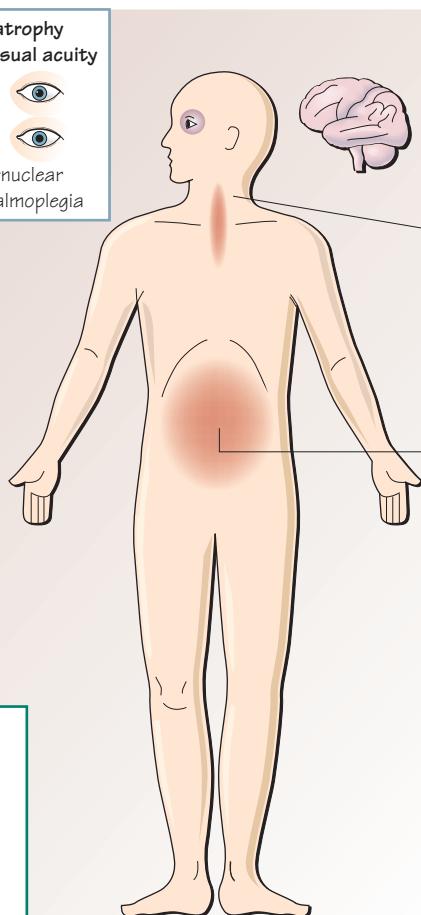
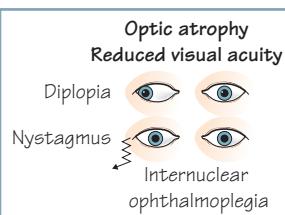


- Worse with heat
- Neck flexion and shooting pains
- Problems with micturition
- 'Spastic' bladder

**Cardinal features are several neurological lesions separated in site and time**

**Characteristic affected sites are:**

- Cerebellum
- Optic nerve
- Cervical cord
- Medial longitudinal fasciculus (internuclear ophthalmoplegia)

**Examination****Cerebellar signs**

- Ataxic speech
- Intention tremor
- Unsteady gait
- Broad-based gait

**Cervical myopathy**

- Limb weakness
- Stiffness, numbness
- Increased tone
- Brisk reflexes, clonus
- Upgoing plantars

**Absent abdominal reflexes****Secondary problems**

- Urinary tract infections
- Pressure sores
- Depression
- Reduced mobility

**Differential diagnosis**  
(Other causes multiple CNS lesions) e.g.

- Multiple strokes
- Vasculitis
- Metastases
- Neurosarcoid

Multiple sclerosis is a chronic neurological condition characterized by CNS demyelination that causes a wide range of deficits at different times and in different sites throughout the CNS. Whilst any location in the CNS can be affected, there are particular sites that are more commonly affected, such as the optic nerve, the cerebellum and the cervical cord. The disease may be slowly progressive or marked by relapses and remissions. It has a prevalence of 100/100000 but there is marked geographical variation.

- Are there problems with micturition or defaecation?
- Do hot baths exacerbate symptoms?
- Does neck flexion produce shooting pains (Lhermitte's symptom, which can also be found in cervical spondylosis or B<sub>12</sub> deficiency)?
- Is there fatigue, cognitive impairment?
- Are there any abnormalities of mood: euphoria or depression?
- What can the patient not do? What is the patient's mobility? Does the patient use a stick or wheelchair, etc.?

**History**

- When did the patient first notice any symptoms? What were they? How did they progress? Did they improve, gradually worsen or recur?
- Has there been visual blurring, eye discomfort (e.g. optic neuritis)?
- Any unsteadiness, falling or intention tremor (e.g. cerebellar)?
- Is there weakness, numbness, stiffness, jerky movements or problems walking (e.g. cervical myopathy)?

**Past medical history**

- Any previous episodes, visual disturbance, weakness, numbness or unsteadiness, etc.?
- Any associated problems (e.g. UTIs, bed sores, depression)?

**Drugs**

- Any treatments received and any effects (e.g. corticosteroids, interferon)?
- Any specific treatments for spasticity (e.g. baclofen)?

## Family and social history

- Any family history of neurological illness?
- What is the patient's occupation? How has the illness affected his/her work, family, relationships, etc.?
- What support does the patient receive?
- What modifications have been made to the patient's home?

## Examination

- Is there evidence of neurological lesions at several sites within the CNS?
- Perform a full neurological examination with particular focus on:
  - *Optic nerve.* What is the visual acuity? Is there normal colour vision, pupillary reaction, appearance of an optic disc (e.g. papillitis, optic atrophy)?
  - *Cerebellar function.* Examine gait, posture and co-ordination (e.g. finger–nose). Any intention tremor or dysdiadochokinesis? Is speech classically abnormal? Is there 'scanning speech' or nystagmus? Is there internuclear ophthalmoplegia (failure to adduct eye on lateral gaze with nystagmus of the abducting eye)?
  - *Limbs.* Are there signs of upper motor neurone dysfunction (e.g. increased tone, reduced power in 'pyramidal' distribution, brisk

- tendon reflexes, absent abdominal reflexes, upgoing plantar responses)? Are there sensory deficits?
- What are the functional consequences of the patient's impairments?
- Consider other consequences, such as secondary infections (e.g. pneumonia, UTI or bed sores). Is there fever, tachycardia, tachypnoea, etc.?
- Consider the differential diagnosis of multiple CNS lesions:
  - multiple CVAs in young adults from illnesses such as phospholipid antibody syndrome
  - metastases
  - cerebral vasculitis
  - SLE
  - neurosarcoid
  - CADASIL (cerebral autosomal dominant arteriopathy with subcortical infarcts and leukoencephalopathy)
  - meningovascular syphilis
  - HTLV1 infection
  - Lyme disease
  - paraneoplastic cerebellar ataxia
  - genetic disorders of myelin, such as the leukodystrophies.

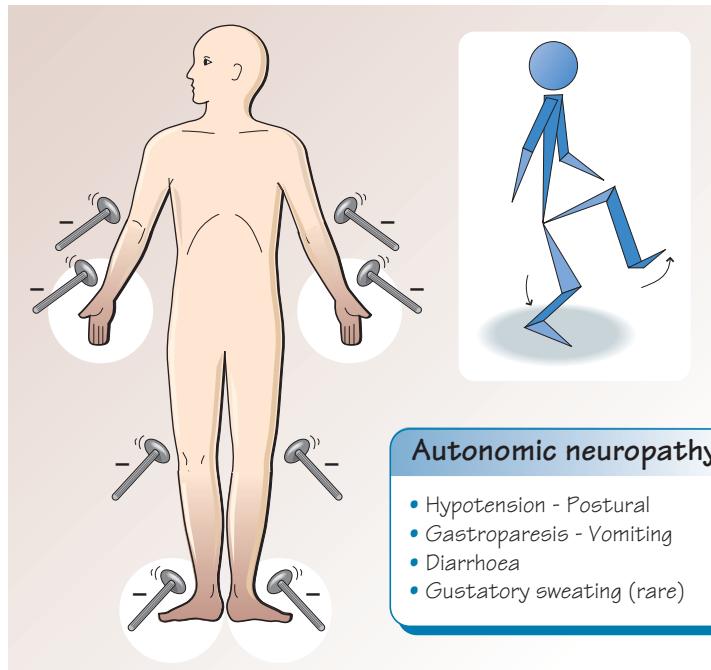
**Table 111.1** Symptoms and signs in multiple sclerosis

CNS Site	Symptoms	Signs
Cerebrum	Hemisensory and motor defects Cognitive impairment	Upper motor neuron signs Problems with attention, reasoning and executive function, dementia (late)
Optic nerve	Unilateral loss of vision (sometimes painful)	Scotoma, reduced visual acuity, relative afferent papillary defect
Cerebellum	Tremor	Tremor, dysarthria
Brainstem	Clumsiness, poor balance, falls Diplopia, oscillopsia, vertigo Problems swallowing	Limb incoordination and gait ataxia Nystagmus, ophthalmoplegia Dysarthria
Spinal cord	Impaired speech and emotional lability Weakness Stiffness and spasms Bladder dysfunction Erectile dysfunction Constipation	Pseudobulbar palsy Upper motor neuron signs Spasticity
Other	Pain, fatigue, temperature sensitivity	

# 112 Peripheral neuropathy

## History

- Numbness
- Weakness
- Inadvertent damage
- Difficulties walking
- Alcohol
- Diabetes mellitus
- Malignancy
- Vitamin deficiencies



## Examination

- Gait
- Fasciculation
- Skin changes
- Sensory loss
  - 'Glove and stocking'
  - Light touch
  - Pinprick
  - Vibration sense
  - Monofilament (10g)
  - Joint position sense
- Weakness
- Reduced reflexes

## Autonomic neuropathy

- Hypotension - Postural
- Gastroparesis - Vomiting
- Diarrhoea
- Gustatory sweating (rare)

Peripheral neuropathy may present with motor or sensory symptoms usually affecting the hands and feet initially. There are a large number of potential causes of which diabetes mellitus, alcohol excess, malignancy, medication, vitamin deficiencies and inherited causes are the commonest.

## History

- What are the symptoms: numbness, 'pins and needles', weakness, foot dragging/slapping, tripping, inadvertent damage (e.g. burns because of sensory deficit) or muscle wasting?
- When did they start? Are they progressive?
- What are the functional consequences (e.g. difficulty in walking, holding knife, writing, etc.)?
- Are there any symptoms of associated conditions (e.g. diabetes mellitus, malignancy)?

## Past medical history

Ask about any significant medical conditions, especially diabetes mellitus, malignancy, vasculitis or other neurological conditions. Alcohol consumption?

## Drugs

Is the patient taking any medications (e.g. vincristine)?

## Family and history

Any family history of neuropathy (e.g. Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease)?

## Social history

- Has there been any unusual occupational exposure to potential neurotoxins (e.g. lead)?
- Are there any home adaptations or use of walking aids, etc.?

## Examination

- Perform a full general and neurological examination for signs of diabetes, malignancy, etc.
- Examine gait, is it high stepping and stamping?
- Examine symptomatic areas.
- Inspect: is there wasting, abnormal posture, trophic skin changes, fasciculation or scarring?
- Check tone: is it normal or reduced?
- Is power reduced? If so, to which muscle groups? Does it conform to a particular peripheral nerve distribution or is there generalized peripheral weakness of hands ± feet?
- Is co-ordination impaired?
- Examine reflexes: are they normal or reduced?
- *Examine sensation:*
  - light touch (Any impairment? If so, what is the distribution: 'glove and stocking', dermatomal, peripheral nerve or nerve root distribution?)
  - pin prick
  - vibration sense
  - joint position sense
  - deep pain
  - hot/cold
  - monofilament (10g).

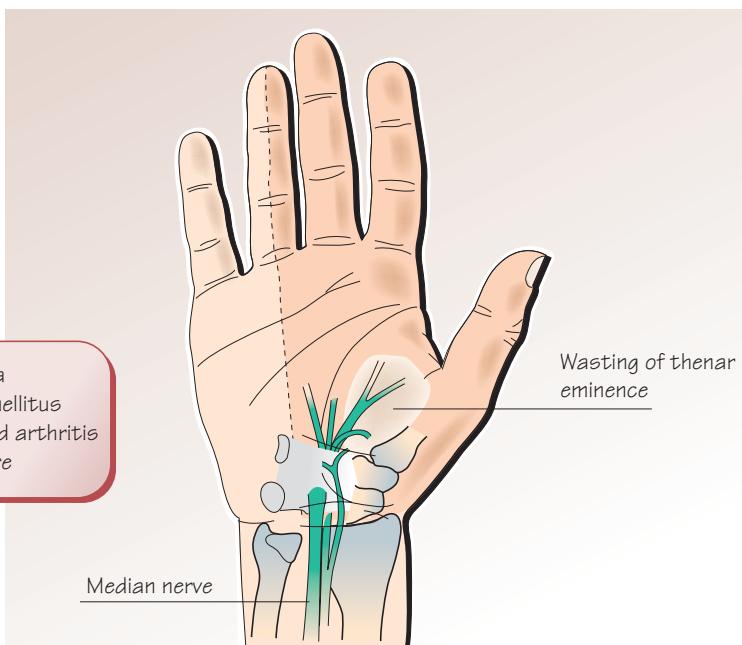
# 113 Carpal tunnel syndrome

## History

- Pain
- Numbness
- 'Pins and needles'
- Weakness
- Often worse at night
- In median nerve distribution



- Myxoedema
- Diabetes mellitus
- Rheumatoid arthritis
- Renal failure



## Examination

- Weakness of thumb abduction
- Reduced sensation
- Tinel's sign
- Phalen's sign

This syndrome, the result of compression of the median nerve in the carpal tunnel, is the commonest example of entrapment neuropathy. It usually presents with symptoms of pain, numbness and/or weakness of the affected hand due to compression of the median nerve at the wrist.

## History

- The patient may describe numbness, 'pins and needles' and weakness of the affected hand. The condition may be bilateral and produces symptoms in the palmar surface of the thumb, first, middle and median side of the ring fingers. It is often worse at night and pain may extend along the arm.
- There may be associated conditions, such as diabetes mellitus, rheumatoid arthritis, renal failure and myxoedema.
- Are there symptoms of entrapment neuropathy elsewhere or of an underlying peripheral neuropathy?

## Examination

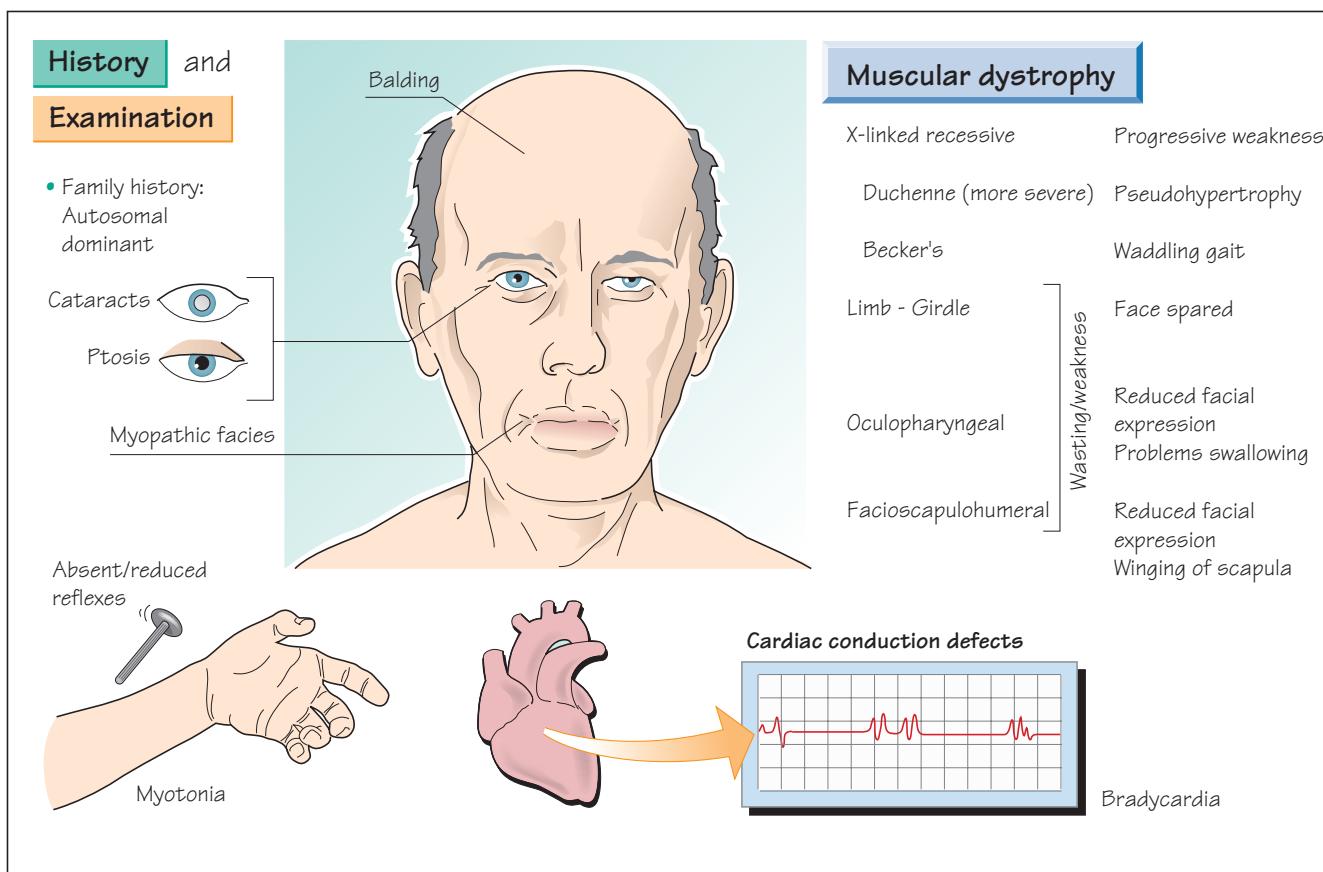
- Any weakness and wasting of the thenar eminence?
- Any weakness of thumb abduction and/or opposition?
- Is there reduced sensation in the palmar surface of the hand?

- Tinel's sign (eliciting symptoms with percussion over the carpal tunnel) or Phalen's sign (eliciting symptoms with flexion at the wrist) may be present.
- Examine the patient for other sites of neuropathy (e.g. mononeuritis multiplex).
- Symptoms may be due to carpal tunnel syndrome without objective neurological signs, and confirmation with electrophysiological testing may be required.

## Evidence

Symptoms of pain in the median nerve distribution and weakness of thumb abduction are the most predictive signs and symptoms for electromyographic diagnosis of carpal tunnel syndrome. Phalen's and Tinel's signs, thenar atrophy and sensory testing abnormalities are of less diagnostic value.

D'Arcy CA & McGee S. Does this patient have carpal tunnel syndrome? *JAMA* 2000; **283**: 3110–7.



### Myotonic dystrophy (dystrophia myotonica)

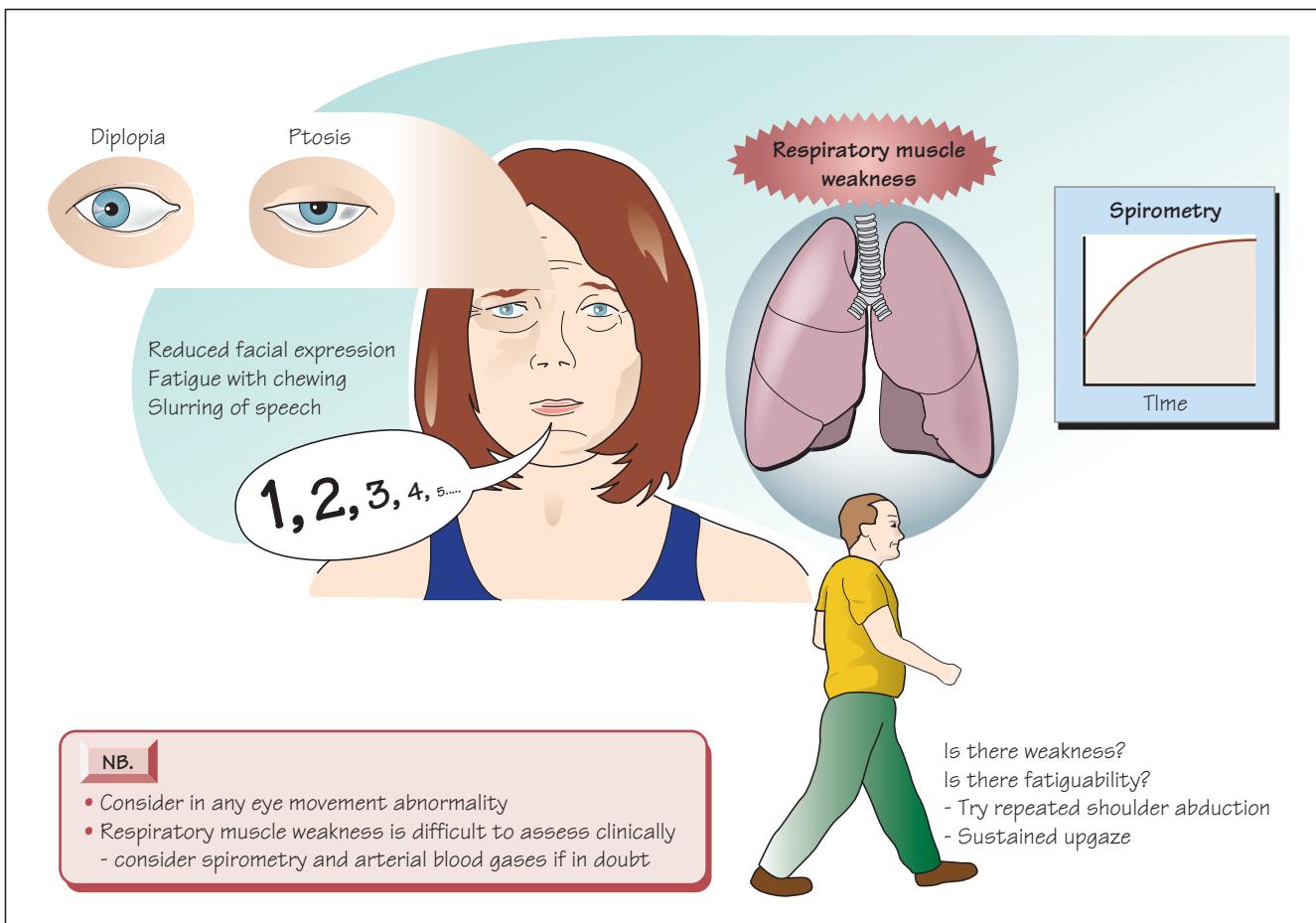
Myotonic dystrophy is an inherited autosomal dominant condition. There is muscular weakness and wasting which can produce a rather 'drooping expression'. Myotonia may be present, which may be apparent due to the delay in the patient releasing his/her grip upon shaking hands. It can be demonstrated by a delay in opening and closing fists repetitively or by difficulty in opening eyes after tight closure. The other features include frontal balding, ptosis, cataracts and cardiac conduction defects.

### Muscular dystrophy

The muscular dystrophies are inherited muscle disorders characterized by progressive muscle wasting and weakness of variable distribution and severity. There may be wasting of muscles, pronounced weakness and significant disability, sometimes progressing to respiratory failure. The muscular dystrophies can be subdivided into several groups according to the distribution of predominant muscle weakness (Table 114.1). In several types the heart can be seriously affected, occasionally in the absence of clinically significant weakness.

**Table 114.1** The inheritance and clinical features of muscular dystrophies

Type of muscular dystrophy	Inheritance	Typical features
Duchenne's	X-linked recessive	Wasting Weakness Pseudohypertrophy Requires wheelchair by 12 years Death from respiratory failure <30 years
Becker's	X-linked recessive	Less severe than Duchenne's Wasting Weakness Onset by 12 years Problems walking in their twenties Death during their forties or fifties
Emery–Dreifuss	X-linked, autosomal recessive and autosomal dominant forms	Contractures Muscle wasting especially proximal upper limbs, distal in lower limbs Cardiomyopathy
Distal	Autosomal dominant Autosomal recessive	Late onset (in their forties) Early onset (before their thirties) Distal wasting and weakness
Facioscapulohumeral	Autosomal dominant	Weakness of facial and shoulder girdle muscles
Oculopharyngeal	Autosomal dominant	Ptosis, weakness of extraocular muscles Dysphagia, onset in their twenties
Limb girdle	Autosomal dominant and recessive forms	Progressive limb girdle weakness, some forms with cardiac involvement



This is an autoimmune condition in which antibodies to the acetylcholine receptor result in weakness. It may present insidiously with increasing weakness, producing symptoms such as double vision (diplopia), difficulty swallowing or the drooping of eyelids (ptosis). Sometimes more dramatic presentations can occur with respiratory failure. It has a prevalence of 15/100 000 with a new case incidence of 1/100 000 per year.

### History

- What has the patient or other people noticed?
- When is the weakness most marked: after activity; towards the end of day? Is there fatigue?
- Has there been double vision or drooping of eyelids? Are there problems with speech, swallowing or breathing?
- Does speech become unintelligible during prolonged speaking?

### Past medical history

- Any other autoimmune conditions?
- Any thymoma or thymectomy?

### Drugs

Has the patient received any treatment; immunosuppression, anti-cholinergics or plasmapheresis?

### Examination

- Any muscular weakness? Examine after repetitive movements.
- Examine eye movements. Look for ptosis, abnormal eye movements. Examine prolonged up-gaze. Orbicularis oculi fatigue may be observed on gentle eye closure; after complete initial closure of the eyelids, they separate within seconds and the white of the sclera starts to show (positive 'peek sign').
- Is the patient's speech normal or weakening with prolonged speech? Ask the patient to count to 100.
- Reflexes and sensation are normal. (In the related myasthenic syndrome associated with small cell lung cancer [Eaton-Lambert syndrome] there is proximal weakness and hyporeflexia, and repeated muscle contraction may lead to increased strength.)
- If there is any suggestion of respiratory symptoms or weakness, assess respiratory function with spirometry and arterial blood gases.
- The resolution of ptosis or ophthalmoparesis after 30 minutes of sleep and/or the reappearance of the myasthenic signs over the next 30 seconds to 5 minutes supports the diagnosis of myasthenia.

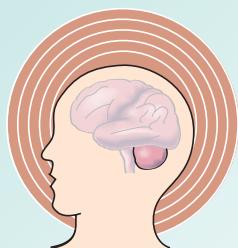
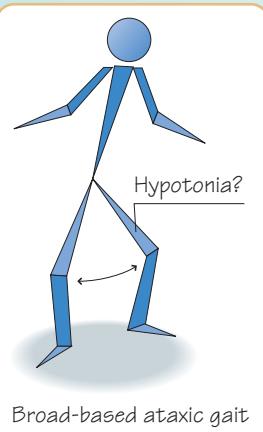
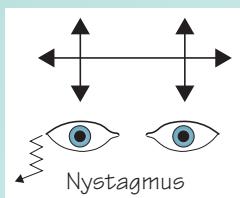
# 116 Cerebellar disorders

## History

- Falls
- Tremor
- Unsteadiness



- Alcohol
- Multiple sclerosis
- Family history



## Examination

- Nystagmus
- Pupillary abnormalities
- 'Ataxic' speech
- Dysdiadochokinesia

Cerebellar disorders may present with falls, unsteadiness, tremor or nystagmus. There are many possible causes of disease affecting the cerebellum, including ischaemic or haemorrhagic stroke, tumours, demyelination, alcohol excess and Wernicke's encephalopathy.

## History

- When were symptoms first noticed? What were they? Did they have sudden or gradual onset? Are there any other associated neurological symptoms?
- Can the patient walk? If so, how far can the patient walk? Have there been falls? Any unsteadiness?
- Any tremor? If so, is it worse on intention?
- Are there any symptoms of raised intracranial pressure (e.g. headaches)?

## Past medical history

- Any previous history of multiple sclerosis, stroke or primary tumours?
- Any previous history of alcohol abuse?

## Family and social history

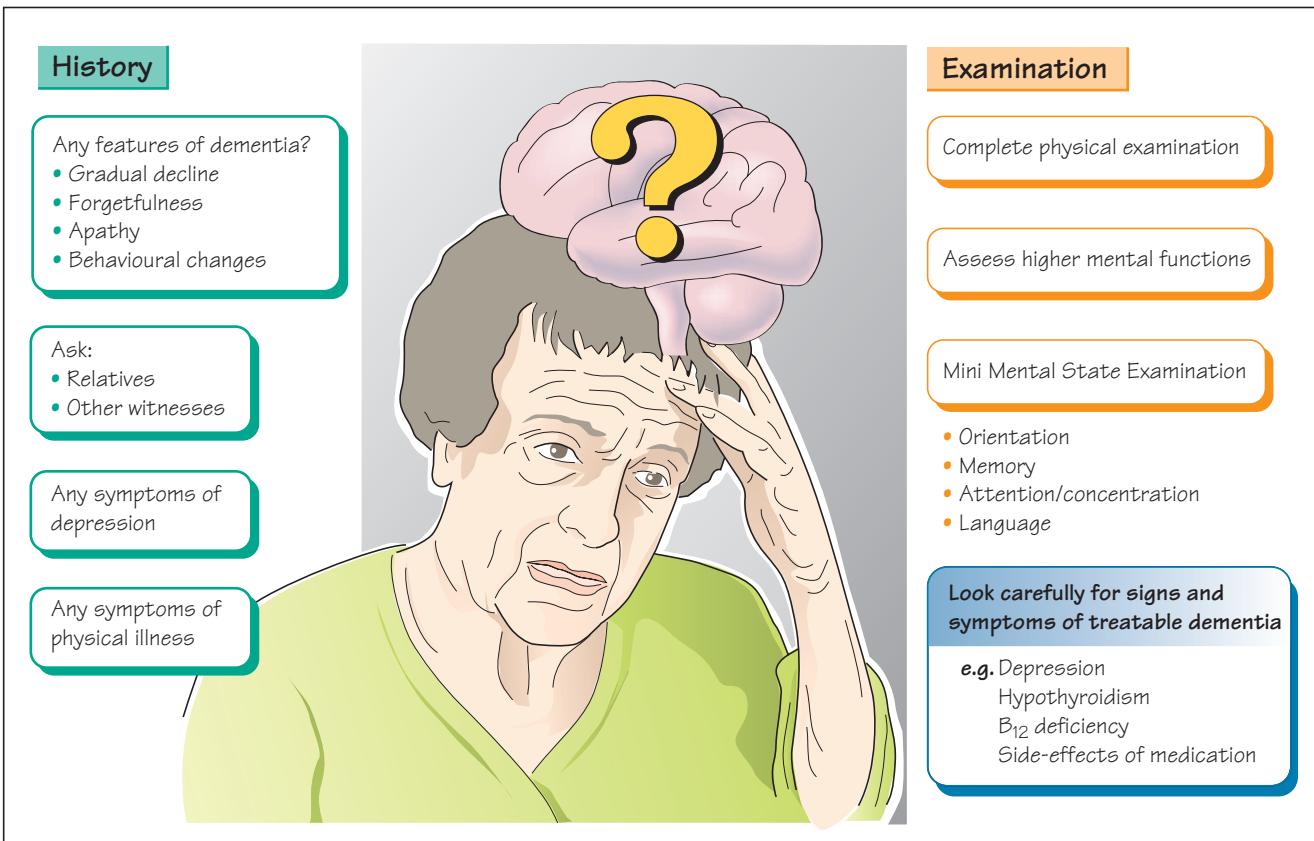
Any family history of cerebellar disorders (e.g. Friedreich's ataxia)?

## Drugs

Ask about the patient's alcohol intake.

## Examination

- Examine the patient's gait: is it classically unsteady and broad based?
- Any papilloedema or optic atrophy?
- Any evidence of disease in other parts of the CNS (e.g. consider multiple sclerosis)?
- Any evidence of alcohol excess (consider alcohol induced cerebellar atrophy, acute intoxication or Wernicke's encephalopathy)?
- Are there any abnormalities of eye movements or pupils? Any signs of nystagmus?
- Is the tone in limbs classically reduced? (NB. This may be difficult to distinguish from normal.)
- Is tremor worse on intention (e.g. on finger–nose testing or 'past-pointing')?
- Any inability to perform rapidly alternating movements (dysdiadochokinesia)?
- Examine for signs of alcohol abuse and other neurological signs.



Dementia is characterized by acquired losses of cognitive and emotional abilities severe enough to interfere with daily functioning and quality of life. It is common with a prevalence of 1% at 60 years of age; roughly doubling in incidence every 5 years thereafter. It usually presents with a gradual decline in cognitive ability. It may be noticed during assessment of another illness, or because of memory difficulties or behavioural changes described by the patient or relatives. There are important treatable causes of dementia: it should be distinguished from acute confusional states and attempts should be made to define the precise cause.

### History

- What problems have been reported? Who reported them: the patient, relatives, friends or other professionals? Obtain objective evidence.
- Have there been difficulties with memory, disorientation, concentration and apathy? Are there functional or social consequences (isolation, malnutrition, etc.)? Any change in personality?
- Was there any obvious precipitant, such as head injury?
- Was there any sudden deterioration? Were there any precipitants (e.g. changes in medication, other illnesses or changes in environment)?
- Has there been a gradual or a stepwise decline?
- Are there any features of depression? (Beware of pseudodementia).
- Are there any features of hypothyroidism?
- Are there any features suggesting physical illness?

- Are there any unusual neurological features (e.g. ataxia, weakness, myoclonus, headaches or symptoms of neuropathy)?

### Past medical history

- Any other illnesses, particularly atheromatous disease and its risk factors?
- Any other neurological conditions?

### Drugs

- Is the patient taking any medications, especially tranquillizers, sedatives, etc.?
- Is the patient taking any treatments for dementia (e.g. cholinesterase inhibitors)?
- Any signs of alcohol abuse?

### Family and social history

- Any family history of dementia (eg rare inherited causes such as Huntington's disease)?
- Establish a complete description of social circumstances, carers, support and family.

### Examination

- Carry out a complete physical examination.
- Give particular consideration to hypothyroidism, other illnesses and potential causes of acute confusional states.

- Perform a full neurological examination.
- Look for primitive reflexes: grasp, pout and palmo-mental reflex.
- Check higher mental functions.
- *Check orientation:*
  - Ask the patient their age, name, the time, the date, the location.
- *Check language:*
  - Is the patient left- or right-handed?
  - Get the patient to talk: ask the patient an open question (e.g. ask them to describe the room in detail).
- *Check memory:*
  - Immediate recall. Ask the patient to repeat the names of four objects (e.g. cat, book, rose, bicycle) and then again 5 minutes later. (This has been formalized as the 'Memory Impairment Screen'. The score is calculated as two times the number of items freely recalled plus the number of items recalled with help: a range of 0–8 points. A score of 4 or less indicates possible dementia.)
  - Recent memory. Ask the patient about recent events and ask him/her to recall the memorized objects.
  - Remote memory. Ask the patient about school, work history, childhood, etc.
- *Check comprehension:*
  - Ask the patient to repeat simple phrases.
  - Ask the patient to name simple objects.
  - Test reading and writing ability.
  - Ask the patient to perform a task (e.g. show how you would comb your hair).
- *Mood:*
  - Assess the patient's mood and look for features of psychiatric illness, particularly depression.
  - Document the assessment with a Mini Mental Status Examination (Table 117.1). There are problems with the sensitivity of this test (e.g. false-negatives in highly educated persons) and its specificity (e.g. false-positives in persons with sensory or motor impairment, independent of their true cognitive abilities).

## Causes of dementia

### Common causes of dementia

Common causes include:

- Alzheimer's disease (common, dominant memory impairment with gradual decline).
- Vascular dementia (stepwise course?).
- Pick's disease (prominent frontal lobe signs, disinhibition, primitive reflexes).
- Dementia with parkinsonism (e.g. Lewy body dementia which may also feature visual hallucinations and fluctuating cognitive loss).
- Normal pressure hydrocephalus (gait disorder, urinary incontinence and cognitive decline).
- Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease (rare, rapid decline, myoclonus [though can be seen in other dementias]).

### Treatable causes of dementia

Treatable causes include:

- hypothyroidism
- vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, thiamine deficiency
- cerebral vasculitis
- neurosyphilis
- hydrocephalus
- depression

**Table 117.1** Mini Mental Status Examination

	Score
<i>Orientation</i>	
1 Ask the patient 'What is the year, season, date, day, month?'	/5
2 Ask the patient 'Where are you?' (Country, county, town, place, floor [or ward]?)	/5
<i>Memory registration</i>	
3 Tell the patient that you want him/her to remember something for you, then name three unrelated objects (speak clearly and slowly). Ask the patient to repeat the three objects (score 3 points if correct the first time, 2 points if correct the second time and 1 point if correct the third time). Ask patient to keep the three things in mind	/3
<i>Attention and concentration</i>	
4 Ask the patient to take seven from 100, then seven from the result, and so on for five subtractions. Score 1 point for each correct answer	/1
or	
Ask the patient to spell 'world' backwards, and score 1 point for each correct letter	/5
<i>Memory recall</i>	
5 Ask the patient to recall the three objects from test 3	/3
<i>Language</i>	
6 Show the patient two familiar objects (e.g. a pen, a watch) and ask him/her to name them	/2
7 Ask the patient to repeat a sentence after you 'No if's, and's or but's'	/1
8 Ask the patient to follow a three-stage command (e.g. 'Please take this paper in your left hand, fold it in half and put the paper on the floor.')	/3
9 Ask the patient to read and follow a written instruction (e.g. 'Close your eyes').	/1
10 Ask the patient to write a simple sentence. The sentence should contain a subject and a verb and should make sense	/1
11 Ask the patient to copy a picture of intersecting pentagons	/1
<b>Total score</b>	<b>/30</b>

A score below 24 indicates probable cognitive impairment. A score below 17 indicates definite cognitive impairment.

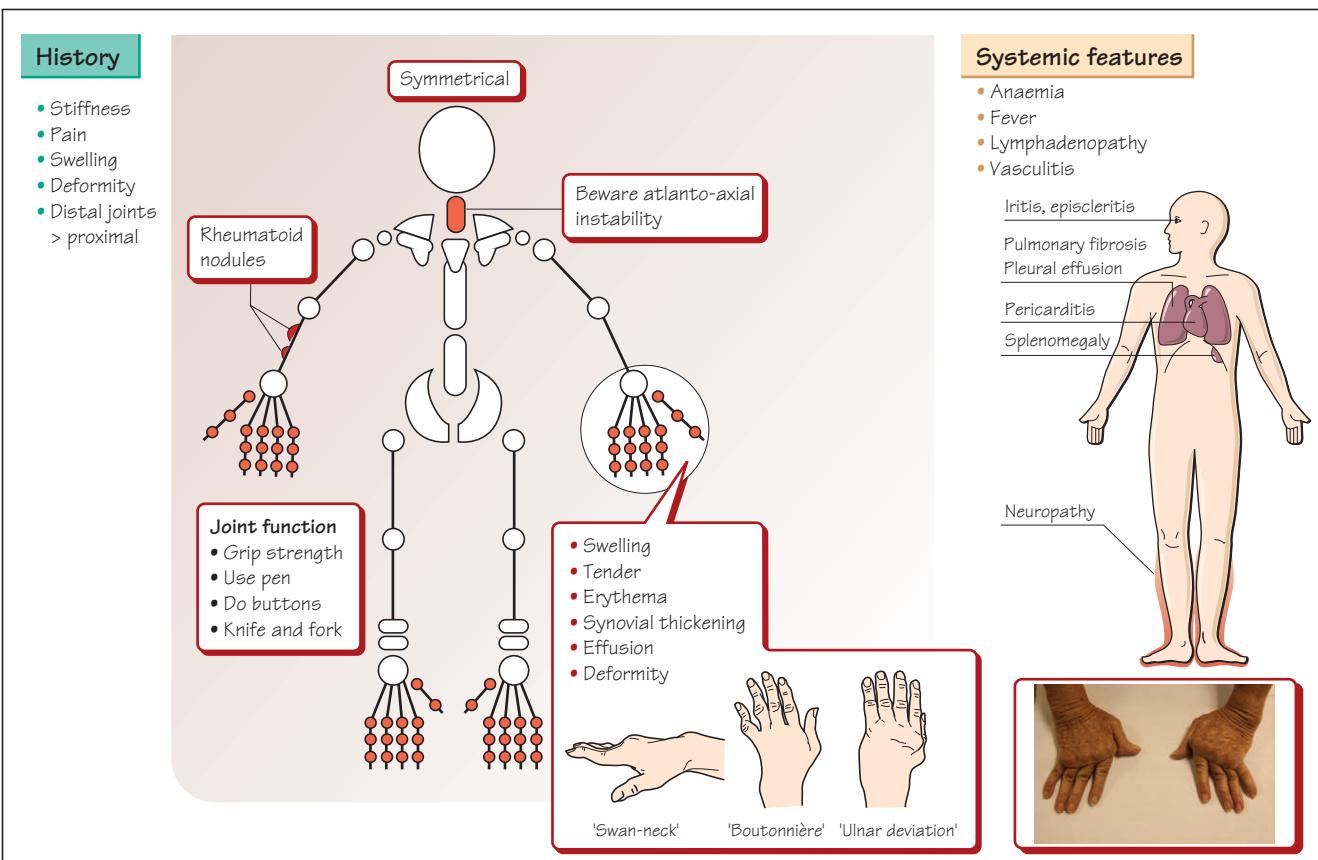
- frontal lobe meningioma
- medication related
- AIDS.

**NB. Acute confusional states may mimic dementia.**

## Evidence: screening tests for dementia

Mini-Mental State Examination: the median LR for a positive result was 6.3 (and the median LR for a negative result was 0.2). Reports from an informant that the patient has memory loss yields an LR of 6.5 for dementia. The Memory Impairment Screen has an LR for a positive result of 33 and an LR for a negative result is 0.08.

Holsinger T et al. Does this patient have dementia? *JAMA*. 2007; 297: 2391–2404.



Rheumatoid arthritis is a symmetrical, deforming peripheral arthropathy. This is a common disorder that affects women more frequently than men. Initially symptoms are of joint stiffness and swelling but, as the condition progresses, there may be substantial joint deformity and systemic features. It is the commonest inflammatory arthropathy with a prevalence of 1.5%.

### History

- Which joints are affected? Commonly, wrists, fingers, elbows, shoulders, knees and the atlanto-axial joint are affected.
- Any pain? If so, when and where?
- Is there stiffness, swelling or deformity? Commonly there is morning stiffness lasting for more than 1 hour.
- What are the functional consequences? What can the patient no longer do (e.g. walking distance, able to dress, transfer)?
- Are there any systemic features: malaise, weight loss or symptoms of anaemia?
- Are any other systems involved? Is there iritis, symptoms of anaemia, ankle swelling (nephrotic syndrome), breathlessness (pulmonary fibrosis)?

### Past medical history

- What has been the pattern of the disease? What joints are affected? What is the activity of the inflammation? Any other organ involvement?

- What treatments has the patient received? Has the patient had any joint replacement surgery, medication, physiotherapy or other aids?
- Any history of other autoimmune disorders?

### Drugs

- What medication has the patient received and with what side-effects (e.g. corticosteroids [Cushingoid], methotrexate [pulmonary fibrosis], penicillamine, gold [nephrotic syndrome]), anti-TNF treatments?
- What is the patient's current medication?
- Does the patient have any allergies, intolerances or side-effects from the medication?

### Family and social history

- Any family history of autoimmune diseases?
- How has the disease affected work, family, spouse and children?
- Have there been adaptations to improve mobility, etc.?

### Examination

- Is the patient well or unwell? Is the patient anaemic or breathless?
- Inspect all the joints. Is there swelling, tenderness to palpation, erythema, synovial thickening, joint effusion, reduced range of movement, ankylosis, subluxation, deformity? In active disease joints are warm, have synovitis and pain on movement.
- The classical patterns of deformity in the hands are:
  - ulnar deviation of the fingers

- ‘Swan-neck’ (extension at PIP, flexion at DIP)
- Boutonnière deformities (flexion at PIP, extension at DIP)
- ‘Z-thumb’ (subluxation of first MCP joint with compensatory hyperextension of IP joints).
- Consider the possibility of atlanto-axial joint instability and take measures to protect the neck if possible.
- Are there rheumatoid nodules?
- Is there evidence of vasculitis (e.g. nail-fold infarcts)?
- Look for systemic complications of rheumatoid arthritis (e.g. anaemia, lymphadenopathy).
- Check for CVS signs: conduction disturbances, cardiac failure, pericarditis, increased incidence coronary disease?
- Check for respiratory system signs: pulmonary fibrosis, pleural effusion?
- Check for splenomegaly?
- Examine for neurological signs: carpal tunnel syndrome, cervical cord compression, peripheral neuropathy?
- Check for renal signs: any proteinuria secondary to, for example, amyloid?
- Check for eye signs: iritis, episcleritis?
- Look for complications of therapy (e.g. Cushingoid [corticosteroids]).
- Examine the patient for functional abilities (e.g. doing up buttons, brushing hair, writing, etc.).

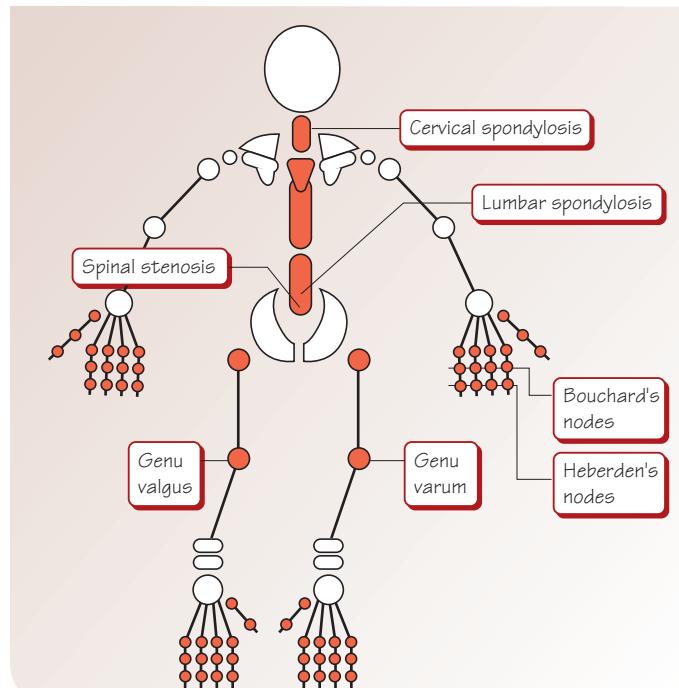
## Evidence

For the diagnostic criteria for rheumatoid arthritis, see Aletaha et al. *Rheumatoid arthritis classification criteria. Arthritis & Rheumatism* 2010; **62**: 2569–81. Definite rheumatoid arthritis is based on the confirmed presence of synovitis in at least one joint, absence of an alternative diagnosis that better explains the synovitis, and achievement of a total score of 6 or greater (of a possible 10) from individual scores in four domains: number and site of involved joints (score range 0–5), serologic abnormality (score range 0–3), elevated acute-phase response (score range 0–1), and symptom duration (2 levels; range 0–1).

### Osteoarthritis

#### History

- Pain
- Stiffness
- Reduced motion
- Functional consequences, e.g. walking time
- Previous joint damage



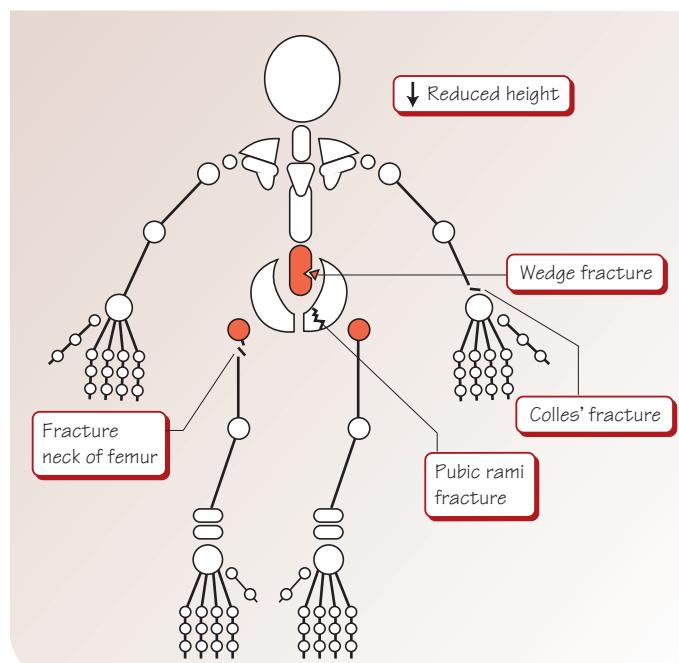
#### Examination

- Deformity
- Swelling
- Crepitus
- Range of movement
- Muscle wasting
- Loss of function

### Osteoporosis

#### History

- Fractures
- Pain
- Falls
- Corticosteroids
- Menopause
- Immobility



#### Examination

- Reduced height
- Kyphosis
- Reduced teeth

## Osteoarthritis

Osteoarthritis is characterized by joint pain, tenderness, limitation of movement, crepitus and local inflammation without systemic inflammation. Osteoarthritis is very common, particularly with increasing age. The joints most commonly affected are the hips, knees and fingers.

### History

- What joints are affected? What are the symptoms: pain, ache, stiffness, reduced mobility?
- Pain is often aching and deep and may improve with rest. Pain can radiate widely away from the affected joint. Symptoms classically worsen in cold, damp weather.
- What alleviates/exacerbates the symptoms?
- Ask about any previous joint injury, congenital joint abnormality, metabolic/endocrine disorders (e.g. acromegaly, haemochromatosis) and previous inflammatory or septic arthritis.
- Are there any features of inflammatory arthritides (e.g. early morning stiffness, fever, etc.)?
- Are there any other skeletal disorders (e.g. osteoporosis, previous fractures), gout or neurological disease (e.g. diabetic neuropathy producing Charcot's joints)?

### Past medical history

- Any other serious illnesses?
- Any joint replacement surgery?

### Drugs

Is the patient taking any medication such as NSAIDs, fish oil, glucosamine?

### Family and social history

- What is the patient's occupational history?
- Ask about the extent of disability and functional problems.

### Examination

- Are there any signs of systemic illness (e.g. fever, weight loss)?
- Examine affected joints for deformity, tenderness, crepitus, reduced range of movement and functional impairment. Joint involvement is usually symmetrical.
- Particularly examine the hands, knees, hips and spine.
- Examine for Heberden's nodes (osteophytes in sides of distal interphalangeal joints) and, less commonly, Bouchard's nodes (hypertrophy in PIP joints) and squaring of the thumb.

## Osteoporosis

Osteoporosis is a condition characterized by reduced bone density. It occurs more commonly in patients with advancing age, female sex, low weight, smoking, early menopause, corticosteroids, hypercalciuria, prolonged immobility and malabsorption. There is an increased incidence in patients with conditions such as thyrotoxicosis, rheumatoid arthritis and hyperparathyroidism, and in those with a family history of osteoporosis. It may present with bone fractures, often following minimal trauma. Common fracture sites include the femoral neck, pubic rami, crush fractures of the vertebra and the wrist. It may manifest with reducing height. Fractures in the elderly, particularly of the hip, are very common and associated with very high rates of mortality (up to 30% in the 6 months following a hip fracture).

### Past medical history

- Has the patient sustained fractures. Where? When? Following what trauma?
- Has bone mineral density been assessed?
- Consider timing of menopause, use of oestrogens, corticosteroids.
- Consider other medical and surgical conditions including renal disease, endocrine disorders (such as thyrotoxicosis, hyperparathyroidism), rheumatoid arthritis, eating disorders, prolonged immobilization, gastrectomy, small bowel resection, intestinal bypass and organ transplants.

### Family history

- Any family history of osteoporosis, multiple fractures, renal calculi?

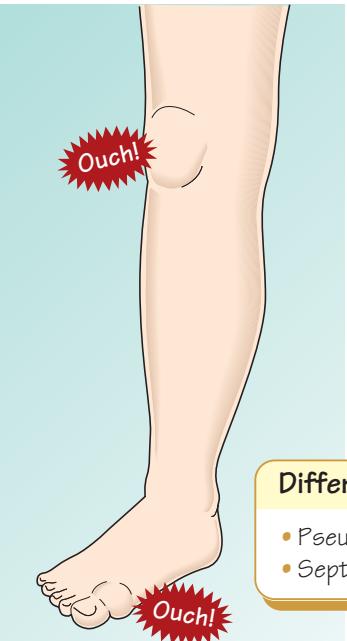
### Drugs

Consider the use of drugs that might enhance the risk of osteoporosis, e.g. corticosteroids and those used to treat osteoporosis such as bisphosphonates, oestrogens, androgens, vitamin D, calcitonin. Ask about dietary calcium intake and vitamin supplements.

### Examination

- Examine patient's weight and height.
- Are there signs of weight loss, malnutrition, poor dentition?
- Are there signs of Cushing's disease?
- Are there signs suggesting vertebral collapse? e.g. Is there reduced lower-rib pelvis distance? Is there kyphosis?
- Consider the presence of features placing the patient at greater risk of falls, e.g. poor eyesight, parkinsonism.

**Gout**






**Differential diagnosis**

- Pseudogout
- Septic arthritis

**Paget's disease**



Bowing of tibia

↑ Warmth?

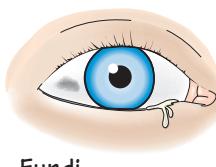
**Deafness**

- Hearing aid



**Fundi**

- Optic atrophy – rarely
- Angioid streaks



## Gout

Gout presents with an intensely painful, inflamed joint due to urate crystal deposition. The most commonly affected joint is the first metatarsophalangeal joint but others such as the knee and ankle can also be affected. The prevalence is 0.1%.

### History

- The patient will commonly present with an acute painful, red joint – often the great toe.
- It may be difficult to walk because of pain or even to bear a bed sheet on the foot.
- Episodes often last from a few days to a few weeks.
- Are there any systemic symptoms (e.g. fever or rigors) which should prompt consideration of septic arthritis?
- Gout affects men more than women (10:1) and most commonly in middle age.
- Early onset suggests renal disease and/or enzymatic disorder.

### Past medical history

- Any previous attacks or myeloproliferative/lymphoproliferative disease?
- Any renal impairment or renal calculi?

### Family history

Is there a strong family history that might suggest the rare genetic abnormalities of purine metabolism?

### Drugs

- Is the patient using any allopurinol, NSAIDs or colchicine for treatment?
- Some drugs are associated with an increased incidence of gout (e.g. cyclosporin, diuretics).

### Examination

- Does the patient have a painful, inflamed reddened joint?
- Rarely there are gouty tophi, particularly on the patient's ear.
- The differential diagnosis includes pseudogout (pyrophosphate crystal deposition) and septic arthritis. It may be necessary to undertake investigations such as joint aspiration to establish diagnosis.

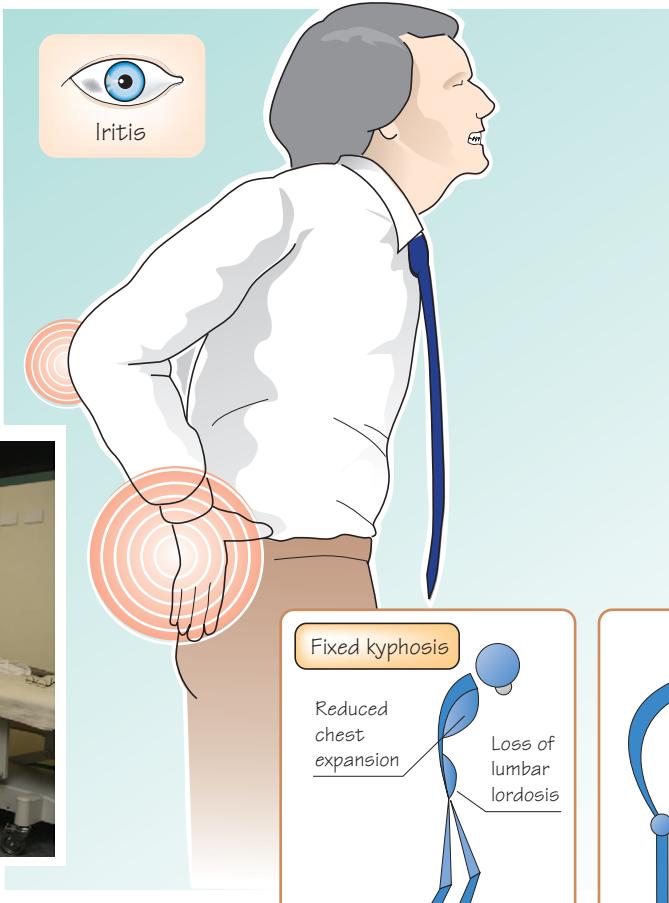
## Paget's disease

This disorganized remodelling of particular areas of bone can present with abnormal shape and enlargement of bones such as the tibia or the skull. This can produce pain, deformity or be recognized as a cause of a raised alkaline phosphatase. Rarely, it produces cranial nerve palsies and, e.g., deafness. Very rarely (if ever) Paget's disease is a cause of high output cardiac failure or it can undergo sarcomatous change. It may have a prevalence of >3% in people over 55 years of age, but the vast majority of people with the disease are asymptomatic.

**History**

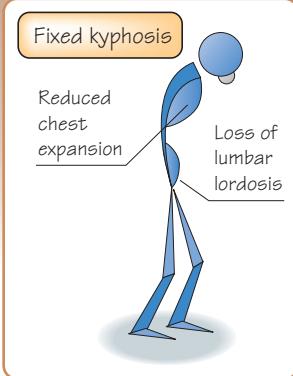
- Back pain**
  - Worse on waking
- Stiffness**
  - Eases with exercise



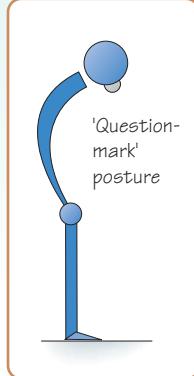


**Examination**

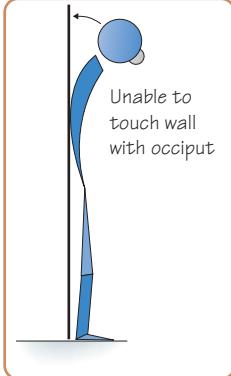
- Iritis**
  - Pain
  - Redness
  - Miosis
  - Sluggish pupillary reflex
- Reduced flexion/extension of spine
- Aortic regurgitation
- Arthritis



Fixed kyphosis  
Reduced chest expansion  
Loss of lumbar lordosis



'Question-mark' posture



Unable to touch wall with occiput

This is an inflammatory arthritis that particularly affects the axial skeleton (spine and sacro-iliac joints). It may present with back stiffness, pain and arthralgia of knees or hips. It is much more common in men than women and usually presents in the second to fourth decade. It has a prevalence of 100/100 000, increasing to 1–2% of the 6% of the population who have HLA-B27.

### History

- What joints are affected? Is there pain, stiffness or a fixed deformity?
- What are the functional consequences?
- Are there any symptoms of iritis or cardiac failure?

### Past medical history

Any history of response to treatment: physiotherapy, NSAIDs, anti-TNF therapies?

### Family history

There is 10–20% prevalence of ankylosing spondylitis in adult first-degree relatives who have inherited HLA-B27.

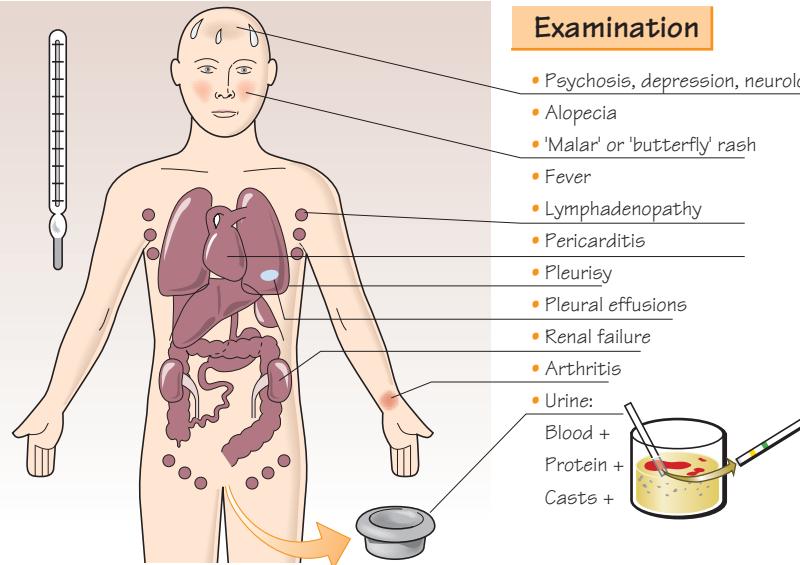
### Examination

- If the symptoms are long standing and severe, check for flexed posture with marked limitation of movements of the spine.
- Does the patient have a reduced ability to touch his/her toes? Measure the distance.
- The range of motion of the lumbar spine can be assessed using the Schober test. Identify the level of the posterosuperior iliac spine. Mark the midline at 5 cm below the iliac spine and at 10 cm above the iliac spine. Following maximal flexion of the spine remeasure the distance between the marks. Normal flexion increases the distance by at least 5 cm.
- Are there any deformities in other joints (especially the knees and hips)?
- Is respiratory expansion impaired? (Rarely, there is apical fibrosis.)
- Rarely there is iritis or aortic regurgitation.

### Systemic lupus erythematosus

#### History

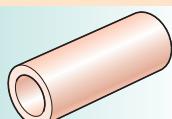
- Rash
- Arthralgia
- Fatigue
- Pericarditis/pleurisy
- Miscarriages
- Alopecia
- Psychiatric
- Neurological
- Renal



#### Examination

- Psychosis, depression, neurological deficits
- Alopecia
- 'Malar' or 'butterfly' rash
- Fever
- Lymphadenopathy
- Pericarditis
- Pleurisy
- Pleural effusions
- Renal failure
- Arthritis
- Urine:  
Blood +  
Protein +  
Casts +

#### Vasculitis



Large vessel size

Polyarteritis nodosa



Skin, kidneys

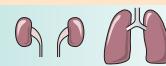
Temporal arteritis

Temporal arteries → Headache  
Proximal muscles (polymyalgia rheumatica)  
Jaw claudication, scalp tenderness



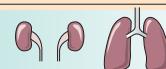
Small vessel size

Microscopic polyangiitis



Kidneys, lungs

Wegener's granulomatosis



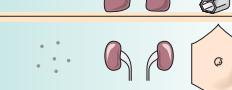
Kidneys, upper airways, lungs

Churg–Strauss syndrome



Skin, lungs, asthma, sinusitis

Henoch–Schönlein purpura



Skin, kidneys, abdomen

All can give fever, malaise, anaemia

## Systemic lupus erythematosus

SLE is a systemic autoimmune disorder. It is characterized by the presence of anti-nuclear antibodies. It is capable of producing manifestations in many organs and hence can present with very many symptoms and signs. Clinical presentations can include malar rash, arthralgia, alopecia, pericarditis, renal failure, neurological deficits or even psychiatric disturbances. It has a prevalence of 100/100 000.

### History

- What symptoms has the patient experienced (e.g. malar rash [photosensitive], discoid rash [erythematous raised patches], arthralgia/ arthritis, fever, fatigue, pleuritic chest pains, pericarditis, ankle swelling, fits, oral ulcers)?
- What other organs have been affected?
- Have there been any thromboembolic events or recurrent miscarriages (consider associated anti-phospholipid syndrome)?
- Ask about renal and neurological diseases as these are of particular importance.

### Past medical history

- Any renal disease or any other serious manifestations of SLE?
- Consider any history of thromboembolic events.
- Any other autoimmune conditions (e.g. hypothyroidism)?

### Drugs

- Is the patient receiving treatment with immunosuppressants (e.g. corticosteroids, azathioprine)?
- Is the patient taking anti-coagulants: warfarin, aspirin?
- Beware of drug-induced lupus.

### Family history

Any family history of lupus or another autoimmune disease?

### Examination

The examination needs to be complete but with particular consideration to:

- rash
- fever
- anaemia
- alopecia
- lymphadenopathy
- oral ulcers
- joint swelling: effusion and tenderness
- tachypnoea: consider pulmonary hypertension, pulmonary emboli, renal failure with fluid overload, pleural effusions and pulmonary fibrosis
- BP: check for hypertension
- pericardial/pleural rubs

- ankle oedema
- neuropathy
- neurological deficit, including focal deficit and cognitive impairment
- psychiatric disturbance, especially psychosis
- urine: dipstick proteinuria, haematuria and casts.

### Diagnostic criteria for SLE

These are mainly useful for identifying patients for clinical studies but are also helpful in examining the ways an individual might be manifesting SLE. A person fulfills the criteria for SLE if any 4 out of 11 symptoms/features are present simultaneously or serially on two separate occasions.

- 1 Serositis: pleuritis or pericarditis.
- 2 Oral ulcers.
- 3 Arthritis: non-erosive arthritis of two or more peripheral joints, with tenderness, swelling, or effusion.
- 4 Photosensitivity (exposure to ultraviolet light causes rash, or other symptoms of SLE flare-ups).
- 5 Blood – hematologic disorder – haemolytic anaemia (low red blood cell count) or leukopenia (white blood cell count <4000/ $\mu$ l), lymphopenia (<1500/ $\mu$ l) or thrombocytopenia (<100 000/ $\mu$ l). Hypocomplementemia is also seen, due to either consumption of C3 and C4 by immune complex-induced inflammation or to congenitally complement deficiency, which may predispose to SLE.
- 6 Renal disorder: More than 0.5 g per day protein in urine or cellular casts seen in urine under a microscope.
- 7 Antinuclear antibody test positive.
- 8 Immunologic disorder: Positive anti-Smith, anti-ds DNA, antiphospholipid antibody, and/or false positive serological test for syphilis.
- 9 Neurologic disorder: Seizures or psychosis.
- 10 Malar rash (rash on cheeks).
- 11 Discoid rash (red, scaly patches on skin that cause scarring).

### Vasculitis

This is a term which describes the inflammation of blood vessels that occurs in several important conditions, such as polyarteritis nodosa, microscopic polyangiitis, Wegener's granulomatosis, Churg–Strauss syndrome, Henoch–Schönlein purpura and temporal arteritis.

In affecting blood vessels, these disorders can produce manifestations in many organs. Of particular importance are the development of characteristic skin changes, renal failure, neurological abnormalities and pulmonary involvement. A high index of suspicion is required for these rare diseases because of the variety of symptoms and signs that they may produce. Precise diagnosis may require tissue biopsy and autoantibody determination. The figure opposite illustrates the more common presentations for each.

**History**

- Local symptoms
- Metastases
- Non-metastatic manifestation

**General symptoms**

- Weight loss
- Fever
- Anorexia

**Rare skin diseases with malignancy:**

- Skin metastases
- Acanthosis nigricans
- Thrombophlebitis migrans
- Dermatomyositis

**Examination**

- Alopecia
- Anaemia
- Weight loss-cachexia
- Lymphadenopathy
- Metastases
- Pleural effusion
- Ascites
- Tumour → Local signs
- Operation scars
- Deep vein thrombosis

Patients with malignant disease can present in a variety of ways due to local effects of the tumour, the effects of metastases, systemic effects (such as weight loss and malaise) and non-metastatic effects due to hormone production or antibody generation.

### History

- Are there local symptoms due to malignancy (change in bowel habit, haematemesis, haemoptysis or abdominal mass)?
- Are there any symptoms due to metastases (e.g. jaundice, enlarged lymph nodes)?
- Ask about systemic symptoms (fever, weight loss, anorexia, itch).
- Are there non-metastatic manifestations of malignancy (e.g. Cushingoid appearance, thromboembolism)? Some are mediated by unusual antibodies.
- What is the patient's functional level?

### Past medical history

- Any known malignancy, local spread or metastases?
- Any treatment or surgery?
- Any exposure to carcinogens (e.g. smoking, asbestos)?

### Drugs

- Has the patient received chemotherapy, radiotherapy or hormonal therapy? If so, what were the side-effects?
- Is the patient taking any symptomatic treatments (e.g. analgesia)?

### Family history

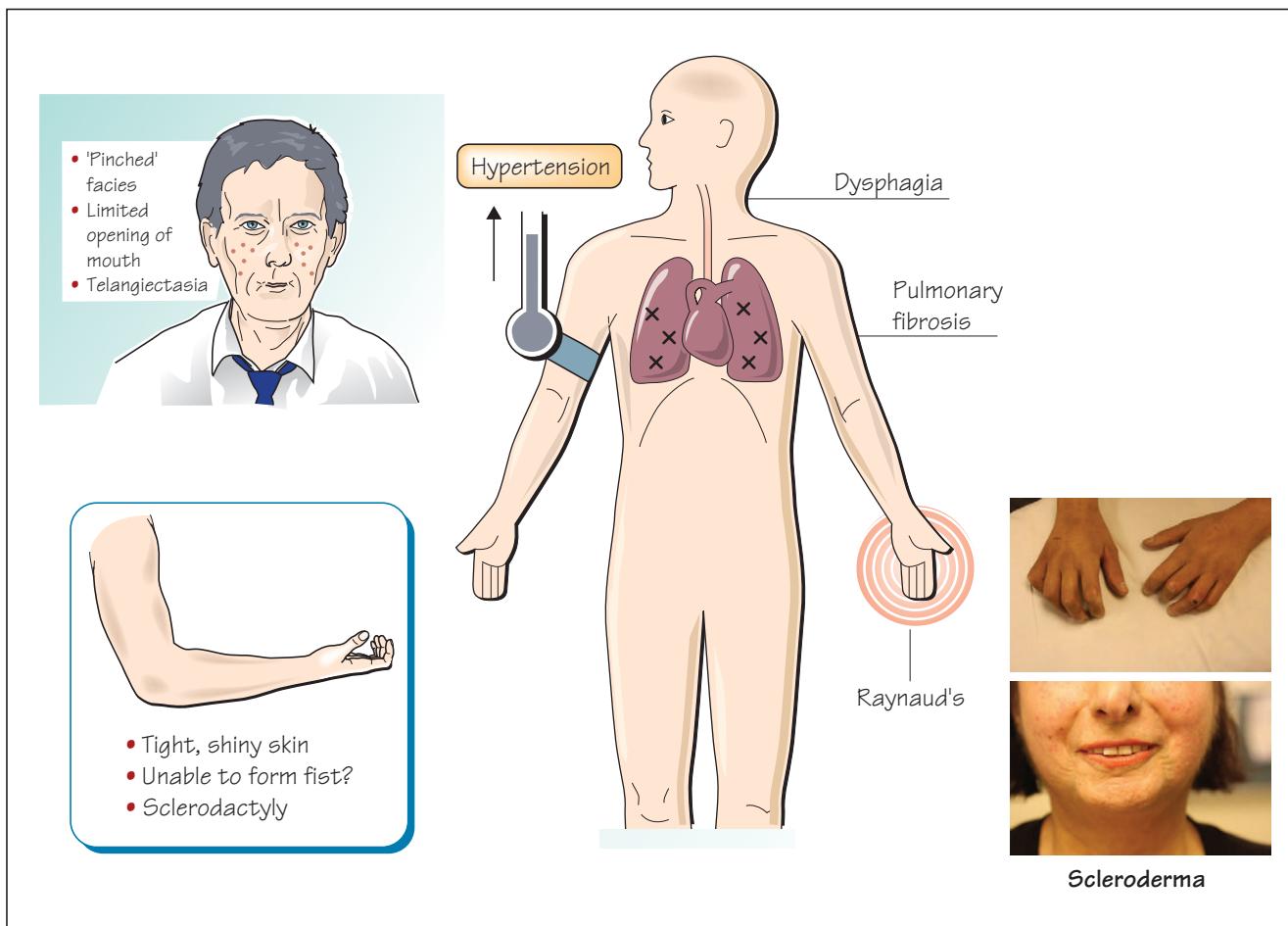
Any strong family history of particular cancers? Consider inherited cancer syndromes (e.g. von Hippel Lindau, *BRCA1*, etc.).

### Social history

How has the patient and their family been affected by the illness? Are they coping? Are they receiving support, palliative care?

### Examination

- Does the patient look well? Any recent weight loss?
- Does the patient have anaemia, jaundice or lymphadenopathy? Consider DVT and PE.
- Examine any known tumour. Look for lymphatic and metastatic spread, and non-metastatic manifestations (neuropathy, etc.).



This is a condition also known as systemic sclerosis in which there is abnormally tight skin of the fingers and other areas, such as the mouth. It can produce difficulty in opening the mouth fully with a small aperture (microstomia) and the function of the hands can be impaired. There may also be difficulties swallowing and renal involvement. There is a prevalence of 20/100 000. There may be small localized areas of scleroderma without systemic involvement known as morphea. The systemic sclerosis may be limited (CREST) or diffuse in which skin changes are accompanied by systemic involvement.

### History

- When were problems first noticed? What were the problems?
- Any difficulty with swallowing, breathing or use of the hands?
- Have there been symptoms of Raynaud's phenomenon?

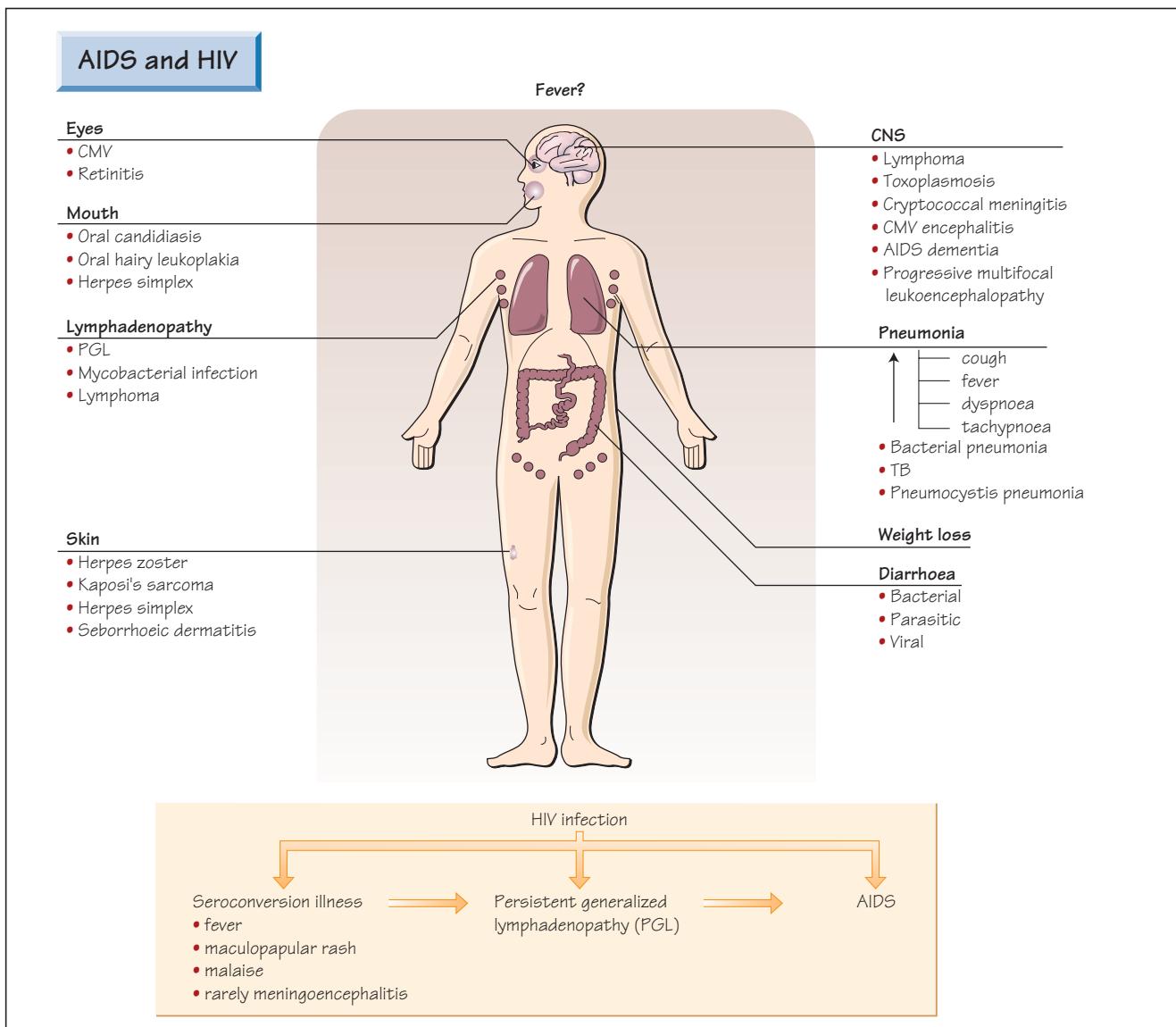
### Examination

- There is usually tight, shiny skin of the fingers, which may limit movement. There may be telangiectasia, calcinosis, limited opening of the mouth and tight facial skin.
- Check for hypertension.
- Is there pulmonary fibrosis?

### CREST

Check for CREST:

- Calcinosis
- Raynaud's
- oEsophageal involvement
- Sclerodactyly
- Telangiectasia.



Acute HIV infection is usually asymptomatic but **seroconversion** 2–8 weeks later may be accompanied by a transient illness with fever, malaise, myalgia, maculopapular rash and, rarely, meningoencephalitis.

A period of asymptomatic infection then follows usually of 10 years or so during which up to one third of patients have **persistent generalized lymphadenopathy (PGL)** (lymph nodes >1 cm at two or more extrainguinal sites). Later some patients develop constitutional symptoms (such as weight loss, diarrhoea, and fever) and night sweats may develop together with minor opportunistic infections (such as herpes zoster [shingles], tinea infections, seborrhoeic dermatitis and recurrent herpes simplex). This collection of symptoms and signs is sometimes known as **AIDS-related complex (ARC)**.

AIDS itself is said to have developed when there is a depressed CD4<sup>+</sup> T-cell count and certain characteristic infections or neoplasms have occurred, which are listed below:

- candidiasis of bronchi, trachea, oesophagus or lungs
- cervical cancer, invasive
- coccidioidomycosis
- cryptococcosis, extrapulmonary
- cryptosporidiosis, chronic intestinal
- cytomegalovirus disease including retinitis
- encephalopathy, HIV-related
- herpes simplex: chronic ulcer(s) (>1 month's duration); or bronchitis, pneumonitis, or oesophagitis
- histoplasmosis, disseminated or extrapulmonary

- isosporiasis, chronic intestinal
- Kaposi's sarcoma
- lymphoma, Burkitt's, immunoblastic or brain
- mycobacterial infection
- *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia
- pneumonia, recurrent
- progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy
- *Salmonella* septicaemia, recurrent
- toxoplasmosis of brain
- wasting syndrome due to HIV.

## History

- Given this multitude of different infections and neoplasms there are many different ways in which the patient with HIV/AIDS can present.
- Consider the possible route by which the HIV infection may have been acquired: e.g. sexual, intravenous drug use, haemophilia, blood transfusion, needle stick injury.

- Consider the possibility that the patient may also have acquired other infections such as hepatitis B, TB or syphilis.
- Has the patient received antiretroviral agents? Have they had any side-effects? What has been the response of CD4 count and/or viral load? Opportunistic infections are unlikely to be responsible for any presentation if the CD4 count is well maintained.
- Are they receiving prophylactic agents, e.g. co-trimoxazole for *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia?

## Examination

- A full general examination is essential in the care of patients infected with HIV.
- There should be a particular focus on the presence of fever, lymphadenopathy, rash, mucous membranes, fundi and lungs.

# Appendix: A self-assessment framework of communication skills in history and examination

This framework is designed to be used after you have seen a patient. It is adapted from the Calgary–Cambridge guide to the medical interview (Kurtz SM, Silverman JD & Draper J. *Teaching and Learning Communication Skills in Medicine*. Oxford: Radcliffe Medical Press, 2005). It can be used by yourself, by a colleague who was present at the interview or to assess a video of the interview.

## Initiating the session

Did you:

- greet the patient (e.g. shake hands, smile, make eye contact) and obtain the patient's name?
- introduce yourself, your role and the nature of the interview? Did you confirm that the patient consented to this? Were you wearing a name badge? Did you sit at a comfortable distance from the patient?
- demonstrate respect and interest? Did you ensure the patient's physical comfort and privacy? Did you identify the reason(s) for the consultation? Did you establish that they were happy with the presence of others, e.g. relative, nurse, other students? If appropriate, did you establish the need for an interpreter?
- identify the patient's problems or the issues that the patient wished to address?
- begin with an appropriate opening question (e.g. 'What problems brought you to the hospital?' or 'What seems to be the trouble?')
- listen attentively to the patient's opening statement, without interruption or directing the patient's response?
- focus mainly on the patient's presenting problem(s) during the interview?
- confirm the list of problems and screen for further problems (e.g. 'You've mentioned headaches and tiredness, is there anything else troubling you . . . ?')

## Gathering information

Did you:

- encourage the patient to tell the story of his/her problem(s) from when it first started to the present in his/her own words and clarify the reason for presenting now?
- use open and closed questioning technique, beginning with open questions and later moving appropriately to closed?
- listen attentively, allowing the patient to complete statements without interruption and leaving space for the patient to think before answering or to continue after pausing?
- facilitate the patient's responses verbally and non-verbally by using encouragement, silence, repetition, paraphrasing and interpretation?
- pick up on verbal and non-verbal cues (body language, speech, facial expression, affect)?
- clarify the patient's statements that were unclear or needed amplification (e.g. 'Tell me what you mean by light headed?')?
- periodically summarize to verify your own understanding of what the patient has said and invite the patient to correct interpretation or to provide further information?
- use concise, easily understood questions and comments, and avoid or adequately explain jargon?
- establish dates and the sequence of events?

- actively determine and appropriately explore:
  - patient's ideas (i.e. beliefs regarding cause)?
  - patient's concerns (i.e. worries) regarding each problem?
  - patient's expectations (i.e. goals, what help the patient had expected for each problem)?
  - effects: how each problem affects the patient's life?
- encourage the patient to express his/her feelings?

## Providing structure

Did you:

- summarize at the end of each line of inquiry to confirm understanding before moving on to the next section?
- structure the interview in a logical sequence?
- attend to timing and keep the interview focused?

## Building relationship

### Using appropriate non-verbal behaviour

Did you:

- demonstrate appropriate non-verbal behaviour:
  - eye contact, facial expression?
  - posture, position and movement?
  - vocal cues, e.g. rate, volume, tone?
- if reading or writing notes or using a computer, did you do so in a way that did not interfere with dialogue or rapport?
- demonstrate appropriate confidence?

## Developing rapport

Did you:

- accept the legitimacy of the patient's views and feelings?
- use empathy to communicate understanding and appreciation of the patient's feelings or predicament, or overtly acknowledge the patient's views and feelings?
- provide support, express concern, understanding, willingness to help?
- deal sensitively with embarrassing and disturbing topics and physical pain, including when associated with physical examination?

## Involving the patient

Did you:

- explain the rationale for questions or parts of the physical examination that could appear to be unclear?
- during the physical examination, explain what you were doing and ask permission?

## Ending the interview

Did you:

- explain that the interview was now coming to an end?
- enquire if the patient had any questions or unresolved issues?
- explain to the patient what will happen next, or when you will see him/her again (e.g. 'I'm now going to tell the Registrar about you and then I'll return with her in 15 minutes and we'll explain what we think the problem is and what we need to do about it.')?
- Did you wash your hands before and after examining the patient?

# Index

Note: page numbers in *italics* refer to Figures and Tables.

‘a’ waves, JVP 38  
ABC (airway, breathing, circulation) 32, 33  
ABCD, primary survey 121  
ABCD checklist, melanoma 104  
abdominal bruits 93  
abdominal examination 42, 43, 67, 72–73  
  aortic aneurysm 145  
  gynaecological disorders 46, 47  
  liver and spleen 171  
abdominal masses 176  
abdominal pain  
  acute abdomen 172–173  
  appendicitis 177  
  differential diagnosis 73  
  examination 72–73  
  history taking 72  
  inflammatory bowel disease 170  
  intestinal obstruction 77–8  
  pancreatitis 174–175  
abducens nerve, examination 52, 53  
abscesses  
  breasts 48, 105  
  cerebral 97  
  postoperative fever 96  
acanthosis nigricans 212  
acidosis  
  breathlessness 110  
  diabetes mellitus 152–153  
  renal failure 160–161  
acromegaly 158–159  
acute abdomen 172–173  
acute coronary syndrome 126  
acute heart failure 130  
Addison’s disease 156  
  blood pressure 36  
  fatigue 85  
  shock 118, 119  
adenomatous polyps 77  
agitation 103  
AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome) 214–215  
AIDS-related complex (ARC) 214  
airway assessment 33  
  trauma 121  
  unconscious patients 87  
alcohol excess, possible consequences 122  
alcohol intake, history taking 21, 29, 169  
alcohol-related problems  
  cerebellar disorders 201  
  dyspepsia 81  
  examination 123  
  gastrointestinal haemorrhage 79  
  history taking 122–123  
  vomiting 78  
allergies  
  history taking 29  
  to penicillin 29  
  respiratory disorders 41  
skin conditions 56  
  *see also* anaphylaxis

alopecia, SLE 210, 211  
alpha<sub>1</sub>-antitrypsin deficiency 183  
Alzheimer’s disease 203  
anaemia  
  examination 98, 99  
  fatigue 85  
  in gastrointestinal haemorrhage 79  
  history taking 98–99  
  pallor 99  
  rheumatoid arthritis 204  
anal reflex 45  
anaphylaxis 118, 119  
aneurysms *see* aortic aneurysm; berry aneurysms  
angina  
  aortic stenosis 134  
  chest pain 71  
  examination 127  
  history taking 126–127  
angular cheilitis 99  
ankle joint, examination 55  
ankylosing spondylitis 209  
anorexia, frequency in dyspepsia-related disease 81  
anoxia nervosa 83  
anterior drawer test 55  
anti-nuclear antibodies, SLE 211  
anus, examination 45  
aortic aneurysm 43, 73, 144–145  
  back pain 91  
aortic coarctation 140, 141  
aortic dissection 142–143  
  chest pain 71  
  frequency of symptoms and signs 143  
  importance of history 143  
aortic regurgitation 132, 136–137  
  ankylosing spondylitis 209  
  blood pressure 36  
  heart murmur 38  
  polycystic kidney disease 162  
  predisposing disease 136  
  pulse 36  
aortic stenosis 134–135  
  blood pressure 36  
  heart murmur 38  
  pulse 36  
aortic valve replacement 150  
APACHE (Acute Physiology and Chronic Health Evaluation) score 89  
apex beat 38  
  tapping 132  
appendicitis 73, 177  
arrhythmias 106  
  causes of syncope 125  
arthritis  
  ankylosing spondylitis 209  
  gout 208  
  osteoarthritis 206, 207  
  rheumatoid 204–205  
  septic 107  
  SLE 211  
asbestos exposure 41  
  malignant disease 212  
  lung carcinoma 184  
  pleural effusion 181  
ascites 43, 169  
asterixis 43  
asthma 178–9  
  diagnostic features 187  
atlanto-axial instability, rheumatoid arthritis 204, 205  
atrial fibrillation, thyroid disorders 155  
atrial flutter, jugular venous pressure 38  
atrioseptal defect 140  
atrophy  
  optic 59  
  skin 57  
AUDIT (Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test) 122  
auscultation 35  
  abdomen 42, 43  
  fetal heart 49  
  heart 36, 38, 39  
  respiratory system 40, 41  
  *see also* heart murmurs  
Austin–Flint murmur 132  
autonomic neuropathy 196  
  blood pressure 36  
AV nipping 58, 59  
  
B<sub>12</sub> deficiency 98, 99  
back pain 90–91  
  ankylosing spondylitis 209  
  aortic aneurysm 144  
  aortic dissection 142  
  ‘red flag’ features 91  
bad news communication 14–15  
balance, examination 53  
Barthel’s Index of Daily Living 51  
Becker’s muscular dystrophy 198, 199  
benign prostatic hypertrophy  
  urinary incontinence 165  
  urinary retention 164  
berry aneurysms 162  
biliary cirrhosis 168  
biliary colic 73  
bitemporal hemianopia 58  
bladder enlargement 164, 165  
bleeding  
  anaemia 98  
  fluid status determination 128–129  
  gastrointestinal 79  
blindness  
  occipital 53  
  unilateral 58  
  *see also* visual field defects; visual system  
blood pressure 36, 39  
  Addison’s disease 156  
  aortic stenosis 136  
  Cushing’s syndrome 156  
  definition of hypertension 92  
  influencing factors 92  
  inter-arm difference 143  
  measurement 93  
  MEWS (modified early warning score) 33  
  normal postural response 129  
  *see also* hypertension; hypotension  
bone density 207

- bone marrow failure 207  
 bones, Paget's disease 208  
 Bouchard's nodes 206, 207  
 boutonnière deformities 204, 205  
 bowel habit, change in 76, 77  
     inflammatory bowel disease 170  
 bowel malignancy 78  
 bowel obstruction 73, 76, 77–78  
 bradyarrhythmias 106  
 bradykinesia 192  
 brain stem death 117  
 brain stem reflexes 117  
 breast lumps 105  
 breasts, examination 47, 48, 105  
 breath sounds 40  
 breathing, bronchial 41  
 breathing assessment 33  
     chest pain 71  
     intensive care unit patients 88  
     stroke 191  
     trauma 121  
     unconscious patients 87  
 breathlessness  
     anaemia 98  
     aortic stenosis 136  
     asthma 178–179  
     cardiac disease 37  
     causes 110  
     chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) 186–187  
     differential diagnosis 179  
     examination 111  
     features suggesting heart failure 111  
     fibrosing alveolitis 182  
     history taking 40, 110–111  
     MRC Dyspnoea Scale 111  
     pleural effusion 181  
     pneumothorax 188  
     pulmonary embolus 148  
     thyroid disorders 155  
     tuberculosis 189  
 bronchial breathing 41  
 bronchial carcinoma *see* lung carcinoma  
 bronchiectasis 182, 183  
     diagnostic features 187  
 bronchiolitis obliterans-organizing pneumonia (BOOP) 182–183  
 'bronze' pigmentation 169  
 bruises  
     abdominal 93  
     peripheral vascular disease 151  
 'buffalo' hump 156  
 bulbo-anal reflex 45  
 bulbocavernosus reflex 45  
 bullae 57  
 butterfly rash 210, 211
- CAGE questionnaire 122, 169  
 calcinosis, scleroderma 213  
 cancer syndromes, inherited 212  
 candidiasis, AIDS 214  
 cannon waves, JVP 38, 138  
 carbon dioxide retention, signs 186  
 carcinoid syndrome 138  
 carcinoma, breasts 105  
 cardiac arrest, prognostic signs 87  
 cardiac cachexia 83  
 cardiac failure *see* heart failure
- cardiac ischaemia *see* ischaemic heart disease  
 cardiac syncope 125  
 cardiac valves *see* valve disease  
 cardiogenic shock 118  
 cardiomyopathy 37  
     alcohol-related 123  
     collapse 125  
     heart failure 130, 131  
     infective endocarditis risk 147  
     muscular dystrophy 199  
 cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR)  
     patients' views 21  
     *see also* resuscitation
- cardiovascular system  
     examination 36, 38, 39  
     history taking 31, 37  
 carotid pulse 67  
     aortic stenosis 134, 135  
 carpal tunnel syndrome 197  
     acromegaly 159  
     hypothyroidism 154, 155  
 cataracts 59  
     myotonic dystrophy 198  
     Wilson's disease 169  
 cauda equina claudication 151  
 cauda equina syndrome 91  
 CD4<sup>+</sup> T-cell count, AIDS 214  
 central venous pressure (CVP) monitoring 128–129  
 cerebellar disorders 201  
     examination 53  
     multiple sclerosis 194, 195  
 cerebral abscess 97  
 cervical cancer 214  
 cervical smears, history taking 46  
 cervical spine, examination 55, 90, 91  
 chaperones 25  
     breast examination 48  
     gynaecological examination 46, 47  
     male genitourinary examination 44, 45  
 chest examination 67  
 chest pain 37  
     angina 126  
     aortic dissection 142  
     with breathlessness 110  
     differential diagnosis 70, 71, 126  
     examination 71  
     history taking 70–71  
     myocardial infarction 126  
     pleural effusion 181  
     pneumothorax 188  
     pulmonary embolus 148  
     respiratory disorders 40  
     signs and symptoms suggesting serious causes 70  
     *see also* pleuritic pain
- chest X-ray  
     in diagnosis of chest pain 71  
     in diagnosis of fatigue 85  
     heart failure 131  
     myocardial infarction 126  
     pneumonia 160  
     pulmonary embolus 148  
     sarcoïdosis 183  
 children, appendicitis 177  
 cholangitis 73  
 cholecystitis 73  
 chronic bronchitis 186  
 chronic disease, anaemia 98
- chronic fatigue syndrome 85  
 chronic heart failure 130  
     severity grading 131  
     *see also* heart failure  
 chronic infection 83  
     fatigue 85  
 chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)  
     causes of deterioration 186  
     differential diagnosis 187  
     examination 187  
     history taking 186–187  
     oxygen administration 41  
     symptoms and signs 186  
 Churg–Strauss syndrome 210, 211  
 circulation assessment 33  
     intensive care unit patients 88  
     trauma 121  
     unconscious patients 87  
 claudication 151  
 clinical exams 22–23  
 clubbing 184, 185  
     infective endocarditis 147  
     liver disease 168  
     respiratory disorders 182, 183  
 cluster headaches 75  
 coccidioidomycosis, AIDS 214  
 cognitive impairment 102–103  
     AIDS-related 214  
     alcohol-related 123  
     cognitive status 64  
     'cog-wheel' rigidity 192  
     cold tolerance, thyroid disorders 154, 155  
 collapse  
     aetiology of syncope 125  
     diagnostic approach 124  
     differential diagnosis 125  
     examination 124, 124  
     history taking 124, 124  
 colour assessment 33  
     *see also* skin discolouration  
 colour vision 59  
 coma *see* unconscious patients  
 comfort 25  
 communicable diseases, history taking 21  
 communication  
     bad news 14–15  
     cultural issues 18–19  
     fundamental skills 10–11  
     of information 12–13  
     relationship with the patient 24–25  
     with relatives 16–17  
     sensitive issues 20–21  
 communication skills, self-assessment framework 216  
 comprehension assessment 203  
 confidentiality 25  
     within families 21  
 confusion 102–3  
 confusion assessment method 103  
 congenital heart disease 140–141  
 congestive cardiac failure  
     diagnostic features 187  
     symptoms and signs 181  
 conjunctivitis 108  
 consanguinity 30  
 consciousness, loss of 125  
 consciousness level assessment 33, 103  
     Glasgow Coma Score 86, 89

- consent  
 for gynaecological examination 46  
 for genitourinary system examination 44
- consolidation 40
- constipation 176  
 intestinal obstruction 77  
 thyroid disorders 155
- constrictive pericarditis, jugular venous pressure 38
- contraceptive history 46
- co-ordination, examination 51
- cor pulmonale, signs 186
- coronary artery disease *see* angina; ischaemic heart disease; myocardial infarction
- Corrigan's pulse 137
- corticosteroids  
 Cushing's syndrome 156  
 immunosuppression 116  
 osteoporosis 206, 207
- cough 101  
 asthma 178–179  
 with breathlessness 110
- chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)  
 186–187  
 history taking 40  
 pneumonia 180  
 tuberculosis 189
- Courvoisier's Law 95
- crackles, pulmonary 110
- cranial nerve palsies, Paget's disease 208
- cranial nerves, examination 52, 53  
 unconscious patient 86
- creatinine levels  
 in hypertension 93  
 in hypovolaemia 128
- CREST, scleroderma 213
- Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease 203
- Crohn's disease 170
- crusts 57
- cryptococcosis 214
- cryptosporidiosis 214
- Cullen's sign 173, 175
- cultural differences 18–19
- CURB-65 score 180
- Cusco's speculum examination 47
- Cushing's syndrome 156
- cyanosis 41
- cystic fibrosis 182, 183
- cysts 57  
 breasts 105
- cytomegalovirus disease 214
- De Musset's sign 137
- deafness *see* hearing impairment
- death  
 cultural issues 19
- diagnosis 117
- sudden  
 aortic dissection 142  
 aortic stenosis 134  
 family history 125, 127  
 pulmonary embolus 148
- deep vein thrombosis (DVT) 149  
 clinical prediction rules 149  
 postoperative fever 96  
 signs 148
- dehydration 128  
 diabetic ketoacidosis 152, 153  
 signs in elderly people 129
- delirium 102  
 confusion assessment method 103
- dementia 202–3
- depression 83  
 'biological' features 64  
 fatigue 85  
 sexual dysfunction 44  
 suggestive symptoms 82
- dermatomes 50
- dermatomyositis 212
- desquamative interstitial pneumonia (DIP) 182–183
- detrusor instability 165
- diabetes mellitus  
 carpal tunnel syndrome 197  
 complications 152  
 erectile dysfunction 44  
 examination 153  
 history taking 152, 153  
 peripheral neuropathy 153  
 suggestive symptoms 82
- diabetic ketoacidosis 152  
 abdominal pain 72
- diabetic retinopathy 58, 59, 152
- diarrhoea 76, 77  
 differential diagnosis 78  
 HIV and AIDS 214  
 inflammatory bowel disease 170  
 thyroid disorders 155
- diastolic blood pressure 39
- diastolic murmurs 132  
 aortic regurgitation 137
- diet, cultural issues 19
- dietary inadequacy 83
- digital rectal examination *see* rectal examination 164
- diplopia, myasthenia gravis 200
- disability assessment, Barthel's Index of Daily Living 51
- disc herniation 91
- discoid rash 211
- disorientation 103
- distal muscular dystrophy 199
- diverticulitis 73
- dizziness 109
- drug history 21, 28–29  
 recreational drugs 63  
 drug overdoses 114–115
- dry eyes 108
- Duchenne muscular dystrophy 198, 199
- Duke criteria, modified, infective endocarditis 147
- duodenal ulcer, frequency of GI symptoms 81
- Dupuytren's contracture 42, 67, 168  
 chronic liver disease 168
- Duroziez's sign 137
- dysarthria  
 motor neurone disease 193  
 multiple sclerosis 195  
 stroke 191
- dysdiadochokinesis 201
- dyspareunia 31, 46
- dyspepsia 80  
 alcohol-related 122  
 chest pain 71  
 frequency of GI symptoms 81
- dysphagia 42, 80–81  
 anaemia 96  
 muscular dystrophy 199
- scleroderma 213
- dyspnoea *see* breathlessness
- Dyspnoea Scale, MRC 111
- dystrophia myotonica 198
- dysuria 31, 112
- ears  
 examination 60  
*see also* hearing impairment
- Eaton–Lambert syndrome 200
- ECG (electrocardiography)  
 angina 127  
 arrhythmias 106  
 chest pain 71  
 heart failure 131  
 myocardial infarction 126, 127
- Eisenmenger's syndrome 141
- elbow, examination 55
- elderly patients  
 aortic stenosis 134  
 dehydration, signs 129  
 dizziness 109  
 hypertension 92  
 hyperthyroidism 155  
 hypothyroidism 154  
 hypovolaemia 129  
 myocardial infarction and angina 126  
 osteoporosis 207
- electrocardiography *see* ECG
- Emery–Dreifuss muscular dystrophy 199
- emphysema 186
- encephalopathy  
 alcohol-related 122, 201  
 hepatic 168  
 HIV-related 214  
 renal failure 160
- end of life care, communication issues 21
- endocarditis *see* infective endocarditis
- entrapment neuropathy, carpal tunnel syndrome 197
- epididymal cysts 166
- epididymitis 166
- epigastric pain, causes 172–173
- epilepsy  
 collapse 124, 125  
 syncope 37
- episcleritis 108
- rheumatoid arthritis 204
- erectile dysfunction  
 examination 45  
 history taking 44  
 peripheral vascular disease 151
- erosions 57
- erythema nodosum 170, 183
- examination  
 abdomen 42, 43  
 breasts 47  
 cardiovascular system 36, 38, 39  
 diagnosis of death 117  
 ears 60  
 gastrointestinal system 42, 43  
 general 66–67  
 gynaecological 46, 47  
 intensive care unit patients 88–89  
 legs 65  
 male genitourinary system 44, 45  
 mouth and throat 60  
 musculoskeletal system 54–55  
 neck 60  
 nervous system 50, 51–53

- examination (*cont.*)
- nose 60
  - obstetric 49
  - presentation 68–69
  - principles 34–35
  - psychiatric assessment 63–64
  - respiratory system 40, 41
  - skin conditions 56, 57
  - thyroid 60
  - unconscious patients 87
  - visual system 58–59
  - see also* neurological examination
- excoriation 57
- exercise tolerance assessment 31
- chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) 187
- exophthalmos 155
- extrapyramidal function examination 53
- eye movements
- cerebellar disorders 201
  - cranial nerve examination 53
  - dizziness 109
  - multiple sclerosis 194
  - myasthenia gravis 200
  - unconscious patients 86
- eyes
- acromegaly 159
  - diabetes mellitus 153
  - examination 58–59, 67
  - HIV/AIDS 214
  - hyperthyroidism 154, 155
  - multiple sclerosis 194, 195
  - in Paget's disease 208
  - red 108
  - rheumatoid arthritis 204
  - sarcoidosis 183
  - see also* blindness; optic atrophy; optic nerve; optic neuritis; visual field defects; visual system
- face
- changes in acromegaly 158–159
  - examination 67
  - in myasthenia gravis 200
- facial nerve 52, 53
- facioscapulohumoral muscular dystrophy 198, 199
- faeces examination 43
- falls, risk assessment 207
- family history 30, 75
- family of the patient 16–17, 19, 25
- confidence 21
- family trees 30
- fatigue 84
- anaemia 98
  - chronic fatigue syndrome 85
  - differential diagnosis 85
  - thyroid disorders 155
- feet, examination 55
- diabetics 153
- femoral hernia 43, 176
- femoral stretch test 91
- fetal heart beat 49
- fetal lie 49
- fever
- postoperative 96
  - pulmonary embolism 148
  - suspected meningitis 97
  - fibroadenoma 105
- fibrocystic breast disease 105
- fibrosing alveolitis 182–183
- clubbing 184, 185
- fingers
- osteoarthritis 206, 207
  - rheumatoid arthritis 204–205
- fissures, skin 57
- flank pain, causes 172
- flap, metabolic 43, 161
- fluid depletion, signs 76, 77
- fluid status determination 128–129
- nephrotic syndrome 163
  - in renal disease 161
- folate deficiency 98, 99
- food allergies 170
- fractures, osteoporosis 206, 207
- frontal lobe, localized defects 53
- functional assessment 64
- functional dyspepsia, frequency of GI symptoms 81
- functional enquiry 31
- functional incontinence 165
- fundal height 49
- fundoscopy 58, 59
- diabetics 153
- gag reflex 52, 53, 60, 81, 86
- gait 52, 55
- cerebellar disorders 201
  - Parkinson's disease 192
  - peripheral neuropathy 196
- gallbladder, Courvoisier's Law 95
- gallstone disease
- frequency of GI symptoms 81
  - jaundice 95
  - pancreatitis 175
- gangrene 151
- gastric cancer, frequency of GI symptoms 81
- gastric ulcer, frequency of GI symptoms 81
- gastroenteritis 73, 78
- gastrointestinal haemorrhage 79
- anaemia 98
  - frequency in dyspepsia-related disease 81
- gastrointestinal system
- examination 42, 43
  - history taking 31, 42–43
- Gaucher's disease 171
- general examination 66–67
- genitalia, examination 43
- male 45
- genitourinary system
- history taking 31
  - male 44–5
  - see also* gynaecological history and examination;
  - urinary incontinence; urinary retention;
  - urinary stream; urinary symptoms; urinary tract infection; urine
- genu valgus 206
- genu varum 206
- Gilbert's disease 95
- glandular fever 100
- Glasgow Coma Score 86, 89
- glaucoma, acute 108
- glomerulonephritis, urine examination 61
- glossopharyngeal nerve 52, 53
- glucose, blood levels
- intensive care unit patients 88
  - unconscious patients 86, 87
- in urine 61
- see also* diabetes mellitus
- goitre 154–155
- examination 60
- Goodpasture's syndrome 101
- gout 208
- Graham Steel murmur 132
- Grey-Turner's sign 173, 175
- growth hormone, acromegaly 158–159
- growth hormone deficiency 157
- GTN (glyceryl trinitrate) 37, 70, 71, 126
- gynaecological history and examination 46–7
- gynaecomastia 168
- haematemesis 31, 42, 79
- haematuria 112–113, 164
- infective endocarditis 147
  - polycystic kidney disease 162
  - renal failure 160
  - systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) 211
- haemochromatosis 169
- haemolytic anaemia 98–99
- jaundice 95
- haemoptysis 31, 40, 101
- with breathlessness 110
  - bronchiectasis 182
  - lung carcinoma 184
  - pulmonary embolus 148
  - tuberculosis 189
- haemorrhages, retinal 58, 59
- hand washing 25
- hands
- carpal tunnel syndrome 197
  - examination 40, 42, 43, 54–55, 67
  - muscle wasting 185
  - osteoarthritis 206, 207
  - rheumatoid arthritis 204–205
- head injuries
- alcohol-related 122
  - confusion 102
- headache
- differential diagnosis 75
  - examination 74, 75
  - features suggesting a serious cause 74
  - history taking 74–75
  - suspected meningitis 97
- hearing impairment
- Paget's disease 208
  - thyroid disorders 155
- heart block, jugular venous pressure 38
- heart disease
- alcohol-related 122
  - congenital 139, 140–141, 147
  - clubbing 185
  - hypertensive 92
  - ischaemic 126–127
  - muscular dystrophy 199
  - palpitations 37
  - polycystic kidney disease 162
  - rheumatoid arthritis 204
  - sexual dysfunction 44
- heart failure
- causes and exacerbating factors 131
  - common errors 131
  - examination 131
  - fatigue 85
  - history taking 130–131
  - Paget's disease 208

- pleural effusion 181  
 severity grading 131  
 signs 94, 110, 111  
 heart murmurs 38, 39  
   aortic regurgitation 136–137  
   aortic stenosis 134–135  
   atrioseptal defect 140  
   infective endocarditis 146  
   mitral regurgitation 133  
   mitral stenosis 132  
   mitral valve prolapse 133  
   patent ductus arteriosus 140, 141  
   prosthetic valves 150  
   pulmonary stenosis 139  
   tricuspid regurgitation 138  
   ventriculo-septal defect 140  
 heart sounds 39  
 heart valves *see* heart murmurs; valve disease  
 heartburn, frequency in dyspepsia-related disease 81  
 heat intolerance 83  
 Heberden's nodes 206, 207  
 heel-toe test 55  
 hemianopia 58  
 Henoch-Schönlein purpura 210, 211  
 hepatic encephalopathy 168  
 hepatitis  
   alcohol-related 123  
   chronic liver disease 168–169  
   jaundice 95  
 hepatojugular reflux 138  
 hepatomegaly 39, 43, 171  
   polycystic kidney disease 162  
 hepatosplenomegaly 171  
 herniae 43, 176  
 herpes simplex infection, AIDS 214  
 Hill's sign 137  
 hip fractures 207  
 hip joint  
   ankylosing spondylitis 209  
   examination 55  
 histoplasmosis, AIDS 214  
 history presentation 68–69  
 history taking 70–71, 72, 74–75, 76–77, 76  
   alcohol intake 29  
   allergies 29  
   breast disorders 48  
   cardiovascular system 37  
   drug history 21, 28–29  
   family history 30  
   functional enquiry 31  
   gastrointestinal system 42–43  
   gynaecological 46–47  
   intensive care unit patients 88  
   male genitourinary system 44–45  
   musculoskeletal system 54  
   neurological disorders 51  
   obstetric 49  
   past medical history 28  
   presenting complaint 26–27  
   psychiatric assessment 62–63  
   respiratory system 40–41  
   self-assessment framework 216  
   sexual history 20–21, 44–45  
   skin conditions 56–57  
   smoking 29  
   social history 30  
   travel history 30
- unconscious patients 87  
 visual system 58  
 HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) 214–215  
 HLA-B27 209  
 hoarseness, thyroid disorders 155  
 homonymous hemianopia 58  
 hormone deficiencies, sexual dysfunction 44  
 Horner's syndrome 143, 184, 185  
 Huntington's disease 51  
   confusion 102  
   dementia 202  
 hydatid of Morgagni, torsion 166  
 hydrocephalus, normal pressure 203  
 hydrocoele 166  
 hygiene 25  
 hypercalcaemia, sarcoidosis 183  
 hyperglycaemia 152  
   acromegaly 159  
 hyperkalaemia  
   arrhythmias 106  
   renal failure 160, 161  
 hyperparathyroidism, osteoporosis 207  
 hypertension  
   aortic aneurysm 144  
   aortic coarctation 141  
   aortic dissection 142  
   causes 92, 93  
   consequences 92  
   definition 92  
   examination 93  
   history taking 92–93  
   polycystic kidney disease 162  
   renal failure 160  
   scleroderma 213  
 hypertensive retinopathy 58, 59  
   grading 92  
 hyperthyroidism 154  
   symptoms and signs 155  
 hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy 135  
 hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy 185  
 hypoalbuminaemia, nephrotic syndrome 163  
 hypoglossal nerve 52, 53  
 hypoglycaemia 152–153  
   unconscious patients 87  
 hypopituitarism 157  
 hypotension  
   collapse 124, 125  
   diarrhoea and vomiting 76, 77  
   dizziness 109  
   hypovolaemia 126  
   postural 36, 153, 156, 157  
   shock 118  
 hypothyroidism 154–155  
   dementia 202  
   fatigue 85  
   symptoms and signs 155  
   *see also* myxoedema  
 hypovolaemia 118, 128–129  
   blood pressure 36  
   gastrointestinal haemorrhage 79  
   shock 118  
   trauma 121
- identity checks 25  
 ileus 78  
 iliac fossa pain  
   appendicitis 177  
   causes 172
- illness, recognition 32–33  
 immunodeficiency, bronchiectasis 183  
 immunosuppressed patients 116  
   tuberculosis 189  
 incontinence of urine 46, 164, 165  
 indigestion 80  
 infection control 25  
 infections, immunosuppressed patients 116  
 infective endocarditis  
   aortic regurgitation 136  
   clubbing 184  
   examination 146, 147  
   frequency of symptoms and signs 147  
   history taking 146  
   modified Duke criteria 147  
   patent ductus arteriosus 141  
   prosthetic cardiac valves 150  
   tricuspid regurgitation 138  
 inflammatory bowel disease 78, 170  
 inflammatory spinal disease 91  
 information, communication to the patient 12–13  
 information sources for patients 13  
 inguinal hernia 43, 176  
 inspection of the patient 35  
 insulin, diabetes mellitus 152–153  
 intensive care unit patients 88–89  
   scoring systems 89  
 interpreters 18, 25  
 interstitial nephritis, urine examination 61  
 interstitial pneumonitis 182–3  
 intestinal obstruction 73, 76, 77–78  
 intoxication, vomiting 78  
 intracranial pressure, raised 53, 75  
   symptoms 74, 75  
   vomiting 78  
 introductions 25  
 iritis 108  
   ankylosing spondylitis 209  
   rheumatoid arthritis 204  
 iron deficiency anaemia 98  
 irritable bowel syndrome, frequency of GI symptoms 81  
 ischaemia, acute 151  
 ischaemic heart disease (IHD)  
   chest pain 37  
   history taking 37  
   *see also* angina; myocardial infarction  
 isosporiasis, AIDS 215
- Janeway lesions 147  
 jaundice 95  
   anaemia 98, 99  
   chronic liver disease 168–169  
   examination 169  
   hepatosplenomegaly 171  
   history taking 168–169  
   pancreatitis 175
- joints 107  
   ankylosing spondylitis 209  
   examination 54–55  
   gout 208  
   osteoarthritis 206, 207  
   rheumatoid arthritis 204–205  
   *see also* hip joint; sacro-iliac joints
- jugular venous distension 131  
 jugular venous pressure (JVP) 36, 38, 39  
   chest pain 70, 71  
   heart failure 110, 111, 130

- jugular venous pressure (JVP) (*cont.*)  
   Kussmaul's sign 38, 119  
   pulmonary embolism 111, 148  
   pulmonary stenosis 139  
   shock 118  
   tricuspid regurgitation 138
- Kaposi's sarcoma, AIDS 215  
 Kartagener's syndrome 183  
 Kayser-Fleischer rings 169  
 keratitis 108  
 Kernig's sign 97  
 ketoacidosis, diabetic 152  
 ketones 77  
   unconscious patients 86, 87
- kidneys  
   examination 43  
   *see also* nephrotic syndrome; polycystic kidney disease; renal colic; renal disorders; renal failure
- knee joint  
   ankylosing spondylitis 209  
   examination 55
- koilonychia 99  
 Korotkoff sounds 93  
 Korsakoff's psychosis 123  
 Kussmaul respiration 152, 161  
 Kussmaul's sign 38, 119  
 kyphosis, ankylosing spondylitis 209
- Lachmann test 55  
 lactic acidosis 152  
 lacunar stroke (LAC) 191  
 language *see* speech  
 lateral medullary syndrome 191  
 'lead-pipe' tone 192  
 left ventricular failure, signs and symptoms 130  
 left ventricular hypertrophy, apex beat 38  
*Legionella* 180  
 legs  
   deep vein thrombosis (DVT) 148, 149  
   examination 67  
   general examination 65  
   neurological examination 50, 51  
   pain on walking 151  
   pulses 151  
   swollen 94  
     deep vein thrombosis 149  
   leucocytes in urine 61  
   leuconychia 168  
   Lewy body dementia 203  
   lichenification 57  
   lidlag 154, 155  
   limb girdle muscular dystrophy 198, 199  
   limbs *see* legs; upper limbs  
   liquor volume 49  
   listening to patients 11  
   liver  
     enlarged 39, 43, 171  
       polycystic kidney disease 162  
     examination 43  
     hepatic encephalopathy 168  
     hepatosplenomegaly 171  
     pulsatile 138  
   liver disease  
     alcohol-related 122, 123  
     anaemia 98  
     chronic 168–169
- examination 168, 169  
   history taking 168–169  
   jaundice 95  
     *see also* hepatitis  
   locked in syndrome 191  
   long cases 22–23  
   long QT syndrome 125  
   lower limbs *see* legs  
   lumbar spine  
     ankylosing spondylitis 209  
     examination 55, 90, 91
- lumps 104  
     breasts 47, 48, 105  
     neck 60  
     skin 56  
     testicular 166–167
- lung carcinoma  
     examination 184–185  
     history taking 184  
     pleural effusion 181  
     symptoms and signs 181
- lungs  
     asthma 178–179  
     bronchiectasis 182, 183  
     COPD 186–187  
     cystic fibrosis 182, 183  
     fibrosing alveolitis 182–183  
     pleural effusion 181  
     pneumonia 180  
     sarcoïdosis 182, 183  
     tuberculosis 189
- lupus pernio 183  
   lymph nodes, anatomical sites 100  
   lymphadenopathy 43, 100  
     axillary 48  
     common causes 100  
     HIV and AIDS 214  
     malignancy 212  
     neck 60  
     rheumatoid arthritis 204  
     SLE 210, 211
- lymphocytic interstitial pneumonitis (LIP) 182–183  
   lymphoma 100  
     AIDS 215  
     'machinery' murmur 141  
     macrocytic anaemia 98  
     macular sparing 58  
     macules 56, 57  
     malabsorption 76, 77, 78  
       anaemia 98  
       cystic fibrosis 183  
       pancreatitis 175  
       suggestive symptoms 82  
       swollen legs 94  
       weight loss 82, 83
- malar rash 210, 211  
   malaria  
     anaemia 99  
     hepatosplenomegaly 171  
     jaundice 95
- malignancy 212  
     anaemia 98  
     back pain 91  
     carcinoma of the lung 184–185  
     fatigue 85  
     pulmonary embolus 148–149  
     weight loss 83
- Mallory–Weiss tear 79  
   Marfan's syndrome 142, 188  
   'mask-like' expression, Parkinson's disease 192  
   masses, abdominal 176  
   McBurney's point 177  
   McMurray test 55  
   medial medullary syndrome 191  
   median nerve compression, carpal tunnel syndrome 197  
   melaena 42, 79  
   melanoma 104  
   memory assessment 203  
   memory impairment 103  
     dementia 202–203
- Memory Impairment Screen 203  
   meningism 75  
   meningitis 75, 97  
     differential diagnosis 97  
     signs 74, 75  
     tuberculosis 189
- meningococcal septicaemia 97  
   menstrual history 31, 46  
   menstruation  
     abdominal pain 177  
     haematuria 61, 113
- Mental Status Examination 63–64  
   mesothelioma  
     pleural effusion 161  
     pneumothorax 168
- metabolic disturbance, vomiting 78  
   metastatic disease, symptoms 48  
   MEWS (modified early warning score) 33  
   microcytic anaemia 98  
   microscopic polyangiitis 210, 211  
   microstomia 213  
   migraine 75  
     POUNDing 75  
     symptoms 74  
     visual loss 59
- miliary TB 189  
   Mini Mental Status Examination 203  
   mitral facies 132  
   mitral regurgitation 133  
     heart murmur 38  
     polycystic kidney disease 162
- mitral stenosis 132  
     apex beat 38  
     heart murmur 38
- mitral valve prolapse 133  
     polycystic kidney disease 162
- mitral valve replacement 150  
   mobility problems  
     Barthel's Index of Daily Living 51  
     functional incontinence 165  
     motor neurone disease 193  
     multiple sclerosis 194  
     osteoarthritis 207  
     Parkinson's disease 192  
     rheumatoid arthritis 204
- mood 63–64  
   'moon' face 156  
   morphoea 213  
   motor neurone disease 193  
   motor vehicle accidents 120–121  
   mouth, examination 43, 60, 67  
   mouth ulcers, inflammatory bowel disease 170
- MRC Dyspnoea Scale 111  
   MRC power grades 53

- multiple sclerosis  
 cerebellar disorders 201  
 differential diagnosis 194, 195  
 examination 194, 195  
 history taking 194–195  
 motor neurone disease differential diagnosis 193  
 symptoms and signs 195  
 multi-system atrophy 192  
 Murphy's sign 95  
 muscular dystrophies 198  
 inheritance and clinical features 199  
 musculoskeletal chest pain 71  
 musculoskeletal system  
 examination 54–55  
 history taking 31, 54  
 myasthenia gravis 200  
 mycobacterial infection, AIDS 215  
*Mycobacterium tuberculosis* 180  
*Mycoplasma* 180  
 myocardial infarction  
 abdominal pain 72  
 chest pain 71  
 examination 127  
 history taking 126–127  
 suggestive signs and symptoms 127  
 ventriculo-septal defect 141  
 myocarditis 131  
 myotonic dystrophy 198  
 myxoedema  
 anaemia 98  
 carpal tunnel syndrome 197  
*see also* hypothyroidism
- nails  
 examination 39  
 koilonychia 79, 99  
 splinter haemorrhages 138, 147
- nausea  
 aortic dissection 142  
 with chest pain 71  
 and collapse 125  
 differential diagnosis 78  
 dizziness 109  
 frequency in dyspepsia-related disease 81  
 with headache 75  
 myocardial infarction 126  
 renal failure 160
- neck  
 examination 55, 60, 67  
 rheumatoid arthritis 204, 205
- neck stiffness 97
- nephrotic syndrome 163  
 pleural effusion 181  
 rheumatoid arthritis 204  
 symptoms and signs 181
- nerve stretch tests 55, 91
- nervous system  
 history taking 31, 51  
 symptoms 51
- neurological examination 50, 51–3  
 carpal tunnel syndrome 197  
 cerebellar disorders 201  
 cranial nerves 52, 53  
 dementia 203  
 in dizziness 109  
 in erectile dysfunction 45  
 localized defects 53  
 lower limbs 65
- motor neurone disease 193  
 multiple sclerosis 194, 195  
 myasthenia gravis 200  
 Parkinson's disease 192  
 peripheral neuropathy 196  
 SLE 211  
 stroke 191  
 unconscious patients 86, 87
- neuropathy  
 alcohol-related 122, 123  
*see also* peripheral neuropathy
- neurosarcoid 183, 195
- neutropaenia 116
- night sweats  
 HIV infection 214  
 tuberculosis 189
- nitrite in urine 61
- non-specific interstitial pneumonitis (NSIP)  
 182–183
- non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)  
 abdominal pain 72  
 gastrointestinal haemorrhage 79
- non-verbal behaviour 216
- Noonan's syndrome 139
- normal pressure hydrocephalus 203
- normocytic anaemia 98
- nose, examination 60
- note writing 69
- nystagmus  
 cerebellar disorders 201  
 dizziness 109  
 multiple sclerosis 194
- obesity, Cushing's syndrome 156
- obstetric examination 49
- obstetric history 46–47, 49
- obstructive sleep apnoea 40–41  
 fatigue 85
- occipital lobe, localized defects 53
- occupational history 30
- oculomotor nerve 52, 53
- oculopharyngeal muscular dystrophy 198, 199
- odynophagia 81
- oedema  
 cardiac disease 37  
 deep vein thrombosis 149  
 in heart failure 130  
 nephrotic syndrome 163  
 SLE 211  
 swollen legs 94  
*see also* pulmonary oedema
- oesophageal reflux 73  
 chest pain 71
- oesophageal tear 79
- oesophagitis, frequency of GI symptoms 81
- olfactory nerve, examination 52, 53
- open questions 11, 26
- ophthalmoscopic examination 58, 59
- opportunistic infections, HIV infection 214
- optic atrophy 59  
 acromegaly 159  
 multiple sclerosis 194, 195  
 Paget's disease 208
- optic nerve 52, 53
- optic neuritis 59
- oral ulcers, SLE 211
- orthopnoea 31, 37, 130
- OSCEs (Objective Structured Clinical Examinations)  
 22–23
- Osler's nodes 146, 147
- Osler–Weber–Rendu syndrome 99
- osteoarthritis 206, 207
- osteoarthropathy, hypertrophic 41
- osteoporosis 206, 207
- ovarian cancer, symptoms 47
- overdoses 114–115
- overflow incontinence 165
- oxygen administration 41  
 in COPD 186
- Paget's disease of bone 208
- pain  
 acute abdomen 172–173  
 dysuria 112  
 peripheral vascular disease 151  
 pleuritic 37, 180  
*see also* abdominal pain; chest pain; headache
- pallor, prediction of anaemia 99
- palmar erythema 168
- palpation 35  
 abdomen 42, 43, 47  
 abdominal masses 176  
 apex beat 38, 39  
 breasts 48, 105  
 kidneys 162  
 skin lesions 57
- palpitations 106  
 aortic regurgitation 136  
 collapse 125  
 history taking 37  
 mitral stenosis 132  
 pulmonary embolism 148  
 thyroid disorders 155
- Pancoast tumour 185
- pancreatitis 73, 78, 172–173  
 alcohol-related 122, 123  
 examination 174, 175  
 history taking 175  
 shock 118
- papilloedema 58, 59
- papules 56, 57
- parasternal heave 132
- parietal lobe, localized defects 53
- parkinsonism, dementia 203
- Parkinson's disease 192  
 differential diagnosis 192
- parotid hypertrophy 168
- paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea (PND) 31, 37, 130
- partial anterior circulation stroke (PACS) 191
- past medical history (PMH) 28, 70–71, 72, 75
- patent ductus arteriosus 140, 141  
 blood pressure 36
- peau d'orange 105
- 'peek sign' 200
- pelvic abscess 96
- pelvic floor weakness 165
- pelvic inflammatory disease 177
- penicillin allergy, evidence 29
- penis, examination 45
- peptic ulcer 73  
 frequency of GI symptoms 81
- percussion 35  
 abdomen 42, 47
- lungs 40

- pericardial effusion  
   hypothyroidism 154  
   jugular venous pressure 38  
   lung carcinoma 185  
   tamponade 131  
   tuberculosis 189  
 pericarditis  
   chest pain 37, 71  
   rheumatoid arthritis 204  
   SLE 211  
 perineal reflexes 45  
 peripheral neuropathy 196  
   alcohol-related 123  
   anaemia 98, 99  
   diabetes mellitus 152, 153  
   dizziness 109  
   examination 153  
   lung carcinoma 185  
   rheumatoid arthritis 205  
 peripheral vascular disease 144, 151  
 peritoneal inflammation, signs 172  
 persistent generalized lymphadenopathy (PGL) 214  
 personal history 63  
 pertussis 101  
 petechiae, infective endocarditis 147  
 Phalen's sign 197  
 pharyngeal pouch 81  
 photophobia 97  
 photosensitivity, SLE 211  
 Pick's disease 203  
 Pinard's stethoscope 49  
 pitting oedema 94  
 pituitary apoplexy 157  
 pituitary disease  
   acromegaly 158–159  
   hypopituitarism 157  
 plaques 57  
 platelet defects 99  
 pleural effusion 40, 181  
   rheumatoid arthritis 204  
   signs 111  
 pleurisy, chest pain 71  
 pleuritic pain 37  
   pneumonia 180  
*Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia, AIDS 215  
 pneumonia 180  
   HIV and AIDS 214, 215  
   pleural effusion 181  
   symptoms and signs 181  
 pneumothorax 40, 188  
   signs 111  
 polyarteritis nodosa 210, 211  
 polycystic kidney disease 162  
 polyuria 164  
   in acromegaly 159  
   after arrhythmia 106  
   diabetes mellitus 152–3  
   and fatigue 85  
   incontinence 165  
   polycystic kidney disease 162  
   renal failure 160  
   and shock 118  
   and weight loss 82  
 portal hypertension 43, 122  
   signs 168, 171  
 posterior circulation stroke (POC) 191  
 posterior drawer test 55  
 postoperative fever 96  
 postural hypotension 36  
 postural responses 129  
 potassium levels 93  
   *see also* hyperkalaemia  
 Pott's disease 189  
 POUNDing (migraine) 75  
 power assessment 53  
   stroke 191  
 pregnancy  
   ectopic 172  
   obstetric history and examination 49  
 presentation of history and examination 68–69  
 presenting complaint, history taking 26–27  
 primary survey, trauma 120, 121  
 privacy 25  
 progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy 215  
 progressive supranuclear palsy 192  
 prolactinoma 44  
 prolapse, uterine 46  
 prostate examination 164  
   'prostatic symptoms' 164, 165  
 prostatitis 112  
 prosthetic cardiac valves 150  
 proteinuria 61  
   nephrotic syndrome 163  
   SLE 211  
 pseudogout 208  
 psychiatric assessment  
   examination 63–64  
   history taking 62–63  
 psychiatric disturbance, SLE 211  
 psychomotor agitation/ retardation 103  
 psychotic illness, sexual dysfunction 44  
 ptosis 58  
   myasthenia gravis 200  
 pulmonary atelectasis, postoperative 96  
 pulmonary embolism 148–149  
   chest pain 71  
   clinical prediction rules 149  
   differential diagnosis 148  
   signs 111  
 pulmonary fibrosis 40  
   rheumatoid arthritis 204  
   scleroderma 213  
 pulmonary haemorrhage 101, 110  
 pulmonary hypertension, jugular venous pressure 38  
 pulmonary oedema 40  
   breathlessness 110  
   cough 101  
   heart failure 131  
   myocardial infarction 127  
   pancreatitis 174, 175  
   renal failure 160, 161  
 pulmonary regurgitation, heart murmur 38  
 pulmonary stenosis 139  
   heart murmur 38  
   jugular venous pressure 38  
 pulse 39  
   character 36  
   collapsing 140  
   peripheral vascular disease 151  
   thyroid disorders 155  
 pulse pressure 36  
   in aortic stenosis 136  
 pulse rate, normal postural response 129  
 pulsus paradoxus 131  
   asthma 179  
 pupillary dilatation 59  
 pustules 57  
 pyelonephritis 172  
 pyoderma gangrenosum 170  
   'pyramidal distribution' 191  
 pyramidal 'drift' 52  
 pyrophosphate crystal deposition 208  
 questioning 26–27  
   open questions 11  
   permission giving style 20, 44  
 Quincke's sign 137  
 rashes  
   allergies 29  
   examination 57  
   history taking 56–57  
   meningococcal 97  
   SLE 210, 211  
   unconscious patients 87  
 Raynaud's phenomenon, scleroderma 213  
 rebound tenderness 43, 177  
 rectal carcinoma 77  
 rectal examination 43  
   gynaecological disorders 47  
   male 44, 45  
   prostate 164  
 red cells in urine 61  
 red eye 108  
 red reflex 59  
 reflexes 50, 53  
   brain stem 117  
   multiple sclerosis 194  
   perineal 45  
   stroke 191  
   thyroid disorders 155  
 reflux nephropathy 112, 161  
   hypertension 92  
 relatives of the patient 16–17, 19, 25  
   confidentiality 21  
 religious issues 19  
 renal artery stenosis, abdominal bruits 93  
 renal colic 73  
 renal disorders  
   nephrotic syndrome 163  
   polycystic kidney disease 162  
   SLE 211  
 renal failure  
   anaemia 98  
   examination 160, 161  
   fatigue 85  
   history taking 160–161  
 renovascular disease 92, 93  
 respiratory bronchiolitis associated interstitial lung disease (RB-ILD) 182–183  
 respiratory disorders  
   asthma 178–179  
   bronchiectasis 182, 183  
   carcinoma of the lung 184–185  
   chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) 186–187  
   cystic fibrosis 182, 183  
   fibrosing alveolitis 182–183  
   pleural effusion 181  
   pneumonia 180  
   pneumothorax 188  
   sarcoidosis 182, 183  
   tuberculosis 189

- respiratory distress 41, 180  
 respiratory failure  
     motor neurone disease 193  
     muscular dystrophy 198, 199  
     myasthenia gravis 200  
     pancreatitis 175  
     pneumonia 180  
 respiratory rate 32  
     asthma 178, 179  
     MEWS (modified early warning score) 33  
     pneumonia 180  
 respiratory system  
     evidence on chest signs 41  
     examination 40, 41  
     history taking 31, 40–41  
 resuscitation 87  
     breathlessness 111  
     chest pain 71, 127  
     trauma patients 121  
     unconscious patients 87  
 retinal detachment 59  
 retinitis pigmentosa 59  
 retinopathy 58, 59  
     diabetic 152  
 rheumatic fever  
     aortic regurgitation 136  
     aortic stenosis 134  
     mitral regurgitation 133  
     mitral stenosis 132  
     pulmonary stenosis 139  
 rheumatoid arthritis  
     anaemia 96  
     aortic regurgitation 136  
     carpal tunnel syndrome 197  
     diagnostic criteria 205  
     examination 204–205  
     history taking 204  
     systemic features 204  
 rheumatoid nodules 204  
 right ventricular failure, signs and symptoms 130  
 Rinne's test 53  
 rotator cuff disorders 55  
 Roth spots 147  
 Rovsing's sign 177  
 sacro-iliac joints, examination 55, 90, 91  
 sacroiliitis 170  
 Salmonella septicaemia, AIDS 215  
 sarcoidosis 182, 183  
 scaling 57  
 scars 57  
 Schamroth sign 184  
 Schirmer's test 108  
 Schober test 209  
 sciatic nerve compression 53, 90  
 scleritis 108  
 sclerodactyly 213  
 scleroderma (systemic sclerosis) 213  
 sclerosing cholangitis 168  
 scrotum, examination 45  
 secondary survey, trauma 120, 121  
 seizures 125  
 self-assessment framework 216  
 self-harm, suicide attempts 114–115  
 sensation  
     examination 51, 196  
     facial 52  
     septic arthritis 107  
     septicaemic shock 118, 119  
     seroconversion, HIV infection 214  
     sexual dysfunction  
         history taking 44  
         *see also* erectile dysfunction  
     sexual history 20–21  
         women 46  
     Sheehan's syndrome 157  
     shock  
         abdominal pain 72, 73  
         acute abdomen 172–173  
         Addison's disease 156  
         asthma 179  
         causes 118  
         chest pain 70, 71  
         examination 118, 119  
         gastrointestinal haemorrhage 79  
         history taking 118–119  
         pancreatitis 174–175  
         pneumonia 180  
         pneumothorax 188  
         trauma 121  
         treatment 119  
     short cases 22  
     shoulder joint, examination 55  
     Shy–Drager syndrome 192  
     sickle cell disease 98  
     ‘silent’ chest, asthma 178, 179  
     silver wiring 58, 59  
     Simple Clinical Score 33  
     Sim's speculum examination 47  
     sinusitis 101  
     skin of breasts 47  
     skin conditions  
         Cushing's syndrome 156  
         examination 56, 57  
         history taking 31, 56–57  
         HIV and AIDS 214  
         legs 65  
         malignancy 212  
         scleroderma 213  
         thyroid disorders 155  
         *see also* rashes  
     skin discolouration  
         abdominal 173, 175  
         ‘bronze’ pigmentation 169  
         *see also* jaundice  
     sleep-wake cycle disturbances 103  
     smoking, history taking 29, 41  
     social history 30  
     space occupying lesions (SOLs) 75  
     speculum examination 47  
     speech assessment  
         confusion 103  
         motor neurone disease 193  
         myasthenia gravis 200  
         stroke 191  
     spermatic cord 166, 167  
     spider naevi 168  
     spinal injury 87  
     spine  
         ankylosing spondylitis 209  
         back pain 90–91  
         examination 55  
         osteoporosis 207  
         trauma 120–121  
     spleen, examination 43  
     splenomegaly 171, 176  
         alcohol-related problems 122  
         anaemia 98, 99  
         infective endocarditis 146, 147  
         jaundice 95  
         liver disease 168, 169  
         rheumatoid arthritis 204  
         sarcoidosis 182  
     splinter haemorrhages 138, 147  
     sputum 101  
         bronchiectasis 183  
         COPD 186  
         heart failure 130  
         pneumonia 180  
         steatorrhoea 174–175  
         cystic fibrosis 183  
     sternoclavicular joint, examination 55  
     straight leg raise 53, 65, 90  
     strangury 164  
     *Streptococcus pneumoniae* 180  
     stress incontinence 165  
     stridor 41  
     stroke  
         classification 191  
         differential diagnosis 190  
         examination 190, 191  
         history taking 190–191  
         hypertension 92  
         visual loss 59  
     subacute combined degeneration of the cord (SACDOC) 98  
     subarachnoid haemorrhage 75  
         polycystic kidney disease 162  
         symptoms 74, 75  
     subphrenic abscess 96  
     substance abuse, history taking 63  
     suicide attempts 114–115  
     suicide risk assessment 21, 115  
     sunflower cataracts 169  
     superior vena cava (SVC) obstruction 185  
     suprapubic pain, causes 172  
     swallowing  
         dysphagia 80–81  
         myasthenia gravis 200  
     Swan–Ganz catheter 128  
     ‘swan-neck’ deformities 204, 205  
     sweating, thyroid disorders 155  
     swollen legs 94  
     syncope 124  
         aetiology 126  
         history taking 37  
         *see also* collapse  
     systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) 210, 211  
     systemic sclerosis (scleroderma) 213  
     tachycardia  
         arrhythmias 106  
         chest pain 71  
         diabetes mellitus 152–153  
         heart failure 130–131  
         hyperthyroidism 155  
         hypovolaemia 128  
         shock 118–119  
     tachypnoea *see* respiratory rate  
     tamponade 131  
     telangiectasia 99  
     scleroderma 213

- temperature 32  
 MEWS (modified early warning score) 33  
 temporal arteritis 59, 75, 210  
 temporal lobe, localized defects 53  
 temporomandibular joint 55  
 tension headache 75  
 tension pneumothorax 188  
 testes, examination 45  
 testicular lumps 166–167  
 testicular torsion 166  
 tetralogy of Fallot 139  
 thalassaemia 98  
 thenar atrophy 197  
 Thomas test 55  
 thoracic spine, examination 55, 90, 91  
 thoughts  
 disorganised 102, 103  
 suicidal ideation 115  
 thrills 35, 36  
 throat, examination 60  
 thrombolysis, contraindications 126  
 thrombophlebitis migrans 212  
 thrombosis, causes of increased tendency 148  
 thyroid, examination 60  
 thyroid disorders 154–155  
 thyrotoxicosis 83  
 osteoporosis 207  
 suggestive symptoms 82  
 symptoms and signs 155  
 Tinel's sign 197  
 tiredness *see* fatigue  
 tone assessment 52  
 cerebellar disorders 201  
 Parkinson's disease 192  
 stroke 191  
 tongue, examination 43, 53, 67  
 torsion of testis 166  
 total anterior circulation stroke (TACS) 191  
 toxoplasmosis, AIDS 215  
 tracheal deviation  
 pleural effusion 181  
 pneumothorax 188  
 trauma 120–1  
 travel history 30  
 tremor  
 cerebellar disorders 201  
 Parkinson's disease 192  
 thyroid disorders 155  
 tricuspid regurgitation 38, 138  
 tricuspid stenosis 38  
 trigeminal nerve 52, 53  
 trochlear nerve 52, 53  
 Troissier's sign 43  
 tuberculosis 189  
 diagnostic features 187  
 Turner's syndrome 139  
 ulcerative colitis 170  
 ulcers 56, 57  
 ulnar deviation of fingers 204  
 unconscious patients 86–87  
 in ICU 88–89  
 unstable angina 126  
 unsteadiness  
 cerebellar disorders 201  
 dizziness 109  
 upper limbs  
 examination 67  
 neurological examination 50, 51  
 upper quadrant pain, causes 172  
 urethritis, urine examination 61  
 urge incontinence 165  
 urinary incontinence 164, 165  
 urinary retention 164  
 urinary stream 44  
 urinary symptoms  
 history taking, women 46  
 urinary tract infection 61, 112  
 confusion 102  
 diabetes mellitus 152  
 polycystic kidney disease 162  
 postoperative fever 96  
 urine, frothy 163  
 urine examination 43, 45, 61, 112  
 infective endocarditis 146  
 usual interstitial pneumonia (UIP) 182–183  
 'v' waves, JVP 38  
 vaginal examination 43, 46, 47  
 vaginal prolapse 47, 164, 165  
 vagus nerve 52, 53  
 valve disease  
 aortic regurgitation 136–137  
 aortic stenosis 134–135  
 mitral regurgitation 133  
 mitral stenosis 132  
 mitral valve prolapse 133  
 polycystic kidney disease 162  
 prosthetic cardiac valves 150  
 pulmonary stenosis 139  
 tricuspid regurgitation 138  
 valve replacement 150  
 varicocoele 166  
 vascular dementia 203  
 vascular perfusion, legs 65  
 vasculitis 210, 211  
 rheumatoid arthritis 204  
 vasovagal syncope 125  
 ventilation  
 hypoxic stimulation 186  
 patients' views 21  
 ventricular failure *see* heart failure  
 ventricular pacing, jugular venous pressure 38  
 ventricular septal defect (VSD), heart murmur 38  
 ventricular tachycardia 106  
 jugular venous pressure 38  
 ventriculoseptal defect 140–141  
 vertebral fractures 207  
 vesicles 56, 57  
 vestibulocochlear nerve, examination 52, 53  
 Virchow's node 43  
 visual field defects 58  
 pituitary disease 157, 159  
 visual loss, sudden 58  
 visual system  
 examination 58–59  
 history taking 58  
 vital observations 32  
 MEWS (modified early warning score) 33  
 vitamin deficiencies  
 anaemia 98–99  
 dementia 203  
 peripheral neuropathy 196  
 volume depletion 128  
 volume status 119  
 vomiting 76–77  
 with abdominal pain 73  
 appendicitis 177  
 with chest pain 71  
 differential diagnosis 78  
 frequency in dyspepsia-related disease 81  
 gastrointestinal haemorrhage 79  
 with headache 74, 75  
 weight loss 83  
 walking *see* gait  
 wasting syndrome, AIDS 215  
 Weber's test 53  
 Wegener's granulomatosis 210, 211  
 weight changes, thyroid disorders 155  
 weight loss 82  
 differential diagnosis 83  
 frequency in dyspepsia-related disease 81  
 Wernicke's encephalopathy 122, 123  
 wheals 57  
 wheeze 41, 110  
 asthma 178–179  
 breathlessness 110–111  
 COPD 186–187  
 differential diagnosis 179  
 heart failure 130–131  
 'white coat hypertension' 92  
 Williams' syndrome 139  
 Wilson's disease 169, 192  
 wounds, surgical 96  
 wrist, examination 55  
 X-linked recessive muscular dystrophy 198, 199  
 z-thumb deformity 205